



## Proposed Otago Regional Policy Statement June 2021

Integrating the management of Otago's natural and physical resources

978-0-908324-70-5 Print version  
978-0-908324-71-2 Web version

# PART 1 – INTRODUCTION AND GENERAL PROVISIONS

## Foreword or mihi

Regional policy statements are significant planning tools; overarching documents that identify our most pressing environmental issues and provide direction to district plans and other resource management plans on how we will manage them. Developing this new Regional Policy Statement (RPS)<sup>1</sup> has provided an opportunity for renewed partnership between Kāi Tahu in Otago and Southland,<sup>2</sup> and the Otago Regional Council (ORC)<sup>3</sup>. We present this foreword to the notified version together, in recognition of that partnership and in anticipation of the work to come.

ORC didn't expect to find itself writing another Regional Policy Statement so soon. The ink is hardly dry on the 2019 Partially Operative Regional Policy Statement (in fact, as the name suggests, all the ink isn't even there yet), and here is the notification for the next. Nonetheless, a 2019 review of ORC's water management framework and a slew of new national regulation meant a new RPS was needed to set the scene for work on a new Land and Water Regional Plan.

Having this new RPS developed so soon after the last has allowed it to build directly on the previous process. With issues and concerns still fresh, more refinement has been possible, building better processes and driving rapid progress on significant issues facing the region, including resilience to climate change and natural hazards, managing urban development, improving freshwater and coastal environmental management, and supporting biodiversity. Mana whenua, the community<sup>4</sup> and ORC have faced this planning challenge together. ~~We have placed the environment at the centre of all we do in~~ Our long-term vision recognises that use of resources and protection of the environment must occur in an integrated, sustainably managed way.<sup>5</sup>

*The management of natural and physical resources in Otago,<sup>6</sup> by and for the people of Otago, including in partnership with<sup>7</sup> Kāi Tahu, and as expressed in all resource management plans and decision-making,<sup>8</sup> achieves a healthy, and resilient, and safeguarded<sup>9</sup> natural systems environment,<sup>10</sup> and including<sup>11</sup> the ecosystem services they offer it provides,<sup>12</sup> and supports the well-being of present and future generations, (mō tātou, ā, mō kā uri ā muri ake nei).<sup>13</sup>*

---

<sup>1</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>2</sup> 00223.007 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>3</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>4</sup> 004200.004 Jim Hopkins

<sup>5</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment

<sup>6</sup> 00239.034 Federated Farmers

<sup>7</sup> 00226.085 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>8</sup> 00121.015 Ravensdown

<sup>9</sup> 00211.004 LAC, 00210.004 Lane Hocking, 00209.004 Universal Developments, 00118.005 Maryhill, 00014.005 Mt Cardrona Station

<sup>10</sup> 00231.03 Fish and Game

<sup>11</sup> 00139.022 DCC

<sup>12</sup> 00239.034 Federated Farmers

<sup>13</sup> 00239.034 Federated Farmers

This statement reflects that a healthy, flourishing environment is fundamental to our well-being. Integration is the central tenet, seeing the environment as a single connected system, ki uta ki tai, and weaving this into the RPS fabric.

Our long-term vision takes its cue from the holistic perspective of Te Mana o te Wai in the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020. Guided by the need to give effect to Te Mana o te Wai we have worked with mana whenua and the wider community to develop long-term visions for Otago's water bodies. The purpose of these visions is to protect the well-being<sup>14</sup> ~~mauri~~ of water bodies in Otago, so as to protect their mauri,<sup>15</sup> a responsibility shared by all. The aim is to achieve positive outcomes for water and habitat that also address the community's needs and interests.

A broad section of people from all walks of life have contributed to developing the Regional Policy Statement. Through a variety of means, including in-person public workshops, community reference groups, online surveys, and reports, people have helped shape policy development in its earliest stages and fed into the long-term freshwater visions for their own parts of Otago.

Thank you to all who have been involved in bringing this RPS to notification: mana whenua; staff from ORC, Aukaha, and Te Ao Marama Inc; councillors; stakeholders; and community members.

The objectives and policies in this RPS signal a significant step change in Otago, mindful of the need to consider the environment that will be inherited by future generations. We are asking our communities to join us in that change, to create a future of opportunity and security for all of us.

---

<sup>14</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from FPI024.015 DairyNZ

<sup>15</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from FPI024.015 DairyNZ

# Contents

Part 1 – INTRODUCTION AND GENERAL PROVISIONS .....	2
Foreword or mihi .....	2
Contents .....	4
Purpose .....	5
Description of the Region .....	6
How the policy statement works .....	9
Interpretation .....	14
National direction instruments.....	45
MW – <i>Mana whenua</i> .....	47
PART 2 – RESOURCE MANAGEMENT OVERVIEW .....	64
SRMR – Significant resource management issues for the region.....	64
RMIA – Resource management issues of significance to iwi authorities in the region.....	86
IM – Integrated management.....	96
PART 3 – DOMAINS AND TOPICS .....	103
Domains .....	103
AIR – Air.....	103
CE – Coastal environment.....	108
LF – <i>Land and freshwater</i> .....	121
Topics .....	142
ECO – Ecosystems and indigenous <i>biodiversity</i> .....	142
EIT – Energy, infrastructure and transport .....	151
HAZ – Hazards and risks.....	165
HCV – Historical and cultural values .....	175
NFL – Natural features and landscapes .....	182
UFD – Urban form and development .....	186
PART 4 – EVALUATION AND MONITORING .....	198
Monitoring the efficiency and effectiveness of the policy statement.....	198
PART 5 – APPENDICES AND MAPS .....	200
Appendices.....	201
Maps .....	218

## Purpose

As a community, we in Otago are moving into an age that requires solutions to both entrenched legacy issues and significant emerging issues in order to promote positive sustainable change while also enabling the Otago community to flourish, and to enjoy all that the region has to offer.

The Otago Regional Policy Statement (ORPS) provides a policy framework that aims to achieve long-term environmental sustainability by integrating the protection, restoration, enhancement, and use and development<sup>16</sup> of Otago's natural and physical resources. The ORPS also aims to provide communities, including mana whenua, with opportunities to carry out their activities to achieve their economic, cultural and social needs and intentions, while at the same time promoting a thriving and healthy natural environment as being vital to sustaining our wellbeing.<sup>17</sup>

The ORPS responds to identified significant regional values and resource management issues relating to Otago's *environment, historic heritage, economy, food production*<sup>18</sup> and recreational opportunities and communities. The ORPS sets out objectives, policies, and methods to address and<sup>19</sup> resolve, over time, the identified issues as effectively and efficiently as possible. The ORPS gives effect to the statutory requirements set out in the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA ~~1991~~<sup>20</sup>), as well as relevant national direction instruments, and is informed by<sup>21</sup> iwi authority planning documents. *Regional plans*<sup>22</sup> and *district plans* must give effect to the ORPS.

---

<sup>16</sup> 00213.003 Fonterra

<sup>17</sup> 00239.002 Federated Farmers

<sup>18</sup> 00236.007 Horticulture NZ

<sup>19</sup> 00213.003 Fonterra

<sup>20</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>21</sup> 00223.008 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>22</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

## Description of the Region<sup>23</sup>

At 32,000 km<sup>2</sup>, the Otago region is the second largest region in New Zealand, making up 12% of New Zealand's land mass.

The region's eastern edge is entirely marine, extending 12 nautical miles out to sea from a scenic and varied coastline. Otago meets Canterbury at the southern bank of the Waitaki River, its northern border following the river upstream then branching off along Awamoko Stream, following the north branch of the Kakanui River before heading inland once again along the Hawkdun Range, following catchment boundaries and ridgelines into the Southern Alps at Otago's westernmost border. In the south, beginning at Brother's Point in the scenic Catlins, the border with Southland trends northeasterly, taking in the Pomahaka ~~Pomohaka~~<sup>24</sup> River catchment, and Umbrella and Kōpūwai ~~Kopuwai~~<sup>25</sup> Ranges to encompass the headwaters of the glacial alpine lakes, Whakatipu-wai-māori (Lake Wakatipu), Wānaka ~~Wanaka~~,<sup>26</sup> and Hāwea.

Otago is made up of five *territorial authorities*: Dunedin City Council, and Queenstown Lakes, Waitaki, Central Otago, and Clutha District Councils.

Otago's population at the 2018 Census was 225,186<sup>27</sup>. Dunedin City has the largest population of the Otago *territorial authorities* at 126,255, followed by Queenstown Lakes District at 39,153, Waitaki District at 22,308, Central Otago District at 21,558, and Clutha District at 17,667. Growth is not evenly distributed across the region, with the fastest growing district being Queenstown Lakes.

Otago's history recognises the early exploration and occupation of Otago by Māori followed by the arrival of settlers from Europe and Asia.<sup>28</sup> Otago's economy centres around construction, primary production, agriculture, tourism, mineral mining<sup>29</sup>, and education. The construction industry is a major contributor to employment numbers in Otago, supported by the region's population growth. The primary production sector is a source of domestic and export revenue and employment for the districts and the wider region and the nation. Otago's farms are also a key contributor to the national food supply network.<sup>30</sup> The University of Otago enrolls approximately 20,000 students each year from around New Zealand and internationally, contributing to annual population spikes in Dunedin and significantly boosting the economy. Tourism ~~has~~<sup>31</sup> also ~~has~~<sup>32</sup> a significant impact on the regional economy, contributing about a quarter of the region's total gross domestic product. This is the highest of any region in New Zealand, and primarily concentrated in the Queenstown Lakes District.

Renewable energy generation facilities<sup>33</sup> meet a large portion of regional and national energy requirements. Significant hydroelectric generation facilities in Otago are located in the Central Otago, Clutha, and Queenstown Lakes Districts. Additionally, Otago has two wind farms, located in the Clutha District.

---

<sup>23</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>24</sup> 00223.009 Ngai Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>25</sup> 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>26</sup> 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>27</sup> 2018 Census place summaries: Stats NZ. (n.d.). <https://www.stats.govt.nz/tools/2018-census-place-summaries/otago-region> (accessed 26 May 2021)

<sup>28</sup> 00212.005 Central Otago Heritage Trust

<sup>29</sup> 00140.001 Waitaki DC

<sup>30</sup> 00239.002 Federated Farmers, 00236.008 Horticulture NZ, 00240.002 NZ Pork, 00140.001 Waitaki DC

<sup>31</sup> 00206.006 Trojan, 00411.001 Wayfare

<sup>32</sup> 00206.006 Trojan, 00411.001 Wayfare

<sup>33</sup> Fitzgerald, W. (2019). *Dunedin Energy Study 2017-2018*. University of Otago

Otago is home to important indigenous biodiversity for Aotearoa, some of which is specific to Otago. Nationally significant indigenous biodiversity features include inland saline habitats, ephemeral wetlands, endemic and threatened inland galaxiid fish and lizard populations, western forest habitats, and coastal fauna.<sup>34</sup>

## Climate

The Otago region experiences two distinct climates due to the geographic variety between the temperate coastal areas, and the almost continental inland areas. The coastal settlements experience a cyclic weather pattern that alternates frequently between a warmer and drier climate, and a cooler, damper climate. Central Otago's climate is characterised by hot, dry summers and contrastingly cold, frosty winters. The unique climate supports many of the diverse industries in Otago.<sup>35</sup>

General temperature ranges for the region fall between 18°C and 24°C on summer afternoons, and -2°C and 3°C during winter nights.<sup>36</sup> The mean daily temperatures in summer in Central Otago range between approximately 10°C and 25°C, while the mean daily temperatures in winter range between approximately -1°C and 10°C.<sup>37</sup> Central Otago has held national records for both the hottest and coldest temperature readings in New Zealand. Ophir, a small settlement in Central Otago, has recorded temperatures of 35.2°C in 1959 and -21.6°C in 1995. Significant rises in the use of heating sources occur during the drastically colder winter periods. The highest regional rainfalls, averaging 2000mm per year, occur typically over western areas of Otago such as around the Lakes District and Southern Alps. In contrast, the average rainfall in Central Otago is the lowest in New Zealand averaging around 400-500mm per year.

## Coast

The Otago coastline stretches for 480 km and is extremely diverse, encompassing pebble and sandy beaches, basalt formations, dune systems, eelgrass and saltmarshes, estuaries, rolling downlands, and striking cliff heads. Working farms abut most of the coastline, while remnant swathes of native bush clad coastline are a distinct feature of the Catlins area, and significant coastal settlements include Dunedin and Ōamaru.<sup>38</sup> ~~with t~~<sup>39</sup> The Otago port is based in Port Chalmers, ~~within the Otago Harbour,~~<sup>40</sup> and Otago Harbor<sup>41</sup> is the region's only commercial freight handling harbour. ~~It~~<sup>42</sup> However<sup>42</sup> commercial fishing ramps (supporting fishing fleets)<sup>43</sup> are present in ~~Oamaru~~ Ōamaru,<sup>44</sup> Moeraki, ~~Karitane~~ Karitāne,<sup>45</sup> and Taieri Mouth. Coastal erosion and the decline of the regional coastline is well documented, posing a long-term threat to residential and commercial coastal developments and historic heritage, particularly wāhi tūpuna.<sup>46</sup>

Otago's benthic and marine ecosystems are varied and diverse including rocky reef systems, sponge gardens, bryozoan and horse mussel beds, biogenic reefs, kelp forests and submarine canyons within 12 nautical miles of the shore. More than thirty species of seabird are regularly found off the coast of

---

<sup>34</sup> 00137.004 DOC

<sup>35</sup> 00235.006 OWRUG

<sup>36</sup> Macara, G. R. (2015). The Climate and Weather of Otago, Second Edition. NIWA SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY SERIES, 67th ser.

<sup>37</sup> Central Otago Climate. (n.d.). <https://centralotagoz.com/opportunities/working-here> (accessed 26 May 2021)

<sup>38</sup> 00223.009 Kāi tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>39</sup> 00411.012 Wayfare

<sup>40</sup> 00411.012 Wayfare

<sup>41</sup> 00223.010 Ngai Tahu ki Murihiku, 00411.011 Wayfare

<sup>42</sup> 00411.012 Wayfare

<sup>43</sup> 00411.012 Wayfare

<sup>44</sup> 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>45</sup> 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>46</sup> 00123.008 Heritage NZ

Otago. Rare sea birds such as the Royal Albatross and hoiho (Yellow-eyed penguin) can be found along the landward coastal environment. Surfing is a significant recreational activity, in Dunedin particularly, and there are four *surf breaks* of national significance along the Otago coastline.

## Water bodies

The Otago region has significant *freshwater* resources in the form of surface water, natural and artificial *lakes*, *groundwater*, and *wetlands*. Otago's communities are reliant on the use of these *water* resources for their social, cultural and economic well-being. *Rivers* and *lakes* make up most of the regional surface *water*. The big *lakes*, such as Wanaka, Whakatipu-wai-māori (Lake Wakatipu) and Hāwea and including artificial *lakes* Dunstan, Roxburgh and Onslow, constitute about 23% of New Zealand's total *lake* surface area. The primary catchments are Lakes Wanaka, Whakatipu-wai-māori (Lake Wakatipu) and Hāwea, which feed into Otago's largest *river*, the Clutha River/Mata-Au. Otago also has many *groundwater* sources. *Wetlands* make up many significant landscape and ecosystem elements in Otago, including blanket and string bogs, saline areas, swamp forest remnants, shallow *lake* complexes, estuarine saltmarshes, and valley floor swamps.

## Natural character and landscapes

Otago's landscapes are diverse. Moving inland from Otago's diverse and varied coastline, the landscapes change dramatically. Rolling plains separated by mountain ranges, steep hillsides of tussock, and deep gorges make up a lot of rural Otago South and Central Otago<sup>47</sup>. This *land* is dissected by flowing bodies of water, towering mountainscapes, and fascinating geological formations. Modified landscapes encompassing farmland and remnants of the region's early gold mining activity are ever-present, creating a rich sense of heritage and regional identity. National Parks and other Public Conservation areas provide important areas of unmodified *land* and *water*.<sup>48</sup>

## Urban form

Urbanised areas in Otago occupy only about 1% of total *land* area, however 87% of people live in urban settlements. Dunedin is Otago's largest urban area, surrounded by hills and harbour ~~harbor~~,<sup>49</sup> and has a large suburban area and commuter catchment especially to the south, with more recent expansion moving out to connect with an expanding Mosgiel. The Queenstown Lakes District population is approximately 91% urban. Its outstanding landscape has ~~historically determined~~, and will continue to, influence ~~determine~~,<sup>50</sup> how urban form develops.

In the remainder of the region, smaller urban settlements are geographically scattered, maintaining clear distinctions between rural and urban forms, and with significant variability in growth pressures and infrastructure capacity. Growth in overall numbers of people is not the only driver of urban change pressures in Otago; many areas face low or no growth, and all areas are expected to have an aging population.

---

<sup>47</sup> 00140.001 Waitaki DC

<sup>48</sup> 0.0206.007 Trojan, 00411.013 Wayfare

<sup>49</sup> 00120.007 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

<sup>50</sup> 00206.008 Trojan, 00411.014 Wayfare



# How the policy statement works

## Statutory context

### Resource Management Act 1991

The Resource Management Act 1991 (~~RMA 1991~~)<sup>51</sup> is the primary resource management statute in New Zealand and sets out the related responsibilities and powers of national, regional, and city/district government.

The RMA ~~1991~~<sup>52</sup> requires regional councils to have a regional policy statement (RPS) under Section 60, prepared in accordance with the process set out in Schedule 1. The purpose of the RPS, as set out in Section 59 of the RMA, is to provide an overview of the specific resource management issues for the region and establish policies and methods to achieve the integrated management of both the *natural and physical resources* of the region. The RPS must be prepared in accordance with and contain the matters set out in Sections 30, 60, 61, and 62 of the RMA ~~1991~~.<sup>53</sup>

The regional policy statement must be prepared in accordance with and/or<sup>54</sup> give effect to higher order national direction instruments, including any regulations ~~National Environmental Standards (NES)~~,<sup>55</sup> National Policy Statements (NPS), the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement (NZCPS) and be written to comply with the National Planning Standards. Further ORC must observe and enforce observance of any National Environmental Standards (NES) to the extent to which their powers enable them to do so.<sup>56</sup> The RPS sets out requirements that *regional plans, district plans*, and regional coastal plans must give effect to. More information about the relevant national direction instruments can be found in the 'national direction instruments' section of this Regional Policy Statement.

*Figure 2 – Position of the Regional Policy Statement within the resource management planning framework 1 – Statutory framework*<sup>57</sup>

---

<sup>51</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>52</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>53</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>54</sup> 00239.004 Federated Farmers

<sup>55</sup> 00239.004 Federated Farmers

<sup>56</sup> 00239.004 Federated Farmers

<sup>57</sup> 00213.004 Fonterra

Te Tiriti o Waitangi 

Resource Management Act 1991 

National Policy Statements, Environmental Standards and Regulations 

Coastal Policy Statement 

Regional Policy Statement  Otago Regional Council

Regional Plans 

District Plans 

## Partnership, Te Tiriti o Waitangi and Kāi Tahu<sup>58</sup>

The Otago Regional Policy Statement has been developed in partnership with Kāi Tahu, the iwi and *tangata whenua* of Otago. The partnership between the Otago Regional Council and Kāi Tahu is an important and valuable relationship, evident throughout the ORPS and woven into its provisions. The RMA 1991<sup>59</sup> requires Regional and Local Councils to address matters of National Importance, including matters associated with Te Tiriti o Waitangi (The Treaty of Waitangi) and key issues and concerns of iwi.<sup>60</sup>

The ORC has also considered the Kāi Tahu ki Otago 2005 Resource Management Plan and Te Tangi a Taura: Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku Natural Resource and Environmental Iwi Management Plan 2008. ORPS chapters on Significant Resource Management Issues for Iwi and on *Mana Whenua* provide an in-depth discussion of iwi issues and set a basis for the remaining policy framework.

The key issues identified by Kāi Tahu include:

- recognising the rights and interests of Kāi Tahu in natural and resource management processes;
- recognising the important role of mātauraka in natural resource management;
- recognising the integral relationship of Kāi Tahu with *natural and physical resources*, including the coast, waterways, lakes, wetlands and indigenous flora and fauna, protecting these resources from degradation, improving them where they have been degraded, and sustaining them for future generations;
- protecting and restoring the abundance of *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>61</sup> and restoring access to *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>62</sup> areas;
- protecting the values of *wāhi tūpuna* and the ability for Kāi Tahu to maintain their relationship with these areas;
- enabling development of *land* and resources within native reserves, including *papakāika housing*;<sup>63</sup> and
- the need for integrated management that recognises the interconnections between resources and across different parts of the environment.

## Cross-boundary matters

Ecosystems and human activities cross jurisdictional boundaries. When different jurisdictions manage similar activities or resources in different ways there is potential for inconsistent outcomes, resulting in inefficient and ineffective management.

To achieve integration, those involved in resource management need to coordinate their policies, plans and actions. This is encompassed by the philosophy “*ki uta ki tai*” – often translated as “from

---

<sup>58</sup> In the South Island, the local Māori dialect uses a ‘k’ interchangeably with ‘ng’. The preference in Otago is to use a ‘k’ so southern Māori are known as Kāi Tahu, rather than Ngāi Tahu. In this RPS, the ‘ng’ is used for iwi in general or where there is reference to Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku (Southland).

<sup>59</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>60</sup> These matters are addressed throughout the Resource Management Act 1991, see in particular sections 6, 8 and 62.

<sup>61</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>62</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>63</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

the mountains to the sea".<sup>64</sup> Accordingly, section 62 of the RMA 1991 requires regional councils to include in the RPS the processes to be used to deal with issues that cross *local authority* boundaries, and issues between *territorial authorities* or between regions.

Cross-boundary issues can arise in several ways, and generally manifest in issues for either plan preparation and review, or plan administration and the processing of applications for *resource consents*. Otago's cross-boundary matters include:

- ~~adverse~~<sup>65</sup> *effects* in one jurisdiction due to the activities in another, particularly including<sup>66</sup> where *territorial authority* boundaries do not match catchment boundaries, as with the Clutha Mata-au, or the Waitaki River catchment over which Otago and Canterbury Regional Councils share jurisdiction, or Otago's coastal environment, which covers three *territorial authorities'* jurisdictions, and may be affected by *land uses and dam structures*<sup>67</sup> in the other two (through sediment flowing down the Clutha Mata-au, for instance). Effects within the Otago Coastal environment may also have effects on adjoining regional council jurisdiction,<sup>68</sup>
- Kāi Tahu interests, which span Otago as a whole, across *local authority* boundaries;
- natural<sup>69</sup> resources that cross *local authority* boundaries which must be managed in a uniform manner, such as water,<sup>70</sup> outstanding natural features, outstanding natural landscapes and *significant natural areas*;
- differences in policies or methods across plans, particularly where *district plans*<sup>71</sup> and *regional plans* are at different planning stages and may be out of step with current regulation;
- physical resources such as<sup>72</sup> *local, regionally significant infrastructure*<sup>73</sup> or *nationally significant infrastructure being developed and operated* ~~operating~~<sup>74</sup> across *local authority* boundaries, as with transport and electricity ~~supply~~ networks, and potentially shared services such as waste management and minimisation ~~waste disposal~~<sup>75</sup>; and
- duplicated effort for *local authorities* and increased cost for people seeking consents for activities that occur across *local authority* boundaries or require *resource consent* from two or more consent authorities.

Processes that will be used to address these matters are described in the sections below.

## Clear direction in the ORPS

The ORPS provides a vision and broad policy framework for all resource management in Otago, including various methods that require *local authorities* to work together to achieve good outcomes and, in some cases, set implementation timeframes. *Regional plans*<sup>76</sup> and *district plans* as they develop over the next 10 years and beyond, are required to give effect to the ORPS. In doing so one result

---

<sup>64</sup> 00223.012 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>65</sup> 00314.002 Transpower

<sup>66</sup> 00314.002 Transpower

<sup>67</sup> 00139.003 DCC

<sup>68</sup> 00013.001 ECan

<sup>69</sup> 00314.002 Transpower

<sup>70</sup> 00236.009 Horticulture NZ

<sup>71</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>72</sup> 00314.002 Transpower

<sup>73</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>74</sup> 00314.002 Transpower

<sup>75</sup> 00139.004 DCC

<sup>76</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

should be consistency between them. The ORPS has been drafted using direct language and clarity of outcomes sought.

ORPS methods also indicate actions that fall outside the RMA 1991<sup>77</sup> framework. This recognises that only *district plans*<sup>78</sup> and *regional plans* are required to give effect to a regional policy statement, and non-regulatory methods may sometimes be useful to help address cross-boundary matters and achieve desired outcomes.

### Cooperation and partnerships with stakeholders

Stakeholders, ~~from~~ including Government agencies,<sup>79</sup> industry representatives, landowners, and ~~to~~<sup>80</sup> community-based volunteer groups, provide valuable strategic input to planning and decision-making. Inter-agency groups, such as Te Roopu Taiao, can assist with managing cross-boundary issues and issues affecting people across Otago strategically and collaboratively.

ORC will seek to establish and build upon working relationships with other resource management stakeholders. This will help ensure that the processes it undertakes are efficient and, wherever possible, reduce duplication of effort. As new issues emerge in the region and work on existing issues continues, they are best managed through collaboration, which will improve effectiveness and deliver better outcomes. This is particularly important for enhancing and managing important region-wide matters such as<sup>81</sup> *regionally significant infrastructure* and *significant natural areas*.

### Cooperation and partnerships with other local authorities

There are many opportunities to work more closely with other *local authorities* to achieve a consistent and integrated approach to managing *natural and physical resources*.

*Local authorities* together can:

- share information, for instance to understand the long-term growth and economic development opportunities and threats and the spatial pattern of *land use* and development, or to ensure natural resources are not artificially fragmented;
- hold joint processes for processing *resource consents* and associated hearings where activities or *effects* cross jurisdictional boundaries. This allows all *effects* of ~~new~~<sup>82</sup> activities to be considered holistically at the same time, including any cumulative *effects*. Joint processes could also reduce the processing cost (in both money and time) for the applicant;
- work collaboratively on plan changes and develop combined planning documents for shared areas of responsibility;
- clearly define their resource management roles and responsibilities to reduce duplication of effort and streamline processes for Otago's communities; and
- cooperate and budget for joint processes and major projects through Annual and Long-term Planning processes under the LGA Local Government Act 2002 (LGA 2002).<sup>83</sup> This allows pooling

---

<sup>77</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>78</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>79</sup> 00137.005 DOC

<sup>80</sup> 00239.005 Federated Farmers

<sup>81</sup> 00239.005 Federated Farmers

<sup>82</sup> 00223.013 Ngāi Tahu Ki Murihiku

<sup>83</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

resources, reducing inefficiency and integrating management approaches through time, to ensure that cooperation between agencies is budgeted for, including setting up structures and processes for joint management.

These approaches are more likely to properly address cross-boundary issues and *effects* than *local authorities* working alone.

### Triennial agreement

Triennial agreements under the LGA 2002<sup>84</sup> are an opportunity for *local authorities* within a region to set out processes for consultation, protocols and processes for resolving cross-boundary issues.

### Cooperation at a national level

Cross-boundary issues may arise that are significant at a national level. This is particularly likely when addressing nationally significant important<sup>85</sup> infrastructure such as the National Grid electricity transmission grid<sup>86</sup> or *land* transport infrastructure.

In such cases, ORC will advise and work with the Minister for the Environment, the Minister of Conservation in the *coastal marine area* and any other relevant agency to identify and resolve cross boundary issues or proposals, to ensure that consideration of the matter occurs in a transparent and timely manner. ORC will endeavour ~~endeavor~~<sup>87</sup> to represent its communities' interests in such situations.

### Transferring and delegating functions, powers and duties to other authorities

The RMA enables ORC to transfer its powers, functions and duties to another public authority, including an iwi authority or other statutory body. It may also delegate these to committees, community boards, commissioners or employees. ORC can also enter joint management agreements with other statutory bodies and an iwi authority (such as Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu). ~~The RMA 1991 enables ORC to transfer or delegate its powers to another public authority, community boards, commissioners or employees. ORC can also enter joint management agreements with other statutory bodies (such as Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu).~~<sup>88</sup>

These tools can be used to achieve integrated management and to reduce duplication of effort by local and public authorities, and to enable a Treaty partnership approach to resource management.<sup>89</sup> Joint management agreements enable iwi partners and<sup>90</sup> important stakeholders to have an active role in the management of specific resources, and for specific purposes. They can also be used to build community capacity and share understanding in resource management.

### Helping to build capacity for, and improve, *takata whenua* involvement

*Takata whenua* have the prerogative to express and explain how their tikaka and mātauraka should be realised in resource management. Councils have a vital role in assisting this process through finding

---

<sup>84</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>85</sup> 00314.002 Transpower

<sup>86</sup> 00314.002 Transpower

<sup>87</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>88</sup> 00509.013 Wise Response

<sup>89</sup> 00223.015 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>90</sup> 00223.015 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

ways to partner, resource, and upskill rūnaka so they can be fully involved in the resource management partnership.

Establishing and implementing relationship agreements such as Mana Whakahono a Rohe agreements, protocols and charters can provide a framework for the council to provide necessary support. Increasing skills and capacity within council staff and decision-makers through training in Te Tiriti o Waitangi, locally relevant Treaty Settlement mechanisms and tikanga Māori, and developing familiarity with Kāi Tahu documents, are also important means of improving takata whenua involvement in council processes.<sup>91</sup>

---

<sup>91</sup> 00223.016 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

# Interpretation

## Definitions

Term	Definition
<b>1990 mean sea level (Otago Metric Datum)</b>	means the fixed level for basing subsequent level measurements on. In this case Otago Metric Datum is the Dunedin Vertical Datum (DVD 1958) plus 100 metres. <sup>92</sup>
<b>Active transport</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.3 of the National Policy Statement on Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means forms of transport that involve physical exercise, such as walking or cycling, and includes transport that may use a mobility aid such as a wheelchair</p> </div>
<b>Additional infrastructure</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.3 of the National Policy Statement on Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) public open space</li> <li>(b) community infrastructure as defined in section 197 of the Local Government Act 2002</li> <li>(c) land transport (as defined in the Land Transport Management Act 2003) that is not controlled by local authorities</li> <li>(d) social infrastructure, such as schools and healthcare facilities</li> <li>(e) a network operated for the purpose of telecommunications (as defined in section 5 of the Telecommunications Act 2001)</li> <li>(f) a network operated for the purpose of transmitting or distributing electricity or gas</li> </ul> </div>
<b>Airshed</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Air Quality) Regulations 2004 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><del>airshed</del><sup>93</sup> means—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the region of a regional council excluding any area specified in a notice under paragraph (b):</li> <li>(b) a part of the region of a regional council specified by the Minister by notice in the Gazette to be a separate airshed</li> </ul> </div>

<sup>92</sup> 00239.006 Federated Farmers

<sup>93</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA



Term	Definition
<b>Afforestation</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for <u>Commercial Plantation</u><sup>94</sup> Forestry) Regulations 2017 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) means planting and growing plantation forestry trees on land where there is no plantation forestry and where plantation forestry harvesting has not occurred within the last 5 years; but</p> <p>(b) does not include vegetation clearance from the land before planting</p> </div>
<b>Ambient air quality standards</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Air Quality) Regulations 2004 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the standard prescribed by regulation 13(1)</p> </div>
<b>Amenity values</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means those natural or physical qualities and characteristics of an area that contribute to people’s appreciation of its pleasantness, aesthetic coherence, and cultural and recreational attributes</p> </div>
<b>Ancillary activity</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means an activity that supports and is subsidiary to a primary activity</p> </div>
<b>Aquaculture activities</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) means any activity described in section 12 done for the purpose of the breeding, hatching, cultivating, rearing, or ongrowing of fish, aquatic life, or seaweed for harvest if the breeding, hatching, cultivating, rearing, or ongrowing involves the occupation of a coastal marine area; and</p> <p>(b) includes the taking of harvestable spat if the taking involves the occupation of a coastal marine area; but</p> <p>(c) does not include an activity specified in paragraph (a) if the fish, aquatic life, or seaweed—</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">(i) are not in the exclusive and continuous possession or control of the person undertaking the activity; or</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">(ii) cannot be distinguished or kept separate from naturally occurring fish, aquatic life, or seaweed; and</p> <p>(d) does not include an activity specified in paragraph (a) or (b) if the activity is carried out solely for the purpose of monitoring the environment</p> </div>

<sup>94</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

Term	Definition
<b>Aquatic compensation</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 3.21(1) of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a conservation outcome resulting from actions that are intended to compensate for any more than minor residual adverse effects on a wetland or river after all appropriate avoidance, minimisation, remediation, and aquatic offset measures have been sequentially applied</p> </div>
<b>Aquatic offset</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 3.21(1) of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a measurable conservation outcome resulting from actions that are intended to:</p> <p>(a) redress any more than minor residual adverse effects on a wetland or river after all appropriate avoidance, minimisation, and remediation, measures have been sequentially applied; and</p> <p>(b) achieve no net loss, and preferably a net gain, in the extent and values of the wetland or river, where:</p> <p>(i) <b>no net loss</b> means that the measurable positive effects of actions match any loss of extent or values over space and time, taking into account the type and location of the wetland or river, and</p> <p>(ii) <b>net gain</b> means that the measurable positive effects of actions exceed the point of no net loss</p> </div>
<b>Archaeological site</b> <sup>95</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 6 of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means</u></p> <p>(a) <u>any place in New Zealand, including any building or structure (or part of a building or structure), that—</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) <u>was associated with human activity that occurred before 1900 or is the site of the wreck of any vessel where the wreck occurred before 1900; and</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(ii) <u>provides or may provide, through investigation by archaeological methods, evidence relating to the history of New Zealand; and</u></p> <p>(b) <u>includes a site for which a declaration is made under section 43(1) of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014.</u></p> </div>

<sup>95</sup> 0123.006 Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga

Term	Definition
<b>Attribute (in relation to freshwater)<sup>96</sup></b>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a measurable characteristic (numeric, narrative, or both) that can be used to assess the extent to which a particular value is provided for</p> </div>
<b>Bed</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means,—</p> <p>(a) in relation to any river—</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) for the purposes of esplanade reserves, esplanade strips, and subdivision, the space of land which the waters of the river cover at its annual fullest flow without overtopping its banks:</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(ii) in all other cases, the space of land which the waters of the river cover at its fullest flow without overtopping its banks; and</p> <p>(b) in relation to any lake, except a lake controlled by artificial means,—</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) for the purposes of esplanade reserves, esplanade strips, and subdivision, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its annual highest level without exceeding its margin:</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(ii) in all other cases, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its highest level without exceeding its margin; and</p> <p>(c) in relation to any lake controlled by artificial means, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its maximum permitted operating level; and</p> <p>(d) in relation to the sea, the submarine areas covered by the internal waters and the territorial sea</p> </div>
<b>Biodiversity</b>	see <i>biological diversity</i>
<b>Biological diversity</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <p>means the variability among living organisms, and the ecological complexes of which they are a part, including diversity within species, between species, and of ecosystems</p>

<sup>96</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

Term	Definition
<b><u>Biodiversity compensation</u></b> <sup>97</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means a conservation outcome that meets the requirements in Appendix 4 and results from actions that are intended to compensate for any more than minor residual adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity after all appropriate avoidance, minimisation, remediation, and biodiversity offsetting measures have been sequentially applied</u></p> </div>
<b><u>Biodiversity offset</u></b> <sup>98</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means a measurable conservation outcome that meets the requirements in Appendix 3 and results from actions that are intended to:</u></p> <p><u>(a) redress any more than minor residual adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity after all appropriate avoidance, minimisation, and remediation measures have been sequentially applied; and</u></p> <p><u>(b) achieve a net gain in type, amount, and condition of indigenous biodiversity compared to that lost.</u></p> </div>
<b>Building</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a temporary or permanent movable or immovable physical construction that is:</p> <p>(a) partially or fully roofed; and</p> <p>(b) fixed or located on or in land;</p> <p>but excludes any motorised vehicle or other mode of transport that could be moved under its own power</p> </div>
<b>Business land</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.3 of the National Policy Statement on Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means land that is zoned, or identified in an FDS or similar strategy or plan, for business uses in urban environments, including but not limited to land in the following:</p> <p>(a) any industrial zone</p> <p>(b) the commercial zone</p> <p>(c) the large format retail zone</p> <p>(d) any centre zone, to the extent it allows business uses</p> <p>(e) the mixed use zone, to the extent it allows business uses</p> <p>(f) any special purpose zone, to the extent it allows business uses</p> </div>

<sup>97</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>98</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

Term	Definition
<b>Cascading hazards</b>	means where the occurrence of one natural hazard is likely to trigger another natural hazard event e.g. an earthquake triggering a landslide which dams a river causing flooding.
<b>Certified freshwater farm plan</b>	<p>has the same meaning as section 217B of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a freshwater farm plan certified under section 217G, as amended from time to time in accordance with section 217E(2) or (3)</p> </div>
<b>Climate change</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a change of climate that is attributed directly or indirectly to human activity that alters the composition of the global atmosphere and that is in addition to natural climate variability observed over comparable time periods</p> </div>
<b><u>Climate change adaptation</u></b> <sup>99</sup>	<u>means the process of adjustment to actual or expected climate and its effects</u>
<b><u>Climate change mitigation</u></b> <sup>100</sup>	<u>means a human intervention to reduce the sources of, or enhance the sinks of greenhouse gases</u>
<b><u>Coastal hazard</u></b> <sup>101</sup>	<u>means a subset of natural hazards covering tidal or coastal storm inundation, rising sea level, tsunami or meteorological tsunami inundation, coastal erosion (shorelines or cliffs), rise in groundwater levels from storm tides and sea-level rise (plus associated liquefaction), and salinisation of surface fresh waters and groundwater aquifers</u>
<b>Coastal marine area</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the foreshore, seabed, and coastal water, and the air space above the water—</p> <p>(a) of which the seaward boundary is the outer limits of the territorial sea:</p> <p>(b) of which the landward boundary is the line of mean high water springs, except that where that line crosses a river, the landward boundary at that point shall be whichever is the lesser of—</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) 1 kilometre upstream from the mouth of the river; or</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(ii) the point upstream that is calculated by multiplying the width of the river mouth by 5</p> </div>

<sup>99</sup> 00509.015 Wise Response

<sup>100</sup> 00509.015 Wise Response

<sup>101</sup> 00301.047 Port Otago

Term	Definition
<b>Coastal water</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means seawater within the outer limits of the territorial sea and includes—</p> <p>(a) seawater with a substantial fresh water component; and</p> <p>(b) seawater in estuaries, fiords, inlets, harbours, or embayments</p> </div>
<b>Commercial activity</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means any activity trading in goods, equipment or services. It includes any ancillary activity to the commercial activity (for example administrative or head offices)</p> </div>
<b>Commercial port activity</b>	<p>means commercial shipping operations associated with the Otago <del>Harbour</del><sup>102</sup> and the activities carried out at the ports at Port Chalmers and Dunedin, (including the wharf at Ravensbourne)<sup>103</sup> which include:</p> <p>(a) Operation of commercial ships in Otago <del>Harbour; Harbor</del><sup>104</sup></p> <p>(b) Loading and unloading of goods and passengers carried by sea (expect for loading and unloading of passengers at Ravensbourne);<sup>105</sup></p> <p>(c) Facilities for the storage of goods carried by sea (except at Ravensbourne);<sup>106</sup></p> <p>(d) Buildings, installations, other structures or equipment at or adjacent to a port and used in connection with the ports' operation or administration (except at Ravensbourne);<sup>107</sup></p> <p>(e) Structures, facilities and pipelines for fuel storage, and refuelling of ships;</p> <p>(f) Provision, maintenance and development of shipping channels and swing basins;</p> <p>(g) Disposal of dredged materials at AQA<sup>108</sup> Heyward Point, Aramoana and Shelly Beach referred to at MAP2;<sup>109</sup></p> <p>(h) Installation and maintenance of beacons and markers for navigation safety; and</p> <p>(i) Provision and maintenance of the mole at Aramoana.</p>
<b>Competitiveness margin</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 3.22 of the National Policy Statement on Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a margin of development capacity, over and above the expected demand that tier 1 and tier 2 local authorities are required to provide, that is required in order to support choice and competitiveness in housing and business land markets</p> </div>

<sup>102</sup> 00120.007 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

<sup>103</sup> 00121.004 Ravensdown

<sup>104</sup> 00120.007 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

<sup>105</sup> 00121.004 Ravensdown

<sup>106</sup> 00121.004 Ravensdown

<sup>107</sup> 00121.004 Ravensdown

<sup>108</sup> 00137.007 DOC, 00223.017 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>109</sup> 00137.007 DOC, 00223.017 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

Term	Definition
<b>Contaminant</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>includes any substance (including gases, odorous compounds, liquids, solids, and micro-organisms) or energy (excluding noise) or heat, that either by itself or in combination with the same, similar, or other substances, energy, or heat—</p> <p>(a) when discharged into water, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of water; or</p> <p>(b) when discharged onto or into land or into air, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of the land or air onto or into which it is discharged</p> </div>
<b>Contaminated land</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means land that has a hazardous substance in or on it that—</p> <p>(a) has significant adverse effects on the environment; or</p> <p>(b) is reasonably likely to have significant adverse effects on the environment</p> </div>
<b>Critical buildings</b>	<p>for the purposes of the consequence table within APP6, these are buildings which have a post-disaster function. These include:</p> <p>(a) Buildings and facilities designed as essential facilities;</p> <p>(b) Buildings and facilities with special post-disaster function;</p> <p>(c) Medical emergency or surgical facilities;</p> <p>(d) Emergency service facilities such as fire and police stations;</p> <p>(e) Designated emergency shelters;</p> <p>(f) Designated emergency centres and ancillary facilities; and</p> <p>(g) Buildings and facilities containing hazardous materials capable of causing hazardous conditions that extends beyond the property boundaries.</p>
<b>Degraded (in relation to freshwater)<sup>110</sup></b>	<p>where it is used in the <i>LF – Land and freshwater</i> chapter, has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p>

<sup>110</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

Term	Definition
	<p>in relation to an FMU or part of an FMU, means that as a result of something other than a naturally occurring process:</p> <p>(a) a site or sites in the FMU or part of the FMU to which a target attribute state applies:</p> <p>(i) is below a national bottom line; or</p> <p>(ii) is not achieving or is not likely to achieve a target attribute state; or</p> <p>(b) the FMU or part of the FMU is not achieving or is not likely to achieve an environmental flow and level set for it; or</p> <p>(c) the FMU or part of the FMU is less able (when compared to 7 September 2017) to provide for any value <u>described in Appendix 1A or any other value</u> identified for it under the NOF</p>
<b>Depositional landform</b> <sup>111</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below);</p> <p><u>means a landform that is alluvial (matter deposited by water, (eg, fans, river flats, and terraces), colluvial (matter deposited by gravity at the base of hillslopes, (eg, talus), or glacial (matter deposited by glaciers, (eg, moraines and outwash).</u></p>
<b>Development capacity</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <p>means the capacity of the land to be developed for housing or for business use, based on:</p> <p>(a) the zoning, objectives, policies, rules, and overlays that apply in the relevant proposed and operative RMA planning documents; and</p> <p>(b) the provision of adequate development infrastructure to support the development of land for housing or business use</p>
<b>Development infrastructure</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <p>means the following, to the extent that they are controlled by a local authority or council controlled organisation (as defined in section 6 of the Local Government Act 2002):</p> <p>(a) network infrastructure for water supply, wastewater, or stormwater</p> <p>(b) land transport (as defined in section 5 of the Land Transport Management Act 2003)</p>
<b>Discharge</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <p>includes emit, deposit, and allow to escape</p>

<sup>111</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ



Term	Definition
<b>Distribution network</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Freshwater) Regulations 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) means lines and associated equipment that are used for conveying electricity and are operated by a business engaged in the distribution of electricity; but</p> <p>(b) does not include lines and associated equipment that are part of the national grid</p> </div>
<b>District plan</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 43AA of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) means an operative plan approved by a territorial authority under Schedule 1; and</p> <p>(b) includes all operative changes to the plan (whether arising from a review or otherwise)</p> </div>
<b>Drinking water</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means water intended to be used for human consumption; and includes water intended to be used for food preparation, utensil washing, and oral or other personal hygiene</p> </div>
<b>Dwelling</b>	<p>has the same meaning as that given for dwellinghouse in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means any building, whether permanent or temporary, that is occupied, in whole or in part, as a residence; and includes any structure or outdoor living area that is accessory to, and used wholly or principally for the purposes of, the residence; but does not include the land upon which the residence is sited</p> </div>
<b>Earthworks</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the alteration or disturbance of land, including by moving, removing, placing, blading, cutting, contouring, filling or excavation of earth (or any matter constituting the land including soil, clay, sand and rock); but excludes gardening, cultivation, and disturbance of land for the installation of fence posts</p> </div>
<b><u>Ecological district</u></b> <sup>112</sup>	<p><u>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023, adapted to apply to the Otago context (as set out in the box below):</u></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means: the ecological districts as shown in McEwan, W Mary (ed), 1987. <i>Ecological regions and districts of New Zealand</i>. Wellington: Department of Conservation.</u></p> </div>

<sup>112</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

Term	Definition
<b><u>Ecosystem function</u></b> <sup>113</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below):</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means the abiotic (physical) and biotic (ecological and biological) flows that are properties of an ecosystem</u></p> </div>
<b>Effect</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires, the term effect includes—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) any positive or adverse effect; and</li> <li>(b) any temporary or permanent effect; and</li> <li>(c) any past, present, or future effect; and</li> <li>(d) any cumulative effect which arises over time or in combination with other effects—</li> </ul> <p>regardless of the scale, intensity, duration, or frequency of the effect, and also includes—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(e) any potential effect of high probability; and</li> <li>(f) any potential effect of low probability which has a high potential impact</li> </ul> </div>
<b><u>Effects management hierarchy (in relation to natural inland wetlands and rivers)</u></b> <sup>114</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 3.21 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below) <del>and in this RPS also applies to natural wetlands</del><sup>115</sup></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>in relation to natural inland wetlands and rivers, means an approach to managing the adverse effects of an activity on the extent or values of a wetland or river (including cumulative effects and loss of potential value) that requires that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) adverse effects are avoided where practicable,</li> <li>(b) where adverse effects cannot be avoided, they are minimised where practicable,</li> <li>(c) where adverse effects cannot be minimised, they are remedied where practicable,</li> <li>(d) where more than minor residual adverse effects cannot be avoided, minimised, or remedied, aquatic offsetting is provided, and</li> <li>(e) if aquatic compensation is not appropriate, the activity itself is avoided</li> </ul> </div>

<sup>113</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>114</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00315.014 Aurora Energy, 00235.125 OWRUG, 00511.012 PowerNet, 00320.012 Network Waitaki

<sup>115</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00315.014 Aurora Energy, 00235.125 OWRUG, 00511.012 PowerNet, 00320.012 Network Waitaki

Term	Definition
<p><b><u>Effects management hierarchy (in relation to indigenous biodiversity)</u></b><sup>116</sup></p>	<p>means an approach to managing the adverse effects of an activity of <i>indigenous biodiversity</i> that requires that:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>(a) <u>adverse effects are avoided where practicable; then</u></p> <p>(b) <u>where adverse effects cannot be avoided, they are minimised where practicable; then</u></p> <p>(c) <u>where adverse effects cannot be minimised, they are remedied where practicable; then</u></p> <p>(d) <u>where more than minor residual adverse effects cannot be avoided, minimised, or remedied, <i>biodiversity offsetting</i> is provided where possible; then</u></p> <p>(e) <u>where <i>biodiversity offsetting</i> of more than minor residual adverse effects is not possible, <i>biodiversity compensation</i> is provided; then</u></p> <p>(f) <u>if <i>biodiversity compensation</i> is not appropriate, the activity itself is avoided, unless the activity is <i>regionally significant infrastructure</i> and <i>nationally significant infrastructure</i> that is either <i>renewable electricity generation</i> or the <i>National Grid</i> then:</u></p> <p>(g) <u>if compensation is not appropriate to address any residual adverse effects:</u></p> <div style="margin-left: 20px;"> <p>(i) <u>the activity must be avoided if the residual adverse effects are significant; but</u></p> <p>(ii) <u>if the residual adverse effects are not significant, the activity must be enabled if the national significance and benefits of the activity outweigh the residual adverse effects.</u></p> </div> </div>
<p><b>Electricity sub-transmission infrastructure</b></p>	<p>means electricity infrastructure which conveys electricity between energy generation sources, the National Grid and zone substations and between zone substations.</p>
<p><b>Environment</b></p>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>includes—</p> <p>(a) ecosystems and their constituent parts, including people and communities; and</p> <p>(b) all natural and physical resources; and</p> <p>(c) amenity values; and</p> <p>(d) the social, economic, aesthetic, and cultural conditions which affect the matters stated in paragraphs (a) to (c) or which are affected by those matters</p> </div>

<sup>116</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

Term	Definition
<b>Environmental outcome</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means, in relation to a value that applies to an FMU or part of an FMU, a desired outcome that a regional council identifies and then includes as an objective in its regional plan(s)</p> </div>
<b>Esplanade reserve</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a reserve within the meaning of the Reserves Act 1977—</p> <p>(a) which is either—</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(i) a local purpose reserve within the meaning of section 23 of that Act, if vested in the territorial authority under section 239; or</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(ii) a reserve vested in the Crown or a regional council under section 237D; and</p> <p>(b) which is vested in the territorial authority, regional council, or the Crown for a purpose or purposes set out in section 229</p> </div>
<b>Esplanade strip</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a strip of land created by the registration of an instrument in accordance with section 232 for a purpose or purposes set out in section 229</p> </div>
<b>Exceedance</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 13 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Air Quality) Regulations 2004 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>for a contaminant, means an instance where the contaminant exceeds its threshold concentration in an airshed</p> </div>
<b><u>Existing, for a heat device (for the interpretation of EIT-EN-P5)</u></b> <sup>117</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Resource Management (National Environment Standards for Greenhouse Gas Emissions from Industrial Process Heat) Regulations 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>(a) means a device that, before 27 July 2023, is installed and operational, or able to be operated, at a site; and</u></p> <p><u>(b) includes a device described in paragraph (a) after it is upgraded or improved; but</u></p> <p><u>(c) does not include a device that, on or after 27 July 2023, is installed in replacement of a device described in paragraph (a)</u></p> </div>
<b><u>Exotic pasture species</u></b> <sup>118</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means a pasture species identified in the National List of Exotic Pasture Species (see clause 1.8)</u></p> </div>

<sup>117</sup> 00139.150 DCC, 00138.107 QLDC

<sup>118</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

Term	Definition
<b>Food and fibre production</b> <sup>119</sup>	<p>means the primary sector production industries (other than mining) including Arable, Dairy, Forestry and Wood Processing, Horticulture (including vegetables, viticulture and winemaking), Pork, Poultry, Bees, Red Meat and Wool (Sheep, Beef and Deer), Seafood and Cross-Sector and the related processing industries.</p> <p>Note: This definition is intended to describe the suite of activities that occur throughout Otago from a rural land use perspective and is not intended to prioritise one primary sector production industry over another.</p>
<b>Fossil fuel</b> <sup>120</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Resource Management (National Environment Standards for Greenhouse Gas Emissions from Industrial Process Heat) Regulations 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) means any carbon-based fuel sourced from fossil hydrocarbon deposits; and</p> <p>(b) includes—</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) coal, coke, diesel, liquid petroleum gas, natural gas, oil, peat, plastics, and used oil; and</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(ii) any fuel wholly or partly derived from a fuel described in paragraph (a), including tyres used as fuel; but</p> <p>(c) does not include biomass or biogas</p> </div>
<b>Freshwater or fresh water</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means all water except coastal water and geothermal water</p> </div>
<b>Freshwater management unit or FMU</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means all or any part of a water body or water bodies, and their related catchments, that a regional council determines under clause 3.8 is an appropriate unit for freshwater management and accounting purposes; and part of an FMU means any part of an FMU including, but not limited to, a specific site, river reach, water body, or part of a water body</p> </div>
<b>Functional need</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the need for a proposal or activity to traverse, locate or operate in a particular environment because the activity can only occur in that environment</p> </div>
<b>Future development strategy</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in the National Policy Statement for Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the Future Development Strategy required by subpart 4 of Part 3</p> </div>

<sup>119</sup> 00235.008 OWRUG

<sup>120</sup> 00139.150 DCC, 00138.107 QLDC

Term	Definition
<b>Greenhouse gas</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 4(1) of the Climate Change Response Act 2002 (as set in in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means—</p> <p>(a) carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>):</p> <p>(b) methane (CH<sub>4</sub>):</p> <p>(c) nitrous oxide (N<sub>2</sub>O):</p> <p>(d) any hydrofluorocarbon:</p> <p>(e) any perfluorocarbon:</p> <p>(f) sulphur hexafluoride (SF<sub>6</sub>)</p> </div>
<b>Greywater</b> <sup>121</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means liquid waste from domestic sources including sinks, basins, baths, showers and similar fixtures, but does not include sewage, or industrial and trade waste.</u></p> </div>
<b>Groundwater</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means water occupying openings, cavities, or spaces in soils or rocks beneath the surface of the ground</p> </div>
<b><u>Habitat (in relation to indigenous biodiversity)</u></b> <sup>122</sup>	<p><u>has the same meaning as in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below);</u></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means the area or environment where an organism or ecological community lives or occurs naturally for some or all of its life cycle, or as part of its seasonal feeding or breeding pattern; but does not include built structures or an area or environment where an organism is present only fleetingly.</u></p> </div>
<b>Hard protection structure</b>	<p>within the coastal environment, has the same meaning as in the Glossary of the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>includes a seawall, rock revetment, groyne, breakwater, stop bank, retaining wall or comparable structure or modification to the seabed, foreshore or coastal land that has the primary purpose or effect of protecting an activity from a coastal hazard, including erosion</p> </div> <p>and</p> <p>outside the coastal environment, means <u>any kind of structure which is specifically established for the purpose of natural hazard risk mitigation, including<sup>123</sup> any dams, weirs, stopbanks, carriageways, groynes, or reservoirs and rip rap.<sup>124</sup> and any structure or appliance of any kind which is specifically established for the purpose of natural hazard risk mitigation.<sup>125</sup></u></p>

<sup>121</sup> Consequential change from FPI109.009 Fonterra

<sup>122</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>123</sup> 00223.117 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>124</sup> 00305.002 Waka Kotahi

<sup>125</sup> 00223.117 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku, 00230.006 Forest and Bird

Term	Definition
<b>Heat device</b> <sup>126</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Resource Management (National Environment Standards for Greenhouse Gas Emissions from Industrial Process Heat) Regulations 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) means a device that produces <i>industrial process heat</i> (for example, a boiler, furnace, engine, or other combustion device); but</p> <p>(b) does not include a device used for the primary purpose of—</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) generating electricity, including a generator used for back-up electricity or for maintaining the electricity network; or</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(ii) transmitting electricity, including in mobile and fixed substations</p> </div>
<b>Highly mobile fauna area</b> <sup>127</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means an area outside an <i>SNA</i> that is an area used intermittently by <i>specified highly mobile fauna</i></p> </div>
<b>Highly productive land</b> <sup>128</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.3 of the National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means <i>land</i> that has been mapped in accordance with clause 3.4 and is included in an operative regional policy statement as required by clause 3.5 (but see clause 3.5(7) for what is treated as highly productive land before the maps are included in an operative regional policy statement and clause 3.5(6) for when <i>land</i> is rezoned and therefore ceases to be highly productive land</p> </div>
<b>Highly valued natural features and landscapes</b>	<p>highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes are areas which contain attributes and values of significance under Sections 7(c) and 7(f) of the RMA 1991, which have been identified in accordance with APP9.</p>
<b>Historic heritage</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) means those natural and physical resources that contribute to an understanding and appreciation of New Zealand’s history and cultures, deriving from any of the following qualities:</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) archaeological:</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(ii) architectural:</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(iii) cultural:</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(iv) historic:</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(v) scientific:</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(vi) technological; and</p> </div>

<sup>126</sup> 00139.150 DCC, 00138.107 QLDC

<sup>127</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>128</sup> 00139.150 DCC, 00138.107 QLDC

Term	Definition
	<p>(b) includes—</p> <p>(i) historic sites, structures, places, and areas; and</p> <p>(ii) archaeological sites; and</p> <p>(iii) sites of significance to Māori, including wāhi tapu; and</p> <p>(iv) surroundings associated with the natural and physical resources</p>
<b>Housing and Business Development Capacity Assessment</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in the National Policy Statement for Urban Development Capacity 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the Housing and Business Development Capacity Assessment (HBA) required by subpart 5 of Part 3</p> </div>
<b><u>Identified for future urban development</u></b> <sup>129</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.3 of the National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>(a) identified in a published Future Development Strategy as land suitable for commencing urban development over the next 10 years;</u>  <u>or</u>  <u>(b) identified:</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;"><u>(i) in a strategic planning document as an area suitable for commencing urban development over the next 10 years; and</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;"><u>(ii) at a level of detail that makes the boundaries of the area identifiable in practice</u></p> </div>
<b><u>Improved pasture</u></b> <sup>130</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below):</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means an area of land where exotic pasture species have been deliberately sown or maintained for the purpose of pasture production, and species composition and growth has been modified and is being managed for livestock grazing.</u></p> </div>
<b><u>Indigenous biodiversity</u></b> <sup>131</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means the living organisms that occur naturally in New Zealand, and the ecological complexes of which they are part, including all forms of indigenous flora, fauna, and fungi, and their <i>habitats</i>.</u></p> </div>
<b>Indigenous vegetation</b>	<p>means vascular and non-vascular plants that, in relation to a particular area, are native to the ecological district<sup>132</sup> or freshwater or marine bioregion<sup>133</sup> in which that area is located</p>
<b><u>Indigenous species (in relation</u></b>	<p><u>means species that occur naturally in Otago.</u></p>

<sup>129</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00101.044 Tōitu Te Whenua

<sup>130</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>131</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>132</sup> McEwen, W Medium (ed), 1987. Ecological regions and districts of New Zealand. Wellington: Department of Conservation (new footnote attributed to 00138.027 QLDC)

<sup>133</sup> 00137.013 Director General of Conservation



Term	Definition
<b>to the ECO chapter)</b> <sup>134</sup>	
<b>Industrial activities</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means an activity that manufactures, fabricates, processes, packages, distributes, repairs, stores, or disposes of materials (including raw, processed, or partly processed materials) or goods. It includes any ancillary activity to the industrial activity</p> </div>
<b>Industrial and trade waste</b> <sup>135</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means liquid waste, with or without matter in suspension, from the receipt, manufacture or processing of materials as part of a commercial, industrial or trade process, but excludes sewage and greywater.</u></p> </div>
<b>Industrial process heat</b> <sup>136</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Resource Management (National Environment Standards for Greenhouse Gas Emissions from Industrial Process Heat) Regulations 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) <u>means thermal energy that is used—</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><u>(i) in industrial processes, including in manufacturing and in the processing of raw materials; or</u></li> <li><u>(ii) to grow plants or other photosynthesising organisms indoors; but</u></li> </ul> <p>(b) <u>does not include thermal energy used in the warming of spaces for people’s comfort (for example, heating of commercial offices)</u></p> </div>

<sup>134</sup> 00120.009 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

<sup>135</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.189 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00230.094 Forest and Bird

<sup>136</sup> 00139.150 DCC, 00138.107 QLDC

Term	Definition
Infrastructure	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>means—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) pipelines that distribute or transmit natural or manufactured gas, petroleum, biofuel, or geothermal energy:</li> <li>(b) a network for the purpose of telecommunication as defined in section 5 of the Telecommunications Act 2001:</li> <li>(c) a network for the purpose of radiocommunication as defined in section 2(1) of the Radiocommunications Act 1989:</li> <li>(d) facilities for the generation of electricity, lines used or intended to be used to convey electricity, and support structures for lines used or intended to be used to convey electricity, excluding facilities, lines, and support structures if a person— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) uses them in connection with the generation of electricity for the person’s use; and</li> <li>(ii) does not use them to generate any electricity for supply to any other person:</li> </ul> </li> <li>(e) a water supply distribution system, including a system for irrigation:</li> <li>(f) a drainage or sewerage system:</li> <li>(g) structures for transport on land by cycleways, rail, roads, walkways, or any other means:</li> <li>(h) facilities for the loading or unloading of cargo or passengers transported on land by any means:</li> <li>(i) an airport as defined in section 2 of the Airport Authorities Act 1966:</li> <li>(j) a navigation installation as defined in section 2 of the Civil Aviation Act 1990:</li> <li>(k) facilities for the loading or unloading of cargo or passengers carried by sea, including a port related commercial undertaking as defined in section 2(1) of the Port Companies Act 1988:</li> <li>(l) anything described as a network utility operation in regulations made for the purposes of the definition of network utility operator in section 166</li> </ul> </div>

Term	Definition
<b>Intrinsic values</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>In relation to ecosystems, means those aspects of ecosystems and their constituent parts which have value in their own right, including –</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) their biological and genetic diversity; and</li> <li>(b) the essential characteristics that determine an ecosystem’s integrity, form, functioning and resilience</li> </ul> </div>
<b>Kāika</b>	means a settlement of Kāi Tahu or their tūpuna.
<b>Kaitiakitanga or kaitiakitaka</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the exercise of guardianship by the tangata whenua of an area in accordance with tikanga Māori in relation to natural and physical resources; and includes the ethic of stewardship</p> </div>
<b>Key civic public spaces</b> <sup>137</sup>	<p><del>are publicly owned and accessible public spaces identified by local authorities where the public use and enjoyment of the space is strongly influenced by sun and daylight access to the extent that loss of sun and daylight may diminish this use and enjoyment.</del></p>
<b>Lake</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a body of fresh water which is entirely or nearly surrounded by land</p> </div>
<b>Land</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) includes land covered by water and the airspace above land; and</li> <li>(b) in a national environmental standard dealing with a regional council function under section 30 or a regional rule, does not include the bed of a lake or river; and</li> <li>(c) in a national environmental standard dealing with a territorial authority function under section 31 or a district rule, includes the surface of water in a lake or river</li> </ul> </div>
<b>Land-based primary production</b> <sup>138</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.3 of the National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land 2022 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means production, from agricultural, pastoral, horticulture, or forestry activities, that is reliant on the soil resource of the <i>land</i></p> </div>

<sup>137</sup> 00223.019 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>138</sup> 00021.002 Matakanui Gold Limited, 00016.009 Alluvium Limited and Stoney Creek Mining, 00017.007 Danny Walker and others, 00226.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00223.094 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

Term	Definition
<b>Landfill</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means an area used for, or previously used for, the disposal of solid waste. It excludes cleanfill areas</p> </div>
<b>Lifeline utilities</b>	<p>means utilities provided by those entities listed in Schedule 1 of the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002</p>
<b>Limit</b> <sup>139</sup>	<p><u>In the LF – Land and Freshwater chapter, has the same meaning defined in the NPSFM, and elsewhere, “limit” has its natural and ordinary meaning</u></p>
<b>Limit (in relation to freshwater)</b> <sup>140</sup>	<p><u>has the same meaning as in clause 1.4(1) of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</u></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means either a limit on resource use or a take limit</u></p> </div>
<b>Local authority</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 5 of the Local Government Act 2002 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a regional council or <i>territorial authority</i></p> </div>
<b>Loss of values</b> <sup>141</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 3.21(1) of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below) and in this RPS also refers to <i>natural wetlands</i></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>in relation to a natural inland <i>wetland</i> or <i>river</i>, means the <i>wetland</i> or <i>river</i> is less able to provide for the following existing or potential values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) any value identified for it under the NOF process; or</li> <li>(b) any of the following, whether or not they are identified under the NOF process: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) ecosystem health</li> <li>(ii) indigenous biodiversity</li> <li>(iii) hydrological functioning</li> <li>(iv) Māori freshwater values</li> <li>(v) amenity</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </div>
<b>LUC 1, 2, or 3 land</b> <sup>142</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.3 of the National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means <i>land</i> identified as Land Use Capability Class 1, 2, or 3, as mapped by the New Zealand Land Resource Inventory or by any more detailed mapping that uses the Land Use Capability classification</p> </div>

<sup>139</sup> 00230.125 Forest & Bird

<sup>140</sup> 00231.009 Fish and Game

<sup>141</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment

<sup>142</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00101.044 Tōitu Te Whenua

Term	Definition
<u><b>Mahika kai</b></u> <sup>143</sup>	<u>means gathering of food and natural materials by Kāi Tahu whānui in accordance with tikaka, the places where those resources are gathered, and the work, methods and cultural activities involved in obtaining them</u>
<u><b>Maintenance of improved pasture</b></u> <sup>144</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below):</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>includes the removal of indigenous vegetation for the purpose of maintaining the improved pasture, whether the removal is by way of cutting, crushing, applying chemicals, draining, burning, cultivating, over-planting, applying seed of exotic pasture species, mob stocking, or making changes to soils, hydrology, or landforms.</u></p> </div>
<u><b>Maintenance of indigenous biodiversity</b></u> <sup>145</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below):</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means:</u></p> <p>(a) <u>the maintenance and at least no overall reduction of all the following:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><u>(i) the size of populations of <i>indigenous</i> species:</u></li> <li><u>(ii) indigenous species occupancy across their natural range:</u></li> <li><u>(iii) the properties and function of ecosystems and <i>habitats</i> used or occupied by <i>indigenous biodiversity</i>:</u></li> <li><u>(iv) the full range and extent of ecosystems and <i>habitats</i> used or occupied by <i>indigenous biodiversity</i>:</u></li> <li><u>(v) connectivity between, and buffering around, ecosystems used or occupied by <i>indigenous biodiversity</i>:</u></li> <li><u>(vi) the resilience and adaptability of ecosystems; and</u></li> </ul> <p>(b) <u>where necessary, the restoration and enhancement of ecosystems and <i>habitats</i>.</u></p> </div>
<u><b>Māori land</b></u> <sup>146</sup>	<p><u>for the purposes of this RPS, means land within the region that is:</u></p> <p>(1) <u>owned by Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu or its constituent papatipu rūnaka and to be used for the purpose of:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><u>(a) locating papakāika development away from land that is either at risk from natural hazards, including climate change effects such as sea level rise, or is otherwise unsuitable for papakāika development,</u></li> <li><u>(b) extending the area of an existing papakāika development,</u></li> </ul> <p>(2) <u>Māori communal land gazetted as Māori reservation under s338 Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993,</u></p>

<sup>143</sup> 00226.0038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>144</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>145</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>146</sup> 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

Term	Definition
	<p><u>(3) Māori customary land and Māori freehold land as defined in s4 and s129 Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993,</u></p> <p><u>(4) former Māori land or general land owned by Māori (as those terms are defined in Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993) that has at any time been acquired by the Crown or any local or public body for a public work or other public purpose, and has been subsequently returned to its former Kāi Tahu owners or their successors and remains in their ownership,</u></p> <p><u>(5) general land owned by Māori (as defined in Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993) that was previously Māori freehold land, has ceased to have that status under an order of the Māori Land Court made on or after 1 July 1993 or under Part 1 of the Māori Affairs Amendment Act 1967 on or after 1 April 1968, that is in the ownership of Kāi Tahu whānui,</u></p> <p><u>(6) vested in a Trust or Māori incorporation under Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993,</u></p> <p><u>(7) held or claimed (whether as an entitlement, part of an ancillary claim, or because it was transferred or vested) either,</u></p> <p><u>(a) as part of redress for the settlement of Treaty of Waitangi claims, or</u></p> <p><u>(b) by the exercise of rights under a Treaty settlement Act or Treaty settlement deed (as those terms are defined under the Urban Development Act 2020), or</u></p> <p><u>(c) as SILNA lands,</u></p> <p><u>(8) owned by a person or persons with documentary evidence of Kāi Tahu whakapapa connection to the land, where that evidence is provided by either the Māori Land Court or the Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Whakapapa Unit.</u></p>
<b>Mana whenua</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below) and in this RPS also refers to the people who hold customary authority</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means customary authority exercised by an iwi or hapu in an identified area</p> </div>
<b>Mineral</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2(1) of the Crown Minerals Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a naturally occurring inorganic substance beneath or at the surface of the earth, whether or not under water; and includes all metallic minerals, non-metallic minerals, fuel minerals, precious stones, industrial rocks and building stones, and a prescribed substance within the meaning of the Atomic Energy Act 1945</p> </div>

Term	Definition
<b>Mixing zone</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Glossary of the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>the area within which ‘reasonable mixing’ of contaminants from discharges occurs in receiving waters and within which the relevant water quality standards do not apply</p> </div>
<b>Multiple hazards</b> <sup>147</sup>	<p><del>means where two or more unrelated natural hazard events may occur.</del></p>
<b>National grid</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement on Electricity Transmission 2008 for Renewable Electricity Generation 2011<sup>148</sup> (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the <u>assets</u> lines and associated equipment used or owned by Transpower <u>New Zealand</u> to convey electricity<sup>149</sup></p> </div>
<b>National Objectives Framework</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the framework for managing freshwater as described in subpart 2 of Part 3</p> </div>
<b>Nationally significant infrastructure</b>	<p>has, to the extent applicable to the Otago Region, the same meaning as in clause 1.4(1) of the National Policy Statement for Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below):</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>means all of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) State highways</li> <li>(b) the national grid electricity transmission network</li> <li>(c) renewable electricity generation facilities that connect with the national grid</li> <li>(d) the high-pressure gas transmission pipeline network operating in the North Island</li> <li>(e) the refinery pipeline between Marsden Point and Wiri</li> <li>(f) the New Zealand rail network (including light rail)</li> <li>(g) rapid transit services (as defined in this clause)</li> <li>(h) any airport (but not its ancillary commercial activities) used for regular air transport services by aeroplanes capable of carrying more than 30 passengers</li> <li>(i) the port facilities (but not the facilities of any ancillary commercial activities) of each port company referred to in item 6 of Part A of Schedule 1 of the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002</li> </ul> </div>

<sup>147</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA – term not used in pORPS so no definition needed

<sup>148</sup> 00314.004 Transpower

<sup>149</sup> 00314.004 Transpower

Term	Definition
<b>Natural and physical resources</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>includes land, water, air, soil, minerals, and energy, all forms of plants and animals (whether native to New Zealand or introduced), and all structures</p> </div>
<b>Natural hazard</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means any atmospheric or earth or water related occurrence (including earthquake, tsunami, erosion, volcanic and geothermal activity, landslip, subsidence, sedimentation, wind, drought, fire, or flooding) the action of which adversely affects or may adversely affect human life, property, or other aspects of the environment</p> </div>
<b>Natural hazard works</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 51(1) of the National Environmental Standard for Freshwater 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means works for the purpose of removing material, such as trees, debris, and sediment, that—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) is deposited as the result of a natural hazard, and</li> <li>(b) is causing, or is likely to cause, an immediate hazard to people or property</li> </ul> </div>
<b>Naturally rare</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Glossary of the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>originally rare: Rare before the arrival of humans in New Zealand</p> </div>
<b>Natural wetland</b>	<p><del>has the same meaning as in clause 3.21 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</del></p> <p><del>means a wetland (as defined in the Act) that is not:</del></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><del>(a) a wetland constructed by artificial means (unless it was constructed to offset impacts on, or restore, an existing or former natural wetland); or</del></li> <li><del>(b) a geothermal wetland; or</del></li> <li><del>(c) any area of improved pasture that, at the commencement date, is dominated by (that is more than 50% of) exotic pasture species and is subject to temporary rain-derived water pooling</del></li> </ul>
<b><u>New, for a heat device (for the interpretation of EIT-EN-P5)<sup>150</sup></u></b>	<p><u>has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Resource Management (National Environment Standards for Greenhouse Gas Emissions from Industrial Process Heat) Regulations 2023 (as set out in the box below)</u></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means not <i>existing</i></u></p> </div>
<b>Nohoaka or nohoanga</b>	<p>means a site occupied by Kāi Tahu on a seasonal and temporary basis for mahika kai or other customary purposes.</p>

<sup>150</sup> 00139.150 DCC, 00138.107 QLDC



Term	Definition
<b>Occupancy</b> <sup>151</sup>	<u>means, in relation to measuring indigenous biodiversity, the number of units per area occupied by a species or taxa</u>
<b>Operational need</b>	has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the need for a proposal or activity to traverse, locate or operate in a particular environment because of technical, logistical or operational characteristics or constraints</p> </div>
<b>Other infrastructure</b> <sup>152</sup>	has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the National Environmental Standard for Freshwater 2020 (as set out in the box below)  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><del>means infrastructure, other than specified infrastructure, that was lawfully established before, and in place at, the close of 2 September 2020</del></p> </div>
<b>Outstanding water body</b>	has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a water body, or part of a water body, identified in a regional policy statement, a regional plan, or a water conservation order as having one or more outstanding values</p> </div>
<b>Over-allocation, or over-allocated</b> <sup>153</sup>	has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>in relation to both the quantity and quality of freshwater, <del>is</del> <u>means</u> the situation where:</p> <p>(a) resource use exceeds a limit; <del>or</del></p> <p>(b) if limits have not been set, an FMU or part of an FMU is degraded or degrading; <del>or</del></p> <p><u>(c) an FMU or part of an FMU is not achieving an environmental flow or level set for it under clause 3.16</u></p> </div>
<b>Papakāika or papakāinga</b>	means <u>subdivision</u> , <sup>154</sup> use and development by <i>mana whenua</i> of <u>Māori land and associated resources</u> <del>ancestral or tribal lands</del> <sup>155</sup> to <u>provide for sustain themselves in general</u> <sup>156</sup> accordance with <u>tikaka tikanga</u> Māori for their <u>cultural and traditional purposes</u> , which may include <u>residential activities</u> <del>and non-residential activities</del> for cultural, social, housing, educational, <sup>157</sup> recreational, environmental or <u>home occupation</u> <del>limited commercial</del> <sup>158</sup> purposes.

<sup>151</sup> 00223.099 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku, 00226.215 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>152</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from FPI001.019 DCC, FPI026.031 Federated Farmers, FPI027.027 Contact

<sup>153</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>154</sup> 00010.003 Cain Whanau

<sup>155</sup> 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

<sup>156</sup> 00010.003 Cain Whanau

<sup>157</sup> 00010.003 Cain Whanau

<sup>158</sup> 00010.003 Cain Whanau

Term	Definition
<b>Pest</b> <sup>159</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Biosecurity Act 1993 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means an organism specified as a <i>pest</i> in a <i>pest</i> management plan</p> </div>
<b>Plantation forestry</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for <u>Commercial Plantation</u><sup>160</sup> Forestry) Regulations 2017 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>means a forest deliberately established for commercial purposes, being—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) at least 1 ha of continuous forest cover of forest species that has been planted and has or will be harvested or replanted; and</li> <li>(b) includes all associated forestry infrastructure; but</li> <li>(c) does not include— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) a shelter belt of forest species, where the tree crown cover has, or is likely to have, an average width of less than 30 m; or</li> <li>(ii) forest species in urban areas; or</li> <li>(iii) nurseries and seed orchards; or</li> <li>(iv) trees grown for fruit or nuts; or</li> <li>(v) long-term ecological restoration planting of forest species; or</li> <li>(vi) willows and poplars space planted for soil conservation purposes</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </div>
<b>PM<sub>10</sub></b>	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Air Quality) Regulations 2004 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p>means particulate matter that is—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) less than 10 micrometres in aerodynamic diameter; and</li> <li>(b) measured in accordance with the United States Code of Federal Regulations, Title 40—Protection of Environment, Volume 2, Part 50, Appendix J — Reference method for the determination of particulate matter as PM<sub>10</sub> in the atmosphere</li> </ul> </div>
<b>PM<sub>2.5</sub></b>	<p>means particulate matter that is less than 2.5 micrometres in aerodynamic diameter.</p>

<sup>159</sup> 00239.007 Federated Farmers, 00411.017 Wayfare

<sup>160</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

Term	Definition
<b>Polluted airshed</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 17(4) of the National Environmental Standards for Air Quality 2004 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) an airshed becomes a polluted airshed on and from 1 September 2012 or any later day if, for the immediately prior 5-year period—</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(i) the airshed has meaningful PM10 data for at least a 12-month period; and</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(ii) the airshed’s average exceedances of PM10 (as calculated under regulation 16D) was more than 1 per year; and</p> <p>(b) an airshed stops being a polluted airshed on and from any day if the PM10 standard was not breached in the airshed in the immediately prior 5-year period</p> </div>
<b>Primary contact site<sup>161</sup></b>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><del>in relation to both the quantity and quality of freshwater, is the means a site identified by a regional council that it considers is regularly used, or would be regularly used but for existing freshwater quality, for recreational activities such as swimming, paddling, boating, or watersports, and particularly for activities where there is a high likelihood of water or water vapour being ingested or inhaled</del></p> </div>
<b>Primary production</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means:</p> <p>(a) an aquaculture, agricultural, pastoral, horticultural, mining, quarrying or forestry activities; and</p> <p>(b) includes initial processing, as an ancillary activity, of commodities that result from the listed activities in a);</p> <p>(c) includes any land and buildings used for the production of the commodities from a) and used for the initial processing of the commodities in b); but</p> <p>(d) excludes further processing of those commodities into a different product</p> </div>

<sup>161</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

Term	Definition
<b>Productive capacity</b> <sup>162</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.3 of the National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><u>in relation to land, means the ability of the land to support land-based primary production over the long term, based on an assessment of:</u></p> <p>(a) <u>physical characteristics (such as soil type, properties, and versatility); and</u></p> <p>(b) <u>legal constraints (such as consent notices, local authority covenants, and easements); and</u></p> <p>(c) <u>the size and shape of existing and proposed land parcels</u></p> </div>
<b>Public transport</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>means any existing or planned service for the carriage of passengers (other than an aeroplane) that is available to the public generally by means of:</p> <p>(a) a vehicle designed or adapted to carry more than 12 persons (including the driver), or</p> <p>(b) a rail vehicle, or</p> <p>(c) a ferry</p> </div>
<b>Receiving environment (in relation to freshwater and the coastal marine area)</b> <sup>163</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>includes, but is not limited to, any water body (such as a river, lake, wetland or aquifer) and the coastal marine area (including estuaries)</p> </div>
<b>Reclamation</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>means the manmade formation of permanent dry land by the positioning of material into or onto any part of a waterbody, bed of a lake or river or the coastal marine area, and:</p> <p>(a) includes the construction of any causeway; but</p> <p>(b) excludes the construction of natural hazard protection structures such as seawalls, breakwaters or groynes except where the purpose of those structures is to form dry land</p> </div>

<sup>162</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00014.031 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.01 Universal Developments, 00210.012 Lane Hocking, 00211.01 LAC

<sup>163</sup> 00121.009 Ravensdown

Term	Definition
Regional plan	<p>has the same meaning as in section 43AA of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) means an operative plan approved by a regional council under Schedule 1 (including all operative changes to the plan (whether arising from a review or otherwise)); and</p> <p>(b) includes a regional coastal plan</p> </div>
Regionally significant infrastructure	<p>means:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) <u>roads which provide a lifeline connection for a community OR roads classified as being of regional importance in accordance with the One Network Framework<sup>164</sup> Road Classification,<sup>165</sup></u></li> <li>(2) electricity sub-transmission infrastructure,</li> <li>(2A) <u>significant electricity distribution infrastructure,<sup>166</sup></u></li> <li>(3) renewable electricity generation facilities that connect with the local distribution network but not including renewable electricity generation facilities designed and operated principally for supplying a single premise or facility,</li> <li>(4) telecommunication and radiocommunication <u>networks facilities,<sup>167</sup></u></li> <li>(5) <del>facilities for</del> public transport, <u>including terminals and stations,<sup>168</sup></u></li> <li>(6) the following airports: Dunedin, Queenstown, <u>Wānaka Wānaka,</u> Alexandra, Balclutha, Cromwell, <u>Ōamaru Ōamaru, Taieri Taieri.<sup>169</sup></u></li> <li>(7) navigation infrastructure associated with airports and commercial ports which are nationally or regionally significant,</li> <li>(8) defence facilities <u>for defence purposes in accordance with the Defence Act 1990,<sup>170</sup></u></li> <li>(8A) <u>established community-scale irrigation and stockwater infrastructure,<sup>171</sup></u></li> <li>(9) community drinking water abstraction, supply treatment and distribution <i>infrastructure</i> that provides no fewer than 25 households with drinking water for not less than 90 days each calendar year, and community water supply abstraction, treatment and distribution <i>infrastructure</i> (excluding delivery systems or infrastructure primarily deployed for the delivery of water for irrigation of land or rural agricultural drinking-water supplies),</li> <li>(10) community stormwater <i>infrastructure</i>,</li> <li>(11) wastewater and sewage collection, treatment and disposal infrastructure serving no fewer than 25 households, <u>and</u></li> <li>(11A) <u>oil terminals, bulk fuel storage and supply infrastructure, and ancillary pipelines at Port Chalmers and Dunedin,<sup>172</sup></u></li> <li>(12) Otago Regional Council's hazard mitigation works including flood protection infrastructure and drainage schemes<sub>2</sub>,</li> <li>(13) <u>landfills and associated solid waste sorting and transfer facilities which are designated by, or are owned or operated by a local</u></li> </ol>

<sup>164</sup> 00139.007 DCC

<sup>165</sup> <https://www.nzta.govt.nz/roads-and-rail/road-efficiency-group/projects/onrc> (accessed 26 May 2021)

<sup>166</sup> 00315.010 Aurora Energy, 00320.001 Network Waitaki, 00511.001 PowerNet

<sup>167</sup> 00310.002 Chorus, Spark and Vodafone

<sup>168</sup> 00226.034 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>169</sup> 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>170</sup> 00230.011 Forest and Bird

<sup>171</sup> 00213.002 Waitaki Irrigators

<sup>172</sup> 00510.009 The Fuel Companies

Term	Definition
	<p><u>authority.</u><sup>173</sup>            (14) <u>ski area infrastructure, and</u><sup>174</sup>            (15) <u>any infrastructure identified as nationally significant infrastructure.</u><sup>175</sup></p>
<b>Renewable electricity generation</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement for Renewable Electricity Generation 2011 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means generation of electricity from solar, wind, hydroelectricity, geothermal, biomass, tidal, wave, or ocean current energy sources</p> </div>
<b>Renewable electricity generation activities</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement for Renewable Electricity Generation 2011 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the construction, operation and maintenance of structures associated with renewable electricity generation. This includes small and community-scale distributed renewable generation activities and the system of electricity conveyance required to convey electricity to the distribution network and/or the national grid and electricity storage technologies associated with renewable electricity</p> </div>
<b>Replanting</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for <u>Commercial Plantation</u><sup>176</sup> Forestry) Regulations 2017 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the planting and growing of plantation forestry trees on land less than 5 years after plantation forestry harvesting has occurred</p> </div>
<b>Residual risk</b> <sup>177</sup>	<p><del>means the risk remaining after the implementation or undertaking of all available and practicable risk management measures.</del></p>
<b>Resilient or resilience</b>	<p>means the capacity and ability to withstand or recover quickly from adverse conditions.</p>
<b>Resource consent</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>has the meaning set out in section 87; and includes all conditions to which the consent is subject</p> </div>

<sup>173</sup> 00138.106 QLDC

<sup>174</sup> 00206.013 Trojan and 00411.020 Wayfare

<sup>175</sup> 00311.003 Trustpower, 00301.007 Port Otago

<sup>176</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>177</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00138.147 QLDC

Term	Definition
<p><b><u>Restoration (in relation to indigenous biodiversity)</u></b><sup>178</sup></p>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means the active intervention and management of modified or degraded habitats, ecosystems, landforms, and landscapes in order to maintain or reinstate indigenous natural character, ecological and physical processes, and cultural and visual qualities, and may include enhancement activities</u></p> </div>
<p><b><u>Reverse sensitivity</u></b><sup>179</sup></p>	<p><u>means the potential for the operation of an existing lawfully established activity to be constrained or curtailed by the more recent establishment or intensification of other activities which are sensitive to the effects of the established activity.</u></p>
<p><b><u>Riprap</u></b><sup>180</sup></p>	<p><u>a permanent layer or large, angular rocks, concrete or boulders typically used to armour, stabilize and protect the land surface and margins of water bodies against erosion and scour in areas of concentrated water flow or wave energy</u></p>
<p><b><u>Risk (in relation to natural hazards)</u></b><sup>181</sup></p>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Glossary in the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Risk is often expressed in terms of a combination of the consequences of an event (including changes in circumstances) and the associated likelihood of occurrence (AS/NZS ISO 31000:2009 <i>Risk management – Principles and guidelines</i>, November 2009)</p> </div>
<p><b>River</b></p>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a continually or intermittently flowing body of fresh water; and includes a stream and modified watercourse; but does not include any artificial watercourse (including an irrigation canal, water supply race, canal for the supply of water for electricity power generation, and farm drainage canal)</p> </div>

<sup>178</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>179</sup> 00233.005 Fonterra, 00305.005 Waka Kotahi

<sup>180</sup> 005 Waka Kotahi 193 0

<sup>181</sup> 00230.013 Forest and Bird

Term	Definition
<p><b>Road</b><sup>182</sup></p>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 315 of the Local Government Act 1974; and includes a motorway as defined in section 2(1) of the Government Roading Powers Act 1989 (as set out in the boxes below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>road means the whole of any land which is within a district, and which—</p> <p>(a) immediately before the commencement of this Part was a road or street or public highway; or</p> <p>(b) immediately before the inclusion of any area in the district was a public highway within that area; or</p> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(c) is laid out by the council as a road or street after the commencement of this Part; or</p> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(d) is vested in the council for the purpose of a road as shown on a deposited survey plan; or</p> <p>(e) is vested in the council as a road or street pursuant to any other enactment;—</p> <p>and includes—</p> <p>(f) except where elsewhere provided in this Part, any access way or service lane which before the commencement of this Part was under the control of any council or is laid out or constructed by or vested in any council as an access way or service lane or is declared by the Minister of Works and Development as an access way or service lane after the commencement of this Part or is declared by the Minister of Lands as an access way or service lane on or after 1 April 1988:</p> <p>(g) every square or place intended for use of the public generally, and every bridge, culvert, drain, ford, gate, building, or other thing belonging thereto or lying upon the line or within the limits thereof;—</p> <p>but, except as provided in the Public Works Act 1981 or in any regulations under that Act, does not include a motorway within the meaning of that Act or the Government Roading Powers Act 1989</p> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>motorway—</p> <p>(a) means a motorway declared as such by the Governor-General in Council under section 138 of the Public Works Act 1981 or under section 71 of this Act; and</p> <p>(b) includes all bridges, drains, culverts, or other structures or works forming part of any motorway so declared; but does not include any local road, access way, or service lane (or the supports of any such road, way, or lane) that crosses over or under a motorway on a different level</p> </div>



Term	Definition
Rural area	means any area of land that is not an <i>urban area</i>
<b>Rural industry</b> <sup>183</sup>	has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <u>means an industry or business undertaken in a rural environment that directly supports, services, or is dependent on primary production</u> </div>
<b>Sensitive activities</b>	has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement on Electricity Transmission 2008 (as set out in the box below)  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> includes schools, residential buildings and hospitals </div>
<b>Sewage</b>	has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> means human excrement and urine </div>
<b>Ship</b>	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> has the same meaning as in section 2(1) of the Maritime Transport Act 1994 </div>
<b>Significant electricity distribution infrastructure</b> <sup>184</sup>	<u>means electricity infrastructure identified in a district plan which supplies:</u> <u>(a) essential public services (such as hospitals and lifeline facilities);</u> <u>(b) other regionally significant infrastructure or individual consumers requiring supply of 1MW or more;</u> <u>(c) 700 or more consumers; or</u> <u>(d) communities that are isolated and which do not have an alternative supply in the event the line or cable is compromised and where the assets are difficult to replace in the event of failure.</u>
<b>Significant natural area</b> <sup>185</sup>	has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (except that a reference to Appendix 2 rather than Appendix 1) as set out below:  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <u>means:</u>  <u>(a) any area that, after the commencement date, is notified or included in a district plan as an SNA following an assessment of the area in accordance with Appendix 2; and</u>  <u>(b) any area that, on the commencement date, is already identified in a policy statement or plan as an area of significant indigenous vegetation or significant habitat of indigenous fauna (regardless of how it is described); in which case it remains as an significant natural area unless or until a suitably qualified ecologist engaged by the relevant local authority determines that it is not an area of significant indigenous vegetation or significant habitat of indigenous fauna.</u> </div>

<sup>182</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA – definition unnecessary

<sup>183</sup> 00233.007 Fonterra, 00221.001 Silver Fern Farms, 00411.019 Wafare Group and 00206.012 Trojan

<sup>184</sup> 00315.058 Aurora Energy, 00320.026 Network Waitaki and 00511.026 PowerNet

<sup>185</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

Term	Definition
	means areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna that are located outside the coastal environment.
<b><u>Ski area infrastructure</u></b> <sup>186</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in the clause 3.21(1) of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><i>infrastructure</i> necessary for the operation of a ski area and includes: transport mechanisms (such as aerial and surface lifts, roads, and tracks); facilities for the loading or unloading of passengers or goods; facilities or systems for water, sewerage, electricity, and gas; communications networks; and snowmaking and snow safety systems</p> </div>
<b>Small and community scale distributed electricity generation</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement for Renewable Electricity Generation 2011 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means renewable electricity generation for the purpose of using electricity on a particular site, or supplying an immediate community, or connecting into the distribution network</p> </div>
<b>Social and cultural buildings</b>	<p>For the purposes of the consequence table within APP6, these are buildings that are of social and cultural importance. These include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Places of worship;</li> <li>(b) Museums;</li> <li>(c) Art galleries;</li> <li>(d) Marae; and</li> <li>(e) Educational facilities</li> </ul>
<b>Solid fuel</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Air Quality) Regulations 2004 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a solid substance that releases useable energy when burnt (for example, wood and coal)</p> </div>
<b><u>Specified highly mobile fauna</u></b> <sup>187</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation in the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023, except that reference to Appendix 2 is amended to APP12 (as set out in the box below):</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means the <i>Threatened or At Risk species</i> of highly mobile fauna that are identified in APP12.</p> </div>
<b><u>Specified infrastructure</u></b> <sup>188</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 3.21 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)<sup>189</sup></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means any of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) infrastructure that delivers a service operated by a lifeline utility (as defined in the Civil Defence Emergency</li> </ul> </div>

<sup>186</sup> 00206.015 Trojan and 00411.022 Wayfare

<sup>187</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>188</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from FPI001.019 DCC, FPI026.031 Federated Farmers, FPI027.027 Contact

<sup>189</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from FPI001.019 DCC, FPI026.031 Federated Farmers, FPI027.027 Contact

Term	Definition
	<p><del>Management Act 2002),</del></p> <p><del>(b) regionally significant infrastructure identified as such in a regional policy statement or regional plan,</del></p> <p><del>(c) any public flood control, flood protection, or drainage works carried out:</del></p> <p><del>(i) by or on behalf of a local authority, including works carried out for the purposes set out in section 133 of the Soil Conservation and Rivers Control Act 1951, or</del></p> <p><del>(ii) for the purpose of drainage by drainage districts under the Land Drainage Act 1908</del></p>
<p><b><u>Specified infrastructure (in relation to indigenous biodiversity)<sup>190</sup></u></b></p>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means any of the following:</u></p> <p><u>(a) infrastructure that delivers a service operated by a lifeline utility (as defined in the Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002):</u></p> <p><u>(b) regionally or nationally significant infrastructure identified as such in a National Policy Statement, the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement, or a regional policy statement or plan:</u></p> <p><u>(c) infrastructure that is necessary to support housing development, that is included in a proposed or operative plan or identified for development in any relevant strategy document (including a future development strategy or spatial strategy) adopted by a local authority, in an urban environment (as defined in the National Policy Statement on Urban Development 2020):</u></p> <p><u>(d) any public flood control, flood protection, or drainage works carried out:</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><u>(i) by or on behalf of local authority, including works carried out for the purposes set out in section 133 of the Soil Conservation and Rivers Control Act 1941; or</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><u>(ii) for the purpose of drainage, by drainage districts under the Land Drainage Act 1908:</u></p> <p><u>(e) defence facilities operated by the New Zealand Defence Force to meet its obligations under the Defence Act 1990.</u></p> </div>
<p><b><u>Specified rivers and lakes</u></b></p>	<p>has the same meaning as in Appendix 3 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><u>means:</u></p> <p>(a) rivers that are fourth order or greater, using the methods outlined in the River Environment Classification System, National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research, Version 1, and</p> <p>(b) lakes with a perimeter of 1.5km or more</p> </div>

<sup>190</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

Term	Definition
<b>Stormwater</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means run-off that has been intercepted, channelled, diverted, intensified or accelerated by human modification of a land surface, or run-off from the surface of any structure, as a result of precipitation and includes any contaminants contained within</p> </div>
<b>Structure</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means any building, equipment, device, or other facility made by people and which is fixed to land; and includes any raft</p> </div>
<b>Structure plan</b>	<p>means a framework to prescribe development of an area, including land use patterns, infrastructure, linkages and other key features and constraints that affect the development.</p>
<b>Subdivision</b>	<p>has the same meaning as “subdivision of land” in section 218(1)<sup>191</sup> of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(1) — In this Act, the term subdivision of land<sup>192</sup> means—</p> <p>(a) the division of an allotment—</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">(i) by an application to the Registrar-General of Land for the issue of a separate record of title for any part of the allotment; or</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">(ii) by the disposition by way of sale or offer for sale of the fee simple to part of the allotment; or</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">(iii) by a lease of part of the allotment which, including renewals, is or could be for a term of more than 35 years; or</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">(iv) by the grant of a company lease or cross lease in respect of any part of the allotment; or</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">(v) by the deposit of a unit plan, or an application to the Registrar-General of Land for the issue of a separate record of title for any part of a unit on a unit plan; or</p> <p>(b) an application to the Registrar-General of Land for the issue of a separate record of title in circumstances where the issue of that record of title is prohibited by section 226,—</p> <p>and the term subdivide land has a corresponding meaning</p> </div>
<b>Surf break</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Glossary in the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>A natural feature that is comprised of swell, currents, water levels,</p> </div>

<sup>191</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>192</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

Term	Definition
	<p>seabed morphology, and wind. The hydrodynamic character of the ocean (swell, currents and water levels) combines with seabed morphology and winds to give rise to a 'surfable wave'. A surf break includes the 'swell corridor' through which the swell travels, and the morphology of the seabed of that wave corridor, through to the point where waves created by the swell dissipate and become non-surfable. 'Swell corridor' means the region offshore of a surf break where ocean swell travels and transforms to a 'surfable wave'.</p> <p>'Surfable wave' means a wave that can be caught and ridden by a surfer. Surfable waves have a wave breaking point that peels along the unbroken wave crest so that the surfer is propelled laterally along the wave crest</p>
<p><b>Takata whenua or tangata whenua</b></p>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>in relation to a particular area, means the iwi, or hapu, that holds mana whenua over that area</p> </div>
<p><b>Taxa</b></p>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Glossary of the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Named biological classification units assigned to individuals or sets of species (eg species, subspecies, genus, order, variety)</p> </div>
<p><b>Te Mana o te Wai</b></p>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.3 of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (as set out in the box below)<sup>193</sup></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p><i>Concept</i></p> <p>(1) Te Mana o te Wai is a concept that refers to the fundamental importance of water and recognises that protecting the health of freshwater protects the health and well-being of the wider environment. It protects the mauri of the wai. Te Mana o te Wai is about restoring and preserving the balance between the water, the wider environment, and the community.</p> <p>(2) Te Mana o te Wai is relevant to all freshwater management and not just to the specific aspects of freshwater management referred to in this National Policy Statement.</p> <p><i>Framework</i></p> <p>(3) Te Mana o te Wai encompasses 6 principles relating to the roles of tangata whenua and other New Zealanders in the management of freshwater, and these principles inform this National Policy Statement and its implementation.</p> <p>(4) The 6 principles are:</p> <p>(a) <i>Mana whakahaere</i>: the power, authority, and obligations of tangata whenua to make decisions that maintain, protect, and sustain the health and well-being</p> </div>

<sup>193</sup> FPI00213.010 Fonterra

Term	Definition
	<p>of, and their relationship with, freshwater</p> <p>(b) <i>Kaitiakitanga</i>: the obligation of tangata whenua to preserve, restore, enhance, and sustainably use freshwater for the benefit of present and future generations</p> <p>(c) <i>Manaakitanga</i>: the process by which tangata whenua show respect, generosity, and care for freshwater and for others</p> <p>(d) <i>Governance</i>: the responsibility of those with authority for making decisions about freshwater to do so in a way that prioritises the health and well-being of freshwater now and into the future</p> <p>(e) <i>Stewardship</i>: the obligation of all New Zealanders to manage freshwater in a way that ensures it sustains present and future generations</p> <p>(f) <i>Care and respect</i>: the responsibility of all New Zealanders to care for freshwater in providing for the health of the nation.</p> <p>(5) There is a hierarchy of obligations in Te Mana o te Wai that prioritises:</p> <p>(a) first, the health and well-being of water bodies and freshwater ecosystems</p> <p>(b) second, the health needs of people (such as drinking water)</p> <p>(c) third, the ability of people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural well-being, now and in the future</p>
<b>Territorial authority</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 5 of the Local Government Act 2002 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a city council or a district council named in Part 2 of Schedule 2</p> </div>
<b>Te Ture Whenua Maori land</b> <sup>194</sup>	<p>means land with the following status:</p> <p>(a) Māori communal land gazetted as Māori reservation under s338 Te Ture Whenua Maori Act 1993; and</p> <p>(b) Māori customary land and Māori freehold land as defined in s4 and s129 Te Ture Whenua Maori Act 1993.</p>

<sup>194</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

Term	Definition
<b>Threatened <del>species</del> or At Risk, and Threatened <del>species</del> or At Risk (declining)</b> <sup>195</sup>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Interpretation section of the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023 (as set out in the box below);</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p>have, at any time, the meanings given in the New Zealand Threat Classification System Manual (Andrew J Townsend, Peter J de Lange, Clinton A J Duffy, Colin Miskelly, Janice Molloy and David A Norton, 2008. Science &amp; Technical Publishing, Department of Conservation, Wellington), available at: <a href="https://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/science-andtechnical/sap244.pdf">https://www.doc.govt.nz/globalassets/documents/science-andtechnical/sap244.pdf</a>, or its current successor publication</p> </div> <p>means any indigenous species of flora or fauna that meets the criteria for nationally critical, nationally endangered, or nationally vulnerable species in the New Zealand Threat Classification System Manual (Townsend et al, 2008)</p>
<b>Urban area</b>	<p>means any area of land (regardless of size, and irrespective of local authority or statistical boundaries) that is, or is intended to be, predominantly urban in character. This includes but is not limited to any land identified in District Plans as being within any urban growth boundary or equivalent however described, any residential zone, commercial and mixed use zone, industrial zone and future urban zone as listed in the National Planning Standards or its present District Plan zone equivalent. <i>Urban environments</i> are a subset of <i>urban areas</i>.</p>
<b>Urban environment</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in clause 1.4 of the National Policy Statement on Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p>means any area of land (regardless of size, and irrespective of local authority or statistical boundaries) that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) is, or is intended to be, predominantly urban in character; and</li> <li>(b) is, or is intended to be, part of a housing and labour market of at least 10,000 people</li> </ul> </div>
<b>Vulnerability</b>	<p>means the conditions determined by physical, social, economic and environmental factors or processes which increase the susceptibility of an individual, a community, assets or systems to the impacts of hazards.</p>
<b>Wāhi tūpuna</b>	<p>means landscapes and places that embody the relationship of manawhenua and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taoka.</p>

<sup>195</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

Term	Definition
<b>Waste</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in the Waste Minimisation Act 2008 (as set out in the box below)<sup>196</sup></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) means any thing disposed of or discarded; and  (b) includes a type of waste that is defined by its composition or source (for example, organic waste, electronic waste, or construction and demolition waste); and  (c) to avoid doubt, includes any component or element of diverted material, if the component or element is disposed of or discarded</p> </div> <p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Air Quality) Regulations 2004 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means substances or objects that are disposed of or intended to be disposed of</p> </div>
<b>Wastewater</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in Standard 14 of the National Planning Standards 2019 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means any combination of two or more the following wastes: sewage, greywater or industrial and trade waste</p> </div>
<b>Water</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>(a) means water in all its physical forms whether flowing or not and whether over or under the ground:  (b) includes fresh water, coastal water, and geothermal water:  (c) does not include water in any form while in any pipe, tank, or cistern</p> </div>
<b>Water body</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means fresh water or geothermal water in a river, lake, stream, pond, wetland, or aquifer, or any part thereof, that is not located within the coastal marine area</p> </div>

<sup>196</sup> 00121.013 Ravensdown



Term	Definition
<b>Well-functioning urban environments</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in Policy 1 of the National Policy Statement on Urban Development 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>well-functioning urban environments are urban environments that, as a minimum:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Have or enable a variety of homes that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) meet the needs, in terms of type, price, and location, of different households; and</li> <li>(ii) enable Māori to express their cultural traditions and norms; and</li> </ul> </li> <li>(b) have or enable a variety of sites that are suitable for different business sectors in terms of location and site size; and</li> <li>(c) have good accessibility for all people between housing, jobs, community services, natural spaces, and open spaces, including by way of public or active transport; and</li> <li>(d) support, and limit as much as possible adverse impacts on, the competitive operation of land and development markets; and</li> <li>(e) support reductions in greenhouse gas emissions; and</li> <li>(f) are resilient to the likely current and future effects of climate change</li> </ul> </div>
<b>Wetland</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Resource Management Act 1991 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>includes permanently or intermittently wet areas, shallow water, and land water margins that support a natural ecosystem of plants and animals that are adapted to wet conditions</p> </div>
<b>Wetland utility structure</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the National Environmental Standard for Freshwater 2020 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) means a structure placed in or adjacent to a wetland whose purpose, in relation to the wetland, is recreation, education, conservation, restoration, or monitoring, and</li> <li>(b) for example, includes the following structures that are placed in or adjacent to a wetland for a purpose described in paragraph (a): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) jetties</li> <li>(ii) boardwalks and bridges connecting them,</li> <li>(iii) walking tracks and bridges connecting them,</li> <li>(iv) signs,</li> <li>(v) bird-watching hides,</li> <li>(vi) monitoring devices,</li> <li>(vii) maimai</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </div>

Term	Definition
<b>Wilding conifer</b>	<p>has the same meaning as in regulation 3 of the Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for <u>Commercial Plantation</u><sup>197</sup> Forestry) Regulations 2017 (as set out in the box below)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>means a self-established conifer species tree resulting from seed spread from plantation forestry, shelter belts, amenity planting, or an already established wilding conifer species tree population</p> </div>

---

<sup>197</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

## Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Full Terms
<u>Air Plan</u> <sup>198</sup>	<u>Regional Plan: Air for Otago</u>
CDC	Clutha District Council
CODC	Central Otago District Council
DCC	Dunedin City Council
FMU	Freshwater Management Unit
<del>HAIL</del> <sup>199</sup>	<del>Hazardous Activities and Industries List</del>
<del>LGA</del> <sup>200</sup>	<del>Local Government Act 2002</del>
<del>NES</del> <sup>201</sup>	<del>National Environmental Standard</del>
NESAQ	National Environmental Standards for Air Quality 2004
NESCS	National Environmental Standards for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health 2011
NESETA	National Environmental Standard for Electricity Transmission Activities 2009
NESF	National Environmental Standards for Freshwater 2020
<del>NESMA</del> <sup>202</sup>	<del>National Environmental Standards for Marine Aquaculture 2020</del>
NESPF	National Environmental Standards for Plantation Forestry 2017
<del>NESHDW</del> <sup>203</sup>	<del>National Environmental Standard for Sources of Human Drinking Water 2007</del>
NESTF	National Environmental Standards for Telecommunication Facilities 2016
NOF	National Objectives Framework
NPS	National Policy Statement
NPSET	National Policy Statement on Electricity Transmission 2008
NPSFM	National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020
<u>NPSHPL</u> <sup>204</sup>	<u>National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land 2022</u>
NPSREG	National Policy Statement for Renewable Electricity Generation 2011
NPSUD	National Policy Statement on Urban Development 2020
NTCSA	Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998

<sup>198</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>199</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>200</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>201</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>202</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>203</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>204</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

NZCPS	New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010
<del>OCCRA</del> <sup>205</sup>	<del>Otago Climate Change Risk Assessment Phase 1 report</del>
ORC	Otago Regional Council
<del>PORPS 2016</del> <sup>206</sup>	<del>Proposed Otago Regional Policy Statement 2016 – Decisions version</del>
<del>PORPS 2019</del> <sup>207</sup>	<del>Partially Operative Regional Policy Statement 2019</del>
<del>PORPS 2021</del> <sup>208</sup>	<del>Proposed Otago Regional Policy Statement 2021</del>
QLDC	Queenstown Lakes District Council
RPS	Regional Policy Statement
<del>RPS 1998</del> <sup>209</sup>	<del>Regional Policy Statement for Otago 1998</del>
RMA	Resource Management Act 1991
<del>RMS</del> <sup>210</sup>	<del>Regional Monitoring Strategy</del>
<u>SNA</u> <sup>211</sup>	<u>Significant Natural Area</u>
<del>TAs</del> <sup>212</sup>	<del>Territorial authorities: Central Otago District Council, Clutha District Council, Dunedin City Council, Queenstown Lakes District Council and Waitaki District Council</del>
Waste Plan	Regional Plan: Waste for Otago
Water Plan	Regional Plan: Water for Otago
WDC	Waitaki District Council

---

<sup>205</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>206</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>207</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>208</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>209</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>210</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>211</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>212</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

# National direction instruments

## National policy statements and New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement

National Policy Statements	
<p>National policy statements (NPSs) and the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement (NZCPS) form part of the Resource Management Act's policy framework and are prepared by central government. NPSs and the NZCPS contain objectives, policies and methods that must be given effect to by policy statements and plans. NPSs and the NZCPS must also be given regard to by consent authorities when making decisions on <i>resource consent</i> applications, alongside other considerations.</p> <p>The following table provides an overview of whether any relevant review/s of the Otago Regional Policy Statement has been undertaken in relation to NPSs and the NZCPS.</p>	
<a href="#">National Policy Statement on Electricity Transmission 2008</a>	The policy statement has been reviewed in May 2021
<a href="#">New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010</a>	The policy statement has been reviewed in May 2021
<a href="#">National Policy Statement for Renewable Electricity Generation 2011</a>	The policy statement has been reviewed in May 2021
<a href="#">National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020</a>	The policy statement has been reviewed in May 2021
<a href="#">National Policy Statement on Urban Development (2020)</a>	The policy statement has been reviewed in May 2021

## National environmental standards

National Environmental Standards
<p>National environmental standards (NESs) are prepared by central government and can prescribe technical standards, methods (including rules) and/or other requirements for environmental matters throughout the whole country or specific areas. If an activity doesn't comply with an NES, it is likely to require a <i>resource consent</i>. NESs must be observed and enforced by <i>local authorities</i>. The following relevant NESs are currently in force:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Air Quality) Regulations 2004 (amended 2011)</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Sources of Human Drinking Water) Regulations 2007</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Electricity Transmission Activities) Regulations 2009</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Resource Management (National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health) Regulations 2011</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Telecommunications Facilities) Regulations 2016</a></li> </ul>

- [Resource Management \(National Environmental Standard for Commercial Plantation Forestry\) Regulations 2017](#)
- [Resource Management \(National Environmental Standards for Freshwater\) Regulations 2020](#)
- [Resource Management \(National Environmental Standards for Marine Aquaculture\) Regulations 2020](#)

## Regulations

### Regulations

The regulations included in this chapter come under the Resource Management Act 1991 (excluding the national environmental standards listed above). These regulations are:

- [Resource Management \(Transitional, Fees, Rents, and Royalties\) Regulations 1991](#)
- [Resource Management \(Exemption\) Regulations 1996](#)
- [Resource Management \(Marine Pollution\) Regulations 1998](#)
- [Resource Management \(Infringement Offences\) Regulations 1999](#)
- [Resource Management \(Forms, Fees, and Procedure\) Regulations 2003](#)
- [Resource Management \(Discount on Administrative Charges\) Regulations 2010](#)
- [Resource Management \(Measurement and Reporting of Water Takes\) Regulations 2010](#)
- [Resource Management \(Network Utility Operations\) Regulations 2016](#)
- [Resource Management \(Exemption\) Regulations 2017.](#)
- [Resource Management \(Stock Exclusion\) Regulations 2020](#)

## Water conservation orders

### Water Conservation Orders

Regional policy statements, *regional plans* and *district plans* cannot be inconsistent with the provisions of a water conservation order. A water conservation order can prohibit or restrict a regional council issuing new water and discharge permits, although it cannot affect existing permits.

The following table provides an overview of whether any relevant review/s of the Otago Regional Policy Statement have been undertaken in relation to relevant water conservation orders.

<a href="#">Water Conservation (Kawarau) Order 1997</a>	The policy statement has been reviewed in May 2021
---------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------

# MW – Mana whenua

## Recognition of hapū and iwi

### Kāi Tahu<sup>213</sup>

Kāi Tahu whānui<sup>214</sup> are *takata whenua* of the Otago region. Waitaha were the first people of Te Waipounamu, the South Island. Led by Rākaihautū, they explored and settled Te Waipounamu, and their exploits are reflected in enduring place names and histories across the motu. Waitaha were followed by the arrival of Kāti Māmoe and finally Kāi Tahu. Through warfare, intermarriage and political alliances a common allegiance to Kāi Tahu was forged. Kāi Tahu means the ‘people of Tahu’, linking them by name to their common ancestor Tahu Pōtiki.

The Kāi Tahu tribal area extends from the sub Antarctic islands in the south to Te Parinuiowhiti (White Cliffs, Blenheim) in the north and to Kahurangi Point on Te Tai o Poutini (the West Coast).

### Relationship of Kāi Tahu with their rohe

Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu (the iwi authority) is made up of 18 papatipu rūnaka<sup>215</sup> ~~Papatipu Rūnaka~~, of which seven have interests in the Otago region. Papatipu rūnaka<sup>216</sup> ~~Rūnaka~~ are a focus for whānau and hapū (extended family groups) who have *mana whenua* status within their area. *Mana whenua* hold traditional customary authority and maintain contemporary relationships within an area determined by whakapapa (genealogical ties), resource use and ahikāroa (the long burning fires of occupation). Te Rūnanga<sup>217</sup> ~~Rūnaka~~ o Ngāi Tahu encourages consultation with the papatipu rūnaka<sup>218</sup> ~~Papatipu Rūnaka~~ and takes into account the views of kā Rūnaka when determining its own position.

~~Three~~ ~~Four~~ Kāi Tahu ki Otago papatipu rūnaka ~~Papatipu Rūnaka~~<sup>219</sup> ~~are~~ have marae based in Otago, ~~These are~~ Te Rūnanga o Moeraki, Kāti Huirapa Rūnaka ki Puketeraki, and Te Rūnanga o Ōtākou, ~~and~~ whilst the fourth, Hokonui Rūnanga, is based in neighbouring Southland.<sup>220</sup> Three Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku Rūnaka – Awarua Rūnanga, Waihopai Rūnanga and Ōraka-Aparima Rūnanga – are based in Southland but also share interests with Kāi Tahu ki Otago in South Otago, the Mata-au Clutha River, and the inland *lakes* and mountains. The areas of shared interest originate from the seasonal hunting and gathering economy that was a distinctive feature of the southern Kāi Tahu lifestyle. Seasonal mobility was an important means by which hāpu and whānau maintained customary rights to the resources of the interior and ahi kā.

### Te Rūnanga o Moeraki

The takiwā of Te Rūnanga o Moeraki is centred on Moeraki and extends from the Waitaki River to the Waihemo Shag River and inland to the Main Divide. The coastal interests of Te Rūnanga o Moeraki are

---

<sup>213</sup> In the south of the South Island, the local Māori dialect uses a 'k' interchangeably with 'ng'. The preference of Kāi Tahu ki Otago is to use a 'k' so southern Māori are known as Kāi Tahu, rather than Ngāi Tahu. In this document, the “ng” is used for the iwi in general, and the “k” for southern Māori in particular.

<sup>214</sup> 00226.039 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>215</sup> 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>216</sup> 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>217</sup> 00226.039 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>218</sup> 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>219</sup> 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>220</sup> 00223.024 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

concentrated in the Moeraki Peninsula area and surrounds, including Te Raka-a-Hineatea Pā, Koekohe Hampden Beach, and Te Kai Hinaki with its famed boulders.

<https://www.terunangaomoeraki.org/>



*Te Rūnanga o Moeraki Marae, Moeraki*

Kāti Huirapa ki Puketeraki

The takiwā of Kāti Huirapa ki Puketeraki centres on Karitāne and extends from the Waihemō, Shag River to Purehurehu Heyward Point, and includes an interest in Ōtepoti and the greater harbour<sup>221</sup> ~~harbor~~ of Ōtākou. The takiwā extends inland to the Main Divide sharing an interest in the *lakes* and mountains to Whakatipu-Waitai with kā Rūnaka to the south. The kaimoana resources of the coast from Karitāne to Okahau Blueskin Bay and Pūrākaunui, and the kai awa of the Waikōuaiti<sup>222</sup> ~~Waikouaiti~~ River and estuary are treasured and well utilised mahika kai<sup>223</sup> ~~mahika kai~~ for Kāti Huirapa ki Puketeraki.

<http://www.puketeraki.nz/>



*Puketeraki Marae*

<sup>221</sup> 00120.007 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

<sup>222</sup> 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>223</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago





## Te Rūnanga o Ōtākou

The takiwā of Te Rūnanga o Ōtākou centres on Muaupoko<sup>224</sup> ~~Muaūpeke~~ Otago Peninsula, and extends from Purehuru Heyward Point, to Te Mata-au Clutha River, and inland, sharing an interest in the *lakes* and mountains to the western coast with kā Rūnanga to the north and south. The Otago harbour<sup>225</sup> ~~Harbor~~ has a pivotal role in the well-being of Ōtākou people. The harbour<sup>226</sup> ~~harbor~~ is a source of identity, a bountiful provider of kaimoana, and it is the pathway to the fishing grounds beyond. Traditionally it was the mode for other hapū to visit, and in today's world it is the lifeline to the international trade that benefits the region. The ebb and flow of the harbour<sup>227</sup> ~~harbor~~ tides is a valued certainty in a world of change, a taoka to be treasured and protected for the benefit of current and future generations.

<http://www.otakourunaka.co.nz/>



*Ōtākou Marae, Otago Peninsula*

## Hokonui Rūnanga

The takiwā of Hokonui Rūnanga centres on the Hokonui region and includes a shared interest in the *lakes* and mountains between Whakatipu-Waitai and Tawhitarere with other Murihiku Rūnanga and those located from Waihemo southwards. Although Hokonui Rūnanga is based in Gore, their interests in the Otago area, especially South Otago, are significant. They hold this in common with other Otago Rūnanga through whakapapa, history and tradition.

<https://www.hokonuirunanga.org.nz/>

---

<sup>224</sup> 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>225</sup> 00120.007 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

<sup>226</sup> 00120.007 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

<sup>227</sup> 00120.007 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust



*Hokonui Marae*

#### Te Rūnanga o Awarua

The takiwa of Te Rūnanga o Awarua centres on Awarua and extends to the coasts and estuaries adjoining Waihopai sharing an interest in the *lakes* and mountains between Whakatipu-Waitai and Tawhititarere with other Murihiku Rūnanga and those located from Waihemo southwards.

#### Waihopai Rūnaka

The takiwa of Waihopai Rūnaka centres on Waihopai and extends northwards to Te Mata-au Clutha River, sharing an interest in the *lakes* and mountains to the western coast with other Murihiku Rūnaka and those located from Waihemo southwards.

#### Te Rūnanga o Ōraka Aparima

The takiwa of Te Rūnanga o Ōraka Aparima centres on Ōraka and extends from Waimatuku to Tawhititarere sharing an interest in the *lakes* and mountains from Whakatipu-Waitai to Tawhititarere with other Murihiku Rūnaka and those located from Waihemo southwards.

## Environmental management perspectives and values of Kāi Tahu

*He taura whiri kotahi mai anō te kōpunga tai nō ī te pū au*

*“From the source to the mouth of the sea, all things are joined together as one”*

Te Tiriti o Waitangi establishes a partnership between Kāi Tahu and the Crown. The RMA 1991<sup>228</sup> requires that the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral *lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu, and other taoka*, is recognised and provided for<sup>229</sup> and that the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi are taken into account.<sup>230</sup> In the spirit of this partnership and the Treaty principles, the ORPS seeks to facilitate Kāi Tahu engagement in resource management processes and decision-making<sup>231</sup> in Otago.

<sup>228</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>229</sup> Section 6 of the Resource Management Act (1991).

<sup>230</sup> Section 8 of the Resource Management Act (1991).

<sup>231</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

This chapter acknowledges the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi and sets out general considerations for the incorporation of Kāi Tahu values and interests into resource management planning, consenting, and implementation processes. These are integrated throughout this document, and this chapter serves to tie the strands together. It reflects the philosophy embraced by Kāi Tahu of holistic resource management, *ki uta ki tai* – often described as “from the mountains to the sea”.

## Kāi Tahu values

The following description is a guide to assist in understanding Kāi Tahu values. It is not a complete list of all the values held by Kāi Tahu.

Kāi Tahu do not see their existence as separate from te ao tūroa,<sup>232</sup> ~~Te Ao Tūroa~~, the natural world, but as an integral part of it through whakapapa (genealogy). Whakapapa is central to te ao Te-Ao Māori (a Māori<sup>233</sup> world view), connecting the origins of everything, past and present. It is the foundation upon which all things are built, the web that connects all things together, the anchor which holds all things in place and the means by which all things link back to the beginning of time. It is through whakapapa that all things are intricately linked, as well as having their individual place in the world. Whakapapa binds Kāi Tahu to the mountains, forests and waters and the life supported by them, and this is reflected in attitudes towards the natural world and resource management.

Whakawhanaukataka, the process of maintaining relationships, embraces whakapapa through the relationship between people, and between people and the *environment*. The nature of these relationships defines people's rights and responsibilities in relation to the use and management of resources.

All things have the qualities of wairua (spiritual dimension) and mauri (life force) and have a genealogical relationship with each other. Mauri is found in all things organic and inorganic. The nurturing of all taoka and protection of their mauri is a prime concern and a kaitiakitaka significant obligation for Kāi Tahu whānui as *mana whenua* and *mana moana*, and as an expression of rakatirataka.<sup>234</sup>

Each papatipu rūnaka<sup>235</sup> ~~Papatipu Rūnaka~~ has its own takiwā determined by whakapapa and its ahi-kā-roa (historical use and occupation). Takiwā are often defined by natural boundaries such as heads, mountain ranges and *rivers*. ~~This political~~ Political and operational authority over an area is undertaken by Kāi Tahu as an expression of rakatirataka,<sup>236</sup> *mana whenua* and *mana moana*. The exercise of these powers in te taiao is through the action of *kaitiakitaka*.<sup>237</sup> ~~and encompasses *kaitiakitaka* and rakatirataka. An integral element of the concepts of *kaitiakitaka* and rakatirataka is the recognition that Kāi Tahu have their own traditional~~ Recognition of the rakatirataka and mana of Kāi Tahu as *kaitiaki whenua* can in part, be achieved by enabling Kāi Tahu to identify and exercise their preferred<sup>238</sup> means of managing and maintaining resources and the *environment* (te taio).<sup>239</sup> This system of rights and responsibilities (encompassing tikaka and kawa) is inherited from previous generations and has evolved over time.

---

<sup>232</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>233</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>234</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>235</sup> 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>236</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>237</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>238</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>239</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

The resources in any given area are a taoka; they are a<sup>240</sup> source of prestige for *mana whenua* of that area and are a statement of their identity. Traditionally, the abundance or lack of resources directly determines the welfare of every hapū, and so affects their mana.

### Ki uta ki tai

Ki uta ki tai is a philosophy that has become synonymous with the way Kāi Tahu think about natural resource management. Ki uta ki tai is the concept used to describe holistic natural resource management, recognising all environmental elements are interconnected and must be managed as a whole. It is a way of understanding the natural environment, including how it functions, how people relate to it and how it can be looked after appropriately.

### Rakatirataka

Rakatirataka refers to<sup>241</sup> ~~is about having~~ the exercise of<sup>242</sup> mana or authority to give effect to Kāi Tahu culture and traditions across all spheres in their takiwā, including<sup>243</sup> ~~in~~ the management of te taiao.<sup>244</sup> ~~the natural world.~~ Recognition of the relationship of Kāi Tahu and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, *water*, sites, wāhi tapu, and other taoka is ~~are~~<sup>245</sup> embedded in the RMA 1991<sup>246</sup> and the Treaty of Waitangi.

### Kaitiakitaka

*Kaitiakitaka* refers to<sup>247</sup> ~~means~~ the exercise of guardianship over *natural and physical resources*. It is an expression of rakatirataka and mana,<sup>248</sup> and includes the ethic of stewardship. This statutory definition of *kaitiakitaka* is only a starting point for Kāi Tahu, as *kaitiakitaka* is a much wider cultural concept than guardianship.

*Kaitiakitaka* is fundamental to the relationship between Kāi Tahu and the *environment*. The objectives of *kaitiakitaka* are to protect the mauri and life supporting capacity of the *environment* and to pass the *environment* on to future generations in an enhanced state. For Kāi Tahu, *kaitiakitaka* is not passive custodianship, nor is it simply the exercise of customary<sup>249</sup> ~~traditional~~ property rights, but it entails an active exercise of responsibility and rakatirataka to ensure long-term sustainability of resources as taoka, and for the benefit to future generations – mō tātou, ā, mō kā uri a muri ake nei.<sup>250</sup> ~~in a manner beneficial to the resource.~~

### Hauora<sup>251</sup>

Hauora is a holistic understanding of health and wellbeing. For Kāi Tahu, te hauora o te taiao (the health of the *environment*), te hauora o te wai (the health of the *waterbody*) and the te hauora o te tangata (the health of the people) are all interconnected. Due to this connection, the state of the health and well-being of wai māori and te taiao is seen as a reflection on the mana, health, and

---

<sup>240</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>241</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>242</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>243</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>244</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>245</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>246</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>247</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>248</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>249</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>250</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>251</sup> 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

wellbeing of Kāi Tahu as *mana whenua*. Decline in te hauora o te wai and te hauora o te taiao is also understood by Kāi Tahu to adversely impact the health and well-being of the Otago community as a whole, tangata katoa.<sup>252</sup>

### **Tikaka and kawa**<sup>253</sup>

Tikaka and kawa<sup>254</sup> Māori encompass<sup>255</sup> ~~encompasses~~ the beliefs, values, practices, protocols<sup>256</sup> and procedures that guide appropriate codes of conduct, or ways of behaving. In the context of natural resource management, observing tikaka and kawa<sup>257</sup> is part of the ethic and exercise of *kaitiakitaka*. Tikaka and kawa are ~~it is~~<sup>258</sup> underpinned by a body of mātauraka (traditional knowledge) and are ~~is~~<sup>259</sup> based on a general understanding that people belong to the land and have a responsibility to care for and manage the land. These concepts and values incorporate ~~it incorporates~~<sup>260</sup> forms of social control to manage the relationship of people and the *environment*, including concepts such as tapu, noa and rāhui.

Tikaka and kawa are<sup>261</sup> ~~is~~ based on traditional practices but are ~~is~~<sup>262</sup> dynamic and continue ~~continues~~<sup>263</sup> to evolve in response to different situations.

### **Mātauraka**<sup>264</sup>

Mātauraka, within this region, is Kāi Tahu customary knowledge passed down from one generation to the next, used in the present, and will continue to be developed for the future. It involves observing, experiencing, participating, studying and understanding the world from an indigenous cultural perspective. It is a tool for thinking, organising information, considering the ethics of knowledge, and informing us on our world and our place in it. Incorporation of mātauraka in resource management decision-making is important to ensure that cultural interests are appropriately recognised and provided for.<sup>265</sup>

### **Taoka**

All natural resources - air, *land*, *water*, and indigenous *biological diversity* - are taoka. Taoka are treasured resources that are highly valued by Kāi Tahu, derived from the atua (gods), linked to the people through whakapapa,<sup>266</sup> and left by ~~the~~ tūpuna (ancestors) to provide for<sup>267</sup> and sustain life.<sup>268</sup> In the management of natural resources, it is important that the habitats and wider needs of taoka species are sustainably managed and enhanced.

### **Mahika kai** ~~Mahika kai~~<sup>269</sup>

---

<sup>252</sup> 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>253</sup> 00138.051 QLDC

<sup>254</sup> 00138.051 QLDC

<sup>255</sup> 00138.051 QLDC

<sup>256</sup> 00138.051 QLDC

<sup>257</sup> 00138.051 QLDC

<sup>258</sup> 00138.051 QLDC

<sup>259</sup> 00138.051 QLDC

<sup>260</sup> 00138.051 QLDC

<sup>261</sup> 00138.051 QLDC

<sup>262</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00138.051 QLDC

<sup>263</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00138.051 QLDC

<sup>264</sup> 00420.007 Hopkins, Jim

<sup>265</sup> 00420.007 Hopkins, Jim

<sup>266</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>267</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>268</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>269</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

*Mahika kai*<sup>270</sup> ~~Mahika kai~~ is one of the cornerstones of Kāi Tahu cultural identity. *Mahika kai*<sup>271</sup> ~~Mahika kai~~ is a term that literally means "food workings" and refers to the customary gathering of food and natural materials and the places where those resources are gathered or produced. The term also embodies the traditions, customs and collection methods, and the gathering of natural resources for cultural use, including raraka (weaving) and rokoā (traditional medicines). Maintaining *mahika kai*<sup>272</sup> ~~Mahika kai~~ sites, gathering resources, and continuing to practice the tikaka that governs each resource, is an important means of maintaining and honouring whakapapa connections to land, taoka and tūpuna, and<sup>273</sup> passing on cultural values and mātauraka to the next generation.

## Resources of significance to Kāi Tahu

### Wai Māori Maori<sup>274</sup>

Like all things, *water* has a whakapapa. All *water* is seen to have originated from the separation of Rakinui and Papatūānuku and their continuing tears for one another. Rain is Rakinui's tears for his beloved Papatūānuku and mist is regarded as Papatūānuku's tears for Rakinui.

From Rakinui and Papatūānuku came the offspring who were responsible for creating the elements that constitute our total world today, both animate and inanimate - the mountains, *rivers*, forests and seas, and all fish, bird and animal life. The realm of atua such as Rakinui and his many wives and offspring overarches and informs the Kāi Tahu whānui world view, values and beliefs.

*Water* plays a significant role in Kāi Tahu spiritual beliefs and cultural traditions. Kāi Tahu have an obligation through whakapapa to protect wai and all the life it supports, as *ko te wai te ora o kā mea katoa (water is the life giver of all things)*. The condition of *water* is seen as a reflection of the condition of the people. *Toitū te Marae o Tane, toitū te Marae o Takaroa, toitū te Iwi (Protect and strengthen the realms of the land and sea, and they will protect and strengthen the people)*. When the natural environment is strong and healthy, the people are strong and healthy and so too is their mana.

### Taoka species and habitats

Taoka species and habitats are those that are treasured by Kāi Tahu, and Kāi Tahu regard all indigenous species as taoka. In many cases taoka species are also *mahika kai*,<sup>275</sup> ~~mahika kai~~, treasured for their use as a resource. The NTCSA<sup>276</sup> ~~Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 (NTCSA 1998)~~ recognises the relationship Kāi Tahu has with some of these species through the Statutory Acknowledgement for Taonga Species. However, Kāi Tahu do not consider this list to be comprehensive as important taoka species such as tuna are not included.

### Wāhi tūpuna

The value Kāi Tahu attached to land is evident from the fact that every part of the landscape is known and named. *Wāhi tūpuna* (ancestral landscapes) are made up of interconnected sites and areas reflecting the history and traditions associated with the long settlement of Kāi Tahu in Otago. The

---

<sup>270</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>271</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>272</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>273</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>274</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>275</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>276</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

landscape of Otago includes many *wāhi tūpuna* and areas of significance, reflecting the relationship of Kāi Tahu with the land across the region. These places should not be seen in isolation from one another but are part of a wider cultural setting. For example, an archaeological site adjacent to a *wetland* is likely to be associated with *mahika kai*<sup>277</sup> ~~*mahika kai*~~ resources in the *wetland*. The character of *wāhi tūpuna* in past times is retained in tribal memory, for example through songs, place names and proverbs. When these references to the character of the *wāhi tūpuna* become incorrect due to modification of the *environment*, it negatively affects the Kāi Tahu relationship with that landscape. For example, a waterway named Kaituna would be expected to contain many tuna. A waterway with this name used to exist in central Dunedin, but no longer exists because there is now a city where the waterway once was.

### Air and atmosphere (kōhauhau)

In Kāi Tahu traditions, air and atmosphere emerged through the creation traditions and the movement from Te Kore through Te Pō to Te Ao Marama. Following the separation of Raki and Papatūānuku, one of their many children, Tāwhirimātea, fled with Raki into the sky. From there he controls the wind and weather. The air and atmosphere are integral parts of the *environment* that must be valued, used with respect, and passed on intact to the next generation. Pollution of the air and atmosphere adversely affects and degrades<sup>278</sup> the mauri of this taoka, of te taiao,<sup>279</sup> and of<sup>280</sup> other taoka such as plants and animals. Poor air quality damages and degrades ancestral lands, *mahika kai* sites, and other sites such as rock art, adversely affecting the mauri of the landscape and the mana of the people.<sup>281</sup>

### Coastal environment (taku tai moana me te wai māori)

~~The tūpuna of Kāi Tahu were great ocean travellers. Like many other Pacific peoples, Kāi Tahu are connected by whakapapa to those people who spread across Te Moana Nui a Kiwa, the Pacific Ocean. Takaroa is the atua who is central to these beliefs, which influence the way Kāi Tahu relate to and manage marine resources. associated with the oceans and seas, and their ecosystems.~~<sup>282</sup> The marine environment is a moving force, a reminder of the power of Takaroa. As one of the children of Rakinui and Papatūānuku, Kāi Tahu are connected to Takaroa by whakapapa, affording rights and responsibilities in relation to te takutai moana.<sup>283</sup>

The tūpuna of Kāi Tahu were great ocean travellers, having navigated by waka across Te Moana – nui – a – Kiwa, the Pacific Ocean for generations before settling in Te Wai Ponamu. Knowledge and practices brought with the tūpuna were adapted to meet the challenges and opportunities of the new environment. Over time, Kāi Tahu whānui developed the tikaka and mātauraka of takutai moana and mahika kaimoana that is used today.<sup>284</sup>

The coastal environment is particularly significant for Kāi Tahu in the southern South Island. Most of the permanent settlements were established on the coast due, in part, to the moderating influence of the sea on temperature, making the winters less bitter. The coast also had a bounty of kaimoana resources to support coastal settlements.

---

<sup>277</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>278</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>279</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>280</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>281</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>282</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>283</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>284</sup> 00226.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago



The *coastal waters* and processes were integral to the way of life tūpuna enjoyed, and the coastal environment continues to support significant *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>285</sup> resources. The *coastal waters* are a *receiving environment* for fresh water, gravels and sediment from the terrestrial landscape, which are important to maintaining natural processes and the domain of Takaroa. Recognising the interconnection of the *land* and sea environments is consistent with the ki uta ki tai philosophy.

## Pounamu

Kāi Tahu customs are intricately linked to this special taoka. The practice of gathering, using and trading pounamu bind Kāi Tahu identity to the landscape. Pounamu conveys mana and mauri from ages past, and is reflected in its exalted whakapapa lineage, an uri (descendant) of Takaroa.

As an interim measure, until a Regional Pounamu Management Plan is developed for Otago and Murihiku, a rāhui pounamu has been in place in the Otago region since the passing of the Ngāi Tahu (Pounamu Vesting) Act 1997. This is subject to review by the collective Kaitiaki Rūnaka who will determine appropriate protection, access and use policies applicable to their membership and Ngāi Tahu whānui.

## Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 (NTCSA 1998)<sup>286</sup>

The NTCSA 1998<sup>287</sup> was enacted to settle historical Ngāi Tahu claims against the Crown. The NTCSA 1998<sup>288</sup> provides redress for breaches of Te Tiriti o Waitangi and to signal a new age of co-operation of the Crown and its agencies with Kāi Tahu. The Crown apology recorded in section 4 of the NTCSA 1998<sup>289</sup> explicitly recognises the rakatirataka of Kāi Tahu within its takiwā, and the Act includes specific provisions that provide for exercise of rakatirataka and *kaitiakitaka* by *mana whenua* in respect to *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>290</sup>, taoka species and other resource management matters. These include rights in relation to the management of specified significant areas (statutory acknowledgement areas, tōpuni and *nohoaka*) and customary fisheries.

### Statutory acknowledgement areas

Statutory acknowledgements are recorded in the NTCSA 1998<sup>291</sup> for several *water bodies*, mountains and coastal features in the Otago Region. These acknowledgements are statements by Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu of the particular cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Kāi Tahu with these areas.

Part 12 of the NTCSA 1998<sup>292</sup> provides details of statutory acknowledgements, and the responsibilities relating to them. Section 208 of the NTCSA 1998<sup>293</sup> requires that *local authorities* have regard to these statutory acknowledgements in *resource consent* processing under Section 95 of the RMA in deciding whether Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu may be adversely affected by the granting of a *resource consent* for activities within, adjacent to or impacting directly on the area.

---

<sup>285</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>286</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>287</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>288</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>289</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>290</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>291</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>292</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>293</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

Statutory acknowledgements were intended as a measure to improve opportunities for *mana whenua* engagement in resource management processes, pending broader provision for areas of significance to Kāi Tahu being incorporated into resource management plans in order to protect and restore associated rights, interests and values. The statutory acknowledgements are *wāhi tūpuna*, but *wāhi tūpuna* are not confined to these areas.

The following statutory acknowledgement areas in Otago are recognised in the NTCSA 1998<sup>294</sup>, and their values are described in Schedules to that Act:

- Ka Moana Haehae (Lake Roxburgh) - Schedule 22
- Kakaunui River - Schedule 23
- Kuramea (Lake Catlins) - Schedule 28
- Lake Hāwea - Schedule 30
- Lake Wānaka - Schedule 36
- Mata-Au (Clutha River) - Schedule 40
- Matakaea (Shag Point) - Schedule 41
- Pikirakatahi (Mount Earnslaw) - Schedule 51
- Pomahaka River - Schedule 52
- Te Tauraka Poti (Merton Tidal Arm) - Schedule 60
- Te Wairere (Lake Dunstan) - Schedule 61
- Tititea (Mount Aspiring) - Schedule 62
- Tokatā (The Nuggets) - Schedule 64
- Waihola/Waipōuri ~~Waipori~~<sup>295</sup> Wetland - Schedule 70
- Waitaki River – Schedule 72<sup>296</sup>
- Whakatipu Waimāori ~~Wai-Māori~~<sup>297</sup> (Lake Wakatipu) - Schedule 75
- Te Tai O Arai Te Uru (Otago Coastal Marine Area) - Schedule 103.

## Tōpuni

The concept of tōpuni derives from the traditional Kāi Tahu custom of persons of raketira status extending their mana and protection over a person or area by placing their cloak over them or it. A number of areas on public conservation land that have significant values to Kāi Tahu because of their cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional associations are recognised in the NTCSA 1998<sup>298</sup> as tōpuni. Sections 240 to 246 of the NTCSA 1998<sup>299</sup> provide for Kāi Tahu consultation on management of these areas, to protect their values. Although the specific provisions in the NTCSA 1998<sup>300</sup> relate only to management of conservation land, the interests of Kāi Tahu should be recognised and provided for when considering activities in nearby areas that may impact on the values of tōpuni or *waters* flowing from them.

Tōpuni recognised in Otago are:

- Matakaea (Shag Point) – Schedule 83
- Maukaatua Scenic Reserve – Schedule 84

---

<sup>294</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>295</sup> 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>296</sup> The Waitaki River lies within both the Otago and Canterbury regions

<sup>297</sup> 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>298</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>299</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>300</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

- Pikirakatahi (Mount Earnslaw) – Schedule 87
- Te Koroka (Dart/Slipstream) – Schedule 91
- Tititea (Mount Aspiring) – Schedule 92.

## Nohoaka

*Nohoanga* (or *nohoaka*) entitlements provide a right of seasonal occupation and use for Kāi Tahu whānui on specified areas of Crown-owned land near *water bodies* for harvest of natural resources (sections 255 to 268 of the NTCSA 1998<sup>301</sup>). These rights are intended as partial redress for the loss of *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>302</sup> through alienation of land.

Kāi Tahu interests in these areas should be recognised and provided for when considering management of associated *water bodies* or activities on nearby land. The ability of Kāi Tahu whānui to access and use *nohoaka* as intended is reliant upon protection and restoration of *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>303</sup> values associated with them.

*Nohoaka* entitlements are listed in Schedule 95 of the NTCSA 1998.<sup>304</sup> In Otago, sites are identified adjacent to the following *water bodies*:

- Waitaki River (two sites)
- Waianakarua River
- ~~Tairi-Tairi~~<sup>305</sup> River (three sites)
- Lake Hāwea (three sites)
- Hāwea River
- Lake Wānaka (two sites)
- ~~Whakatipu Waimāori Lake Wakatipu~~<sup>306</sup>
- Shotover River (two sites)
- Mata-au Clutha River (four sites).

## Customary fisheries

Sections 297 to 311 of the NTCSA 1998<sup>307</sup> include provisions recognising Kāi Tahu rights and interests in customary fisheries, and provide for involvement in management of these resources through the Conservation Act 1987 and the Fisheries Acts 1983 and 1996.

The interests of Kāi Tahu should be recognised and provided for when considering activities under the RMA 1991<sup>308</sup> that may impact on customary fisheries, to enable protection and restoration of fisheries habitat. Mātaitai and taiāpure are mechanisms under the Fisheries Act that provide for management of customary fisheries areas and are applicable to both coastal and *freshwater* fisheries environments.

The East Otago Taiāpure is constituted by the Fisheries (East Otago Taiāpure) Order 1999. It includes the estuarine and inshore marine waters between Cornish Head and Potato Point.

There are also four mātaitai in Otago:

- Moeraki Mātaitai Reserve includes areas of *coastal waters* at Moeraki and Katiki (<https://www.mpi.govt.nz/dmsdocument/15220-Moeraki-North-Otago-Mataitai-Reserve>)

---

<sup>301</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>302</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>303</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>304</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>305</sup> 00234.005 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>306</sup> 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>307</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>308</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

- Waikōuaiti ~~Waikouaiti~~<sup>309</sup> Mātaitai Reserve includes *freshwater* and estuarine waters of the Waikōuaiti ~~Waikouaiti~~<sup>310</sup> River (<https://www.mpi.govt.nz/dmsdocument/12954-Waikouaiti-South-Canterbury-Mataitai-Reserve->)
- Ōtākou Mātaitai Reserve includes most of the Otago Harbour ~~Harbor~~<sup>311</sup> north of a line from Harwood to Pulling Point (<https://www.mpi.govt.nz/dmsdocument/14077-Otakou-mataitai-reserve>)
- Puna-wai-Tōriki (Hays Gap) Mātaitai Reserve includes an area of *coastal waters* north of Nugget Point (<https://www.mpi.govt.nz/dmsdocument/15223-Puna-wai-Toriki-Hays-Gap-South-Otago-Mataitai-Reserve>)

## Māori Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement Act 2004<sup>312</sup>

The Māori Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement Act 2004 provides full and final settlement of Māori commercial aquaculture claims since 21 September 1992. Settlement is delivered via Regional Aquaculture Agreements which may describe areas to be provided to iwi for the purposes of commercial aquaculture. Any future settlement outcomes will need to be provided for in *regional plans* and *district plans*.<sup>313</sup>

## Native Māori land<sup>314</sup> reserves

A Native Reserve is any property or site that is a:

- Native Reserve excluded from the Ōtākou Land Purchases (1844)
- Native Reserve excluded from the Kemps Land Purchases (1848)
- Reserve granted by the Native Land Court (1868)
- Half Caste Reserve (1881)
- Landless Native Reserve (1896)
- Other reserve (1890 and 1900)

A number of native Māori<sup>315</sup> reserves exist that were excluded from the land sales of the 1840s. These reserves are steeped in history and association and are places of belonging. Remaining reserves are located at Moeraki, Waikōuaiti ~~Waikouaiti~~<sup>316</sup>, Ōtākou, Onumia, Taieri Mouth, and Te Karoro, Kaka Point. Other categories of Māori native<sup>317</sup> land exist at Kōpūtai ~~Koputai~~<sup>318</sup>, Port Chalmers, and Ōtepoti, Dunedin, where tauraka waka, landing sites, were recognised. In addition, land was held at Manuhaea, Lake Hāwea, Aramoana, Clarendon, Taieri Mouth, Tautuku-Waikawa and Glenomaru amongst others. Landing reserves were allocated at Matainaka, Waikōuaiti ~~Waikouaiti~~<sup>319</sup>, and the former Lake Tatawai on the Taiari ~~Taieri~~<sup>320</sup> Plains.

<sup>309</sup> 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>310</sup> 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>311</sup> 00120.007 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

<sup>312</sup> 00234.006 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>313</sup> 00234.006 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>314</sup> 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

<sup>315</sup> 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

<sup>316</sup> 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>317</sup> 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

<sup>318</sup> 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>319</sup> 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>320</sup> 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

The following table lists the reserves in Otago which are also mapped in MAPO – Native reserves.<sup>321</sup> Many of the sections within these Native Reserves now have the status of general land. While some of this general land is still in Māori ownership, many of the general titled sections have been sold to non-Māori or taken under various pieces of legislation such as the Public Works Act 1981. Although these sections are no longer in whānau ownership, descendants of the original owners retain an ancestral relationship with these lands.

Table 1: Native reserves located within the Otago region

Location	Comments	Reserve Type
Tautuku	Southern block of Tautuku sections	South Island Landless Natives Act
	Northern sections are Reserved lands	Native Reserve
Glenomaru	Located south of Kaka Point	South Island Landless Natives Act
Maranuku	Granted in 1844 as part of the <del>Ōtakou</del> <del>Ōtakou</del> <sup>322</sup> Purchase. Originally called Te Karoro, split into two reserves	Native Reserve
Clarendon	Located inland from Taieri Mouth	Clarendon Half Caste Reserve
<del>Taiari</del> <del>Taiari</del> <sup>323</sup>	Granted in 1844 as part of the <del>Ōtakou</del> <del>Ōtakou</del> <sup>324</sup> Purchase Deed. Split into three reserves; A, B and C	Native Reserve
Lake Tatawai	Located on the <del>Taiari</del> <del>Taiari</del> <sup>325</sup> Plain, south of the <del>Dunedin</del> , includes lake that is now drained. <sup>327</sup>	Native Reserve <u>and Landing Reserve</u> <sup>328</sup>
<del>Lake Tatawai</del>	<del>Lake that is now drained</del>	<del>Landing Reserve</del>
Otago Heads Native Reserve	Granted in 1844 as part of the Ōtakou Purchase Deed. Split into four reserves	Native Reserve
Port Chalmers	Granted in 1848 as part of the Ōtakou Purchase Deed. A further grant adjacent to the Reserve was made in approximately 1888	Native Reserve
Aramoana	This reserve resulted from the <del>Pūrākanui</del> <del>Purakaunui</del> <sup>329</sup> Half Caste grant	Half Caste Reserve
<del>Pūrākanui</del> <del>Purakaunui</del> <sup>330</sup>	Granted in 1848 as part of Kemp's Purchase Deed. Further allocations were made in 1868 at Wharauwerawera	Native Reserve
Brinns Point	Granted in the latter part of the nineteenth century	Half Caste Reserve

<sup>321</sup> 00226.329 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>322</sup> 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>323</sup> 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>324</sup> 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>325</sup> 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>326</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>327</sup> 00226.329 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>328</sup> 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>329</sup> 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>330</sup> 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<u>Karitāne</u> Karitane- (Waikōuaiti Waikouaiti <sup>331</sup> Native Reserve)	Granted in 1848 as part of Kemp’s Purchase Deed	Native Reserve
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------	----------------

---

<sup>331</sup> 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

Matainaka and Hawksbury Fishing Easement	Two fishing easements fall under this reserve, Matainaka, located at <u>Hawksbury</u> <del>Hawkesbury</del> <sup>332</sup> Lagoon at <u>Waikōuaiti</u> <del>Waikouaiti</del> <sup>333</sup> and the Forks Reserve located inland from <u>Karitāne</u> <del>Karitane</del> <sup>334</sup> . The legal description for the latter reserve is Section 1N Town of Hawksbury	Fishing Easement
Hawksbury	Located north of <u>Waikōuaiti</u> <del>Waikouaiti</del> <sup>335</sup> , in the vicinity of Goodwood	Hawksbury Half Caste Reserve
Moeraki	Granted in 1848 as part of Kemp’s Purchase Deed. Further awards were made in 1868	Native Reserve
Kuri Bush	10 acre reserve of timber	Native Reserve
<del>Kakanui</del> <sup>336</sup>	<del>Granted in 1848 as part of Kemp’s Purchase Deed. By 1853, this Reserve was noted as being abandoned and the 75 acre allocation was added to the southern edge of the Moeraki Native Reserve</del>	<del>Native Reserve</del>
Korotuaheka	Located south of the Waitaki River mouth. Now Reserved as an <u>urupā</u> <del>urupa</del> <sup>337</sup> . It appears this originated as an occupational reserve and Fishing Easement	<del>Partitioned in 1895 Possibly awarded as part of the 1868 awards</del> <u>Native Reserve Fishing Easement</u> <sup>338</sup>
Punaomaru	376 acre reserve located approximately 14 miles from the Waitaki River mouth on the south bank of the river	Native Reserve
Lake Hāwea	Reserve of 100 acres situated in the western extremity of the middle arm of Lake Hāwea near a Lagoon. Part of the Reserve was taken for power development in 1962 and the balance of the land was alienated by the Māori Trustee in 1970	Fishing Easement
<u>Hāwea-Wānaka block (Wānaka Plantation Reserve)</u> <sup>339</sup>	<u>Known as Sticky Forest and being 50.7 hectares more or less to be vested in the Successors as defined in pursuant to Section 15 of the Deed of Settlement 1997 between Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and the Crown, and as enacted in Part 15 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.</u> <sup>340</sup>	<u>South Island Landless Natives Act</u>

## Mana whenua – local authority relationships

<sup>332</sup> Resource Management Act 1991, Schedule 1, Clause 16(2)

<sup>333</sup> 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>334</sup> 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>335</sup> 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>336</sup> 00226.329 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>337</sup> 00226.041 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>338</sup> 00226.329 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>339</sup> 00234.005 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>340</sup> 00226.329 Kāi Tahu ki Otago



## Kāi Tahu relationships with local authorities

There are a number of relationship agreements between Kāi Tahu Ki Otago papatipu rūnaka<sup>341</sup> and *local authorities* in Otago. These include:

- Memorandum of Understanding and Protocol between Otago Regional Council, Te Rūnanga Ngāi Tahu and Kāi Tahu ki Otago for Effective Consultation and Liaison (2003)
- Te Roopū Taiao Otago Charter and Hui (ORC, QLDC, DCC, WDC, CDC, CODC)
- He Huarahi mō Ngā Uri Whakatupu<sup>342</sup> - Charter of Understanding signed with 2016 between<sup>343</sup> Te Ao Marama Inc. Incorporated, representing Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku,<sup>344</sup> and councils.<sup>345</sup> Southland Rūnanga (2016)<sup>346</sup>

Kāi Tahu and Otago Regional Council use the Mana to Mana forum as a means to build a strengthened relationship between the two entities.

He Huarahi mō Ngā Uri Whakatupu<sup>347</sup> is the Charter of Understanding between Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku (Awarua Rūnanga, Waihopai Rūnanga, Ōraka-Aparima Rūnanga and Hokonui Rūnanga) and ~~the local authorities, including~~<sup>348</sup> Otago Regional Council, ~~and Queenstown Lakes District Council and Clutha District Council.~~<sup>349</sup> ~~are signatories to He Huarahi mō Ngā Uri Whakatupu as it applies to their areas of jurisdiction.~~<sup>350</sup>

## Hapū Hapu<sup>351</sup> and iwi planning documents

There are four iwi planning documents lodged with the *local authorities* in the Otago Region:

- Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Freshwater Policy 1999
- Kāi Tahu ki Otago Natural Resources Management Plan 2005
- Te Tangi a Taurira: Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku Natural Resource and Environmental Iwi Management Plan 2008
- Waitaki Iwi Management Plan 2019

### How the iwi planning documents have been taken into account in this Regional Policy Statement

Objectives and policies of the iwi management plans are reflected in the Resource Management Issues of Significance to Kāi Tahu and have been taken into account in the development of provisions across the whole of this Regional Policy Statement.

### How iwi planning documents are used in Otago

The iwi management plans are used to provide cultural context and guidance as to the natural

<sup>341</sup> Resource Management Act 1991, Schedule 1, clause 16(2)

<sup>342</sup> 00223.027 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>343</sup> 00223.027 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>344</sup> 00223.027 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>345</sup> 00223.027 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>346</sup> 00223.027 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>347</sup> Available from <https://www.es.govt.nz/repository/libraries/id:26gi9ayo517q9stt81sd/hierarchy/about-us/plans-andstrategies/regional-plans/iwi-management-plan/documents/The%20Charter%20of%20Understanding.pdf> (accessed 26 May 2021)

<sup>348</sup> 00223.027 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>349</sup> 00223.027 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>350</sup> 00223.027 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>351</sup> 00226.042 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

resource values, concerns and issues of Kāi Tahu ki Otago and Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku.

The iwi planning documents are to be used in the development of planning policy and assist decision-makers to make informed decisions, recognising the local knowledge of the *environment* held by papatipu rūnaka ~~Papatipu Rūnaka~~<sup>352</sup> and the significance of the natural resource values to Kāi Tahu.

The iwi planning documents are also used to guide consultation with rūnaka ~~Rūnaka~~<sup>353</sup> and set out the expectations for consultation. The iwi management plans are not a substitute for direct communication with papatipu rūnaka ~~Papatipu Rūnaka~~<sup>354</sup>.

## **Involvement and participation with *mana whenua***

ORC and the *local authorities* will establish and maintain effective resource management relationships with Kāi Tahu based on a mutual obligation to act reasonably and in good faith. The *local authorities* and Otago Regional Council will consult Kāi Tahu at an early stage in resource management processes and implementation, and facilitate efficient and effective processes for applicants to consult Kāi Tahu on *resource consent* applications and private plan change requests.

*Local authorities* may also transfer and delegate<sup>355</sup> ~~delegate and transfer~~ any one or more of their functions, powers or duties to an iwi authority in accordance with section 33 (transfer) and 34A (delegation)<sup>356</sup> of the RMA, and where this provides an effective service.

### ***Mana whenua* consultancy services**

The papatipu rūnaka ~~Papatipu Rūnaka~~<sup>357</sup> consultancy services, Aukaha, representing Kāi Tahu ki Otago, and Te Ao Marama Inc, representing Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku, facilitate Kāi Tahu engagement in resource management processes and provide a first point of contact for the public seeking to engage with papatipu rūnaka ~~Papatipu Rūnaka~~<sup>358</sup>.

## **Other iwi, hapū and mātāwaka**

Otago is also home to Māori from other iwi, hapū, and mātāwaka. The Araiteuru marae in Dunedin and Te Whare Koa in Ōamaru ~~Ōamaru~~<sup>359</sup> are important pan-tribal cultural centres for mātāwaka and sit within the manaakitaka of *takata whenua*.

---

<sup>352</sup> 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>353</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>354</sup> 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>355</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00509.024 Wise Response

<sup>356</sup> 00509.024 Wise Response

<sup>357</sup> 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>358</sup> 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>359</sup> 00226.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

## Provisions

### Objectives

#### MW–O1 – Principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi

The principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi are given effect in resource management processes and decisions, utilising a partnership approach between councils and papatipu rūnaka Papatipu Rūnaka<sup>360</sup> to ensure that what is valued by *mana whenua* is actively protected in the region.

### Policies

#### MW–P1 – Treaty obligations

Promote awareness and understanding of the obligations of *local authorities* in regard to the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi, tikaka Māori and kaupapa Māori.

#### MW–P2 – Treaty principles

*Local authorities* exercise their functions and powers in accordance with the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi Treaty principles,<sup>361</sup> by:

- (1) recognising the status of Kāi Tahu as *mana whenua*<sup>362</sup> and facilitating Kāi Tahu involvement in decision-making as a ~~Treaty~~ partner under Te Tiriti o Waitangi,<sup>363</sup>
- (2) including Kāi Tahu in resource management processes, ~~and~~ implementation and decision-making<sup>364</sup> to the extent desired by *mana whenua*,
- (3) recognising and providing for Kāi Tahu values and addressing<sup>365</sup> resource management issues of significance to Kāi Tahu,<sup>366</sup> as identified by *mana whenua*, in resource management decision-making processes and plan implementation,
- (4) recognising and providing for the relationship of Kāi Tahu culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, and waters, ~~water~~, encompassing wai māori and wai tai, significant<sup>367</sup> sites, *wāhi tūpuna*,<sup>368</sup> *wāhi tapu* and *wāhi taoka*,<sup>369</sup> and other taoka by ensuring that Kāi Tahu have the ability to identify these relationships and determine how best to express them,<sup>370</sup>
- (5) ensuring that *regional plans*<sup>371</sup> and *district plans* recognise and provide for Kāi Tahu relationships with Statutory Acknowledgement Areas, tōpuni, *nohoaka* and customary fisheries identified in the NTCSA, ~~1998~~, including by actively protecting the mauri of these areas,
- (6) having particular regard to the responsibility<sup>372</sup> ~~ability~~ of Kāi Tahu to exercise their role as

---

<sup>360</sup> 00226.044 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>361</sup> 00226.046 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>362</sup> 00226.046 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>363</sup> 00226.046 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>364</sup> 00226.046 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>365</sup> 00223.029 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>366</sup> 00223.029 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>367</sup> 00226.046 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>368</sup> 00226.046 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>369</sup> 00226.046 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>370</sup> 00226.046 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>371</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>372</sup> 00226.046 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

kaitiaki kaitiakitaka, as an expression of mana and rakatirataka,<sup>373</sup>

(7) actively pursuing opportunities for:

- (a) delegation or transfer of functions to Kāi Tahu, and
- (b) partnership or joint management arrangements, ~~and~~<sup>374</sup>

(8) taking into account iwi management plans when making resource management decisions,<sup>375</sup>

(8A) regional plans and district plans recognising and providing for aquaculture settlement outcomes identified under the Māori Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement Act 2004, and<sup>376</sup>

(8B) recognising and providing for mātauraka and tikaka in environmental and resource management.<sup>377</sup>

### **MW-P3 – Supporting Kāi Tahu hauora<sup>378</sup> well-being**

The natural environment is managed to support Kāi Tahu hauora well-being<sup>379</sup> by:

(1A) recognising that Kāi Tahu hold an ancestral and enduring relationship with all whenua, wai māori and coastal waters within their takiwā,<sup>380</sup>

(1) protecting customary uses, Kāi Tahu values and relationships as identified by Kāi Tahu<sup>381</sup> of Kāi Tahu to resources and areas of significance, and restoring these uses and values where they have been degraded by human activities,

(2) safeguarding the mauri and life-supporting capacity of natural resources, recognising the whakapapa connections of Kāi Tahu with these resources as taoka, and the connections to practices such as mahika kai, and<sup>382</sup>

(3) working with Kāi Tahu to incorporate mātauraka into ~~in~~<sup>383</sup> resource management processes and decision-making.<sup>384</sup>

### **MW-P4 – Sustainable use of Māori land Native Reserves and Māori land**<sup>385</sup>

Kāi Tahu are able to:

(1) protect<sup>386</sup>, develop and use *land* and resources within native reserves and *Māori land* held under Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993,<sup>387</sup> including within land affected by an ONFL overlay,<sup>388</sup> in accordance with mātauraka and tikaka,<sup>389</sup> ~~in a way consistent with their culture and traditions and to~~

<sup>373</sup> 00226.046 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>374</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00234.008 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>375</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00234.008 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>376</sup> 00234.008 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>377</sup> 00234.008 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>378</sup> 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>379</sup> 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>380</sup> 00226.277 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>381</sup> 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>382</sup> 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>383</sup> 00223.030 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>384</sup> 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>385</sup> 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

<sup>386</sup> 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00226.048 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00010.004 Cain Whānau

<sup>387</sup> 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

<sup>388</sup> 00234.037 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>389</sup> 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

provide for their<sup>390</sup> economic, cultural and social aspirations, including for *papakāika*, marae related activities, while:

(2) provide for the economic use of their Māori land or native reserves resources subject to the provisions of the RMA, this regional policy statement and any relevant plan, while:

- (a) avoiding adverse effects on the health and safety of people,<sup>391</sup>
- (b) avoiding significant adverse effects on matters of national importance, and<sup>392</sup>
- (c) avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects<sup>393</sup>
- ~~(1) avoiding adverse effects on the health and safety of people,<sup>394</sup>~~
- ~~(2) avoiding significant adverse effects on matters of national importance, and<sup>395</sup>~~
- ~~(3) avoiding, remedying, or mitigating other adverse effects.<sup>396</sup>~~

## Methods

### MW–M1 – Collaboration with Kāi Tahu

Local authorities must collaborate with Kāi Tahu to:

- ~~(1) identify and map manage, in accordance with tikaka, kawa, and mātauraka, those<sup>397</sup> places, areas, or landscapes, waters, taoka and other elements<sup>398</sup> of cultural, spiritual or traditional significance to *mana whenua* by: them,<sup>399</sup>~~
  - (a) identifying, recording, and assessing these elements using methods determined by *mana whenua* (which may include mapping),<sup>400</sup> and
  - (b) protecting the values of, and *mana whenua* relationships to, these elements,<sup>401</sup>
- ~~(2) protect such places, areas, or landscapes, and the values that contribute to their significance,~~
- ~~(3) identify indigenous species and ecosystems that are taoka in accordance with ECO–M3, and<sup>402</sup>~~
- ~~(4) identify and map outstanding natural features, landscapes and seascapes, and highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes and record their values.<sup>403</sup>~~
- (4A) determine appropriate naming for places of significance in Otago, and<sup>404</sup>

<sup>390</sup> 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>391</sup> 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00226.048 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00010.004 Cain Whānau

<sup>392</sup> 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00226.048 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00010.004 Cain Whānau

<sup>393</sup> 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00226.048 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00010.004 Cain Whānau

<sup>394</sup> 00226.048 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>395</sup> 00226.048 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>396</sup> 00226.048 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>397</sup> 00223.031 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku, 00010.005 Cain whānau

<sup>398</sup> 00226.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>399</sup> 00226.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>400</sup> 00010.005 Cain whānau

<sup>401</sup> 00223.031 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku, 00010.005 Cain whānau

<sup>402</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>403</sup> 00121.014 Ravensdown

<sup>404</sup> 00226.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

(4B) share information relevant to Kāi Tahu interests.<sup>405</sup>

#### **MW–M2 – Mātauraka Māori Work with Kāi Tahu**<sup>406</sup>

*Local authorities* must work in partnership ~~consult~~<sup>407</sup> with Kāi Tahu to:

(2A) incorporate mātauraka into resource management processes,<sup>408</sup>

(2B) enable use of mātauraka in decision-making where appropriate, and<sup>409</sup>

(3) develop research and monitoring programmes that incorporate mātauraka and are led by *mana whenua*.

~~(1) — determine appropriate naming for places of significance in Otago,~~

~~(2) — share information relevant to Kāi Tahu interests, and~~

#### **MW–M3 – Kāi Tahu relationships**

*Local authorities* must develop processes to:

(1) establish and maintain effective resource management relationships with Kāi Tahu based on a mutual obligation to act reasonably and in good faith,

(2) involve Kāi Tahu at an early stage and throughout resource management processes, decision-making,<sup>410</sup> and implementation, and

(3) facilitate efficient and effective processes for applicants to consult Kāi Tahu on *resource consent* applications, private plan change requests, notices of requirement, and notices of requirement for heritage orders.

#### **MW–M4 – Kāi Tahu rakaitirataka involvement in resource management**<sup>411</sup>

*Local authorities* must facilitate Kāi Tahu involvement in resource management (including decision making), to the extent *mana whenua* consider themselves able to accommodate,<sup>412</sup> by:

(1) including an independent accredited commissioner approved or nominated by Kāi Tahu including accredited Kāi Tahu commissioners<sup>413</sup> on hearing panels for *resource consent* applications, notices of requirements,<sup>414</sup> plan changes or plans where Kāi Tahu values may be affected,

(2) implementing actions to foster the development of mana whenua capacity to participate resourcing Kāi Tahu participation<sup>415</sup> in resource management decision making, including funding,

(3) joint management agreements and full or partial transfers of functions, duties or powers from *local authorities* to iwi authorities in accordance with section 33 of the RMA ~~1991,~~<sup>416</sup> and

(4) entering into a Mana Whakahono ā Rohe with one or more iwi authorities.

---

<sup>405</sup> 00226.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>406</sup> 00226.050 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>407</sup> 00226.050 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>408</sup> 00226.050 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>409</sup> 00226.050 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>410</sup> 00226.051 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>411</sup> 00226.052 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>412</sup> 00223.034 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>413</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, Resource Management Act 1991.

<sup>414</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, Resource Management Act 1991.

<sup>415</sup> 00223.034 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>416</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

## MW–M5 – Regional plans<sup>417</sup> and district plans

Local authorities must amend their regional plans<sup>418</sup> and district plans to:

- (1) take into account<sup>419</sup> ~~Iwi Management Plans~~ iwi management plans<sup>420</sup> and address<sup>421</sup> resource management issues of significance to Kāi Tahu (~~RMA~~) ~~into account~~,<sup>422</sup>
- (2) provide for the use of native reserves and Māori<sup>423</sup> ~~land held under Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1993~~<sup>424</sup> in accordance with MW–P4 and recognise Kāi Tahu rakatirataka over this land by enabling *mana whenua* to lead approaches to manage any adverse effects of such use on the environment.<sup>425</sup>
- (3) incorporate active protection of areas and resources recognised in the NTCSA ~~1998~~.<sup>426</sup> and<sup>427</sup>
- (4) provide for the outcomes of settlements under the Māori Commercial Claims Aquaculture Settlement Act 2004.<sup>428</sup>

## MW–M6 – Incentives and education

Local authorities are encouraged to use other mechanisms or incentives to assist in achieving Policies MW–P1 to MW–P4, promoting awareness and improving knowledge of tikaka and the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi among staff and stakeholders, including through hiring practices, induction programmes, key performance indicators and training activities.

## MW–M7 – Advocacy and facilitation

Local authorities may facilitate negotiations with landowners to provide Kāi Tahu access to sites of significance to Kāi Tahu that do not have suitable access.

## Explanation

### MW–E1 – Explanation

The policies in this section are designed to achieve MW–O1 by setting out the actions that must be undertaken by *local authorities* to ensure the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi are given effect in resource management processes and decisions, and *mana whenua* values and taoka are actively protected, supporting Kāi Tahu wellbeing.<sup>429</sup> The policies also require the development and implementation of planning tools and other mechanisms that ~~which~~<sup>430</sup> recognise the role of Kāi Tahu in resource management and ensure their engagement with and participation in resource management including through partnership with *local authorities*.<sup>431</sup>

---

<sup>417</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>418</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>419</sup> 00010.006 Cain whānau

<sup>420</sup> 00010.006 Cain whānau

<sup>421</sup> 00010.006 Cain whānau

<sup>422</sup> 00223.035 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>423</sup> 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

<sup>424</sup> 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

<sup>425</sup> 00226.047 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00226.048 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00010.004 Cain Whānau

<sup>426</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>427</sup> 00234.010 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>428</sup> 00234.010 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>429</sup> 00223.036 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>430</sup> 00223.036 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>431</sup> 00235.017 OWRUG

## Principal reasons

### MW–PR1 – Principal reasons

Te Tiriti o Waitangi creates a special relationship between *takata whenua* and the Crown, which the Crown expresses in part through the provisions of the RMA and national instruments created in accordance with the RMA. This, in turn, creates responsibilities for local authorities. Providing for cultural well-being is a feature of the sustainable management purpose of the RMA.<sup>432</sup> Section 8 of the RMA 1991<sup>433</sup> requires *local authorities* to take the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi into account. These principles include *kāwanataka*, *rakatirataka*, partnership, participatory decision making and active protection of Kāi Tahu resources. Section 7(a) of the RMA 1991<sup>434</sup> requires decision makers to have particular regard to *kaitiakitaka*. Effective *kaitiakitaka* is dependent upon the extent to which Kāi Tahu can exercise *rakatirataka*, which requires the authority and ability to make decisions relating to management of resources.

*Local authorities* need to incorporate Treaty principles into their decision making and ensure they are properly applied, to account for the *effects* of resource management decisions on Kāi Tahu values, including those described in iwi resource management plans. Deliberate measures need to be taken to ensure the principles are clearly articulated and readily<sup>435</sup> ~~well~~ understood. The principles are broadly expressed, so a measure of flexibility is needed in applying them.

The provisions in this chapter assist in implementing sections 6(e), 7(a) and 8 of the RMA 1991<sup>436</sup> by requiring a partnership approach which involves Kāi Tahu and considers *mana whenua* rights, interests and values in decision making processes, and enables Treaty principles to be applied ~~taken into account~~<sup>437</sup> in an appropriate way.

Implementation of the provisions in this chapter will occur primarily, but not exclusively,<sup>438</sup> through *regional plans*<sup>439</sup> and *district plan* provisions. ~~However, Local~~<sup>440</sup> *authorities* may also adopt a range of methods, utilising statutory mechanisms and<sup>441</sup> ~~additional~~ non-regulatory methods to implement the policies and support achievement of the objective.

## Anticipated environmental results

**MW–AER1** Resource management processes and decisions reflect the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi.

**MW–AER2** Strong relationships between Kāi Tahu and *local authorities* facilitate the exercise of *rakatirataka* and *kaitiakitaka* by *mana whenua* in relation to their taoka tuku iho.

---

<sup>432</sup> 00223.037 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>433</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>434</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>435</sup> 00239.017 Federated Farmers

<sup>436</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>437</sup> 00223.037 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>438</sup> 00223.037 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>439</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>440</sup> 00223.037 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>441</sup> 00223.037 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku



## PART 2 – RESOURCE MANAGEMENT OVERVIEW

### SRMR – Significant resource management issues for the region

#### Introduction

Otago’s people and communities rely on the *natural and physical*<sup>442</sup> resources that Otago’s *environment* provides to enable their social, economic, and cultural well-being. Natural resources include *freshwater* (i.e. surface and *groundwater, wetlands, estuaries*), *land and soil*<sup>443</sup>, terrestrial and *freshwater* ecosystems, coastal and marine ecosystems, and air, landscapes, vegetation and natural landforms. Physical resources include *infrastructure, buildings and facilities*.<sup>444</sup>

From an economic perspective *natural and physical*<sup>445</sup> resources support, and are impacted by, agricultural industries (e.g. grazing, cropping, horticulture, viticulture), urban development, industrial development, *infrastructure*, energy generation, transport, marine industries (fishing and aquaculture), tourism and mineral extraction. From a social, health,<sup>446</sup> and cultural perspective *natural and physical*<sup>447</sup> resources support and are impacted by food production,<sup>448</sup> recreation, housing, and cultural activities. (Refer Figure 2).<sup>449</sup>

*Figure 2—Relationships between natural resources, resource-use and strategies*<sup>450</sup>

---

<sup>442</sup> 00314.009 Transpower

<sup>443</sup> 00239.019 Federated Farmers, 00236.021 Horticulture NZ

<sup>444</sup> 00314.009 Transpower

<sup>445</sup> 00314.009 Transpower

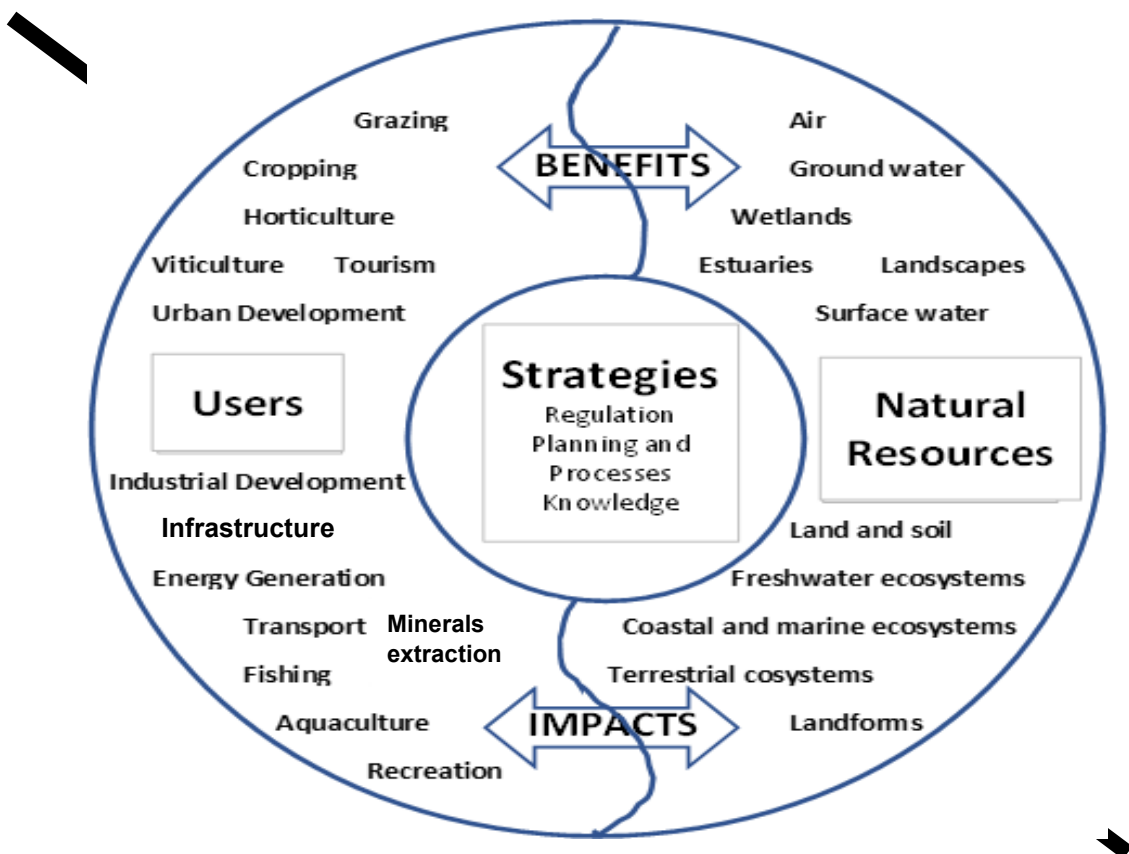
<sup>446</sup> 00120.012 Yellow Eyed Penguin Trust

<sup>447</sup> 00314.009 Transpower

<sup>448</sup> 00236.021 Horticulture NZ

<sup>449</sup> 00314.009 Transpower

<sup>450</sup> 00314.009 Transpower



This RPS identifies the ~~eleven~~ twelve<sup>451</sup> most significant issues impacting the Otago region. Issues firstly considered include *natural hazards*, *climate change*, pest species, *water* quantity and quality, and biodiversity loss, collectively the “natural asset-based issues”. Two “place-based issues” of regional significance are then addressed - being Otago’s coast and Otago’s *lake* areas. The use and development of resources is also recognised as being essential to the well-being of the community, while acknowledging that this can lead to conflicts when managing the adverse effects of this use.<sup>452</sup> Finally, issues of economic and domestic pressures, cumulative impacts and *resilience* are considered.

While the issues in this section are considered individually, this RPS considers and responds to them in a joined-up manner as part of a complex system with biophysical limits, inherent uncertainty, potentially irreversible and sometimes catastrophic impacts, and interdependent behaviours.

Each issue is considered in the following manner:

- an issue statement
- context
- impacts on the *environment*, economy, and society

## SRMR-I1 – *Natural hazards pose a risk to many Otago communities*

### Statement

Otago is prone to a range of natural hazards that pose a risk to Otago communities, property, infrastructure, and the wider environment. A major event could cause severe damage and may isolate Otago communities for an extended time. Major events of concern include flooding, an earthquake on the Alpine fault, tsunamis, coastal erosion, wildfires, and extreme weather events.<sup>453</sup>

~~An earthquake on the Alpine Fault would cause potentially catastrophic impacts on the entire region. Particular areas in Otago are prone to flooding. A major hazard event could isolate all or parts of Otago for an extended time.~~

### Context

The Otago region is exposed to a wide variety of *natural hazards* that impact on people, property, *infrastructure*, historic heritage and the wider *environment*. When a *natural hazard* event occurs, it is sometimes usually<sup>454</sup> difficult and costly for a community to recover. The *natural hazard* threats range from coastal erosion and flooding in lowland coastal areas to alluvial fan deposition, landslip, rock fall, seismic events (earthquake and tsunami), wind, snow, drought and riverbank breaches. The risk resulting from natural hazards is not just due to the hazards themselves, but also whether human activities are located and operated in ways which make them vulnerable to those hazards.<sup>455</sup>

Frequent heavy rainstorms, the steep gradients of many *river* catchments and human occupation of floodplains combine to make flooding the most frequently occurring *natural hazard* event in the Otago region. For example, flooding can affect Otago's main urban centres causing damage to housing and

---

<sup>451</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA - Consequential amendment arising from 00322.004 Fulton Hogan, 00314.009 Transpower, 00315.015 Aurora, 00310.003 The Telecommunication Companies, 00213.018 Fonterra, 00236.033 Horticulture NZ, 00231.022 Otago Fish and Game, 00235.058 OWRUG, 00411.097 Wayfare

<sup>452</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA - Consequential amendment arising from 00322.004 Fulton Hogan, 00314.009 Transpower, 00315.015 Aurora, 00310.003 The Telecommunication Companies, 00213.018 Fonterra, 00236.033 Horticulture NZ, 00231.022 Otago Fish and Game, 00235.058 OWRUG, 00411.097 Wayfare

<sup>453</sup> 00239.020 Federated Farmers

<sup>454</sup> 00206.080 Trojan, 00411,099 Wayfare

<sup>455</sup> 00137.033 DOC

business disruption, and primary production agriculture<sup>456</sup> can be disrupted in Otago's floodplains (including<sup>457</sup> lower Clutha, Lower Waitaki<sup>458</sup> and Taieri Taieri<sup>459</sup>).

Seismic *risks* are widespread in Otago as evidenced by the region's active faults, being the Cardrona, Dunstan, Rough Ridge, Hyde, Taieri Ridge, Waihemo and Akatore faults. The Alpine Fault in the Queenstown Lakes District has an estimated 75% probability of causing a major earthquake in the next 50 years with associated large-scale destruction.

Otago's coastline is exposed to tsunamis, from local offshore faults and nearby subduction zones, such as the Puysegur Trench (south of the South Island). The stretch of the Otago coastline north of the Otago Peninsula has a greater level of exposure to tsunamis generated from South America.

*Natural hazards* may be exacerbated by the *effects* of *climate change*, which include sea level rise, and greater frequency and intensity of extreme weather events. Elevated sea levels resulting in flooding can occur as a result of a combination of tides, storm surge, and waves. There are several low-lying areas in relatively close proximity to the coast that have been identified as being at *risk*, such as South Dunedin.

Parts of the Otago coastline (which is a soft coast formed by material such as sand or gravel) are also prone to significant coastal erosion. Coastal erosion is an issue *risk*<sup>460</sup> in Waitaki District, Dunedin City and along the Clutha River Delta, ~~potentially~~<sup>461</sup> affecting communities and *infrastructure* near the coast.

## Impact snapshot

### Environmental

Ecosystems (from the mountains to the coast), *water bodies* and *water* quality (*rivers, lakes, wetlands* and *ground water*) are variously at *risk* of increased frequency and intensity of flooding and landslides. Seismic events result in liquefaction of land and associated soil disturbance, elevated sea levels and associated flooding, potential permanent inundation and coastal<sup>462</sup> erosion. While *effects* are localised, *natural hazard* impacts can be significant where threatened ecosystems or species are involved.

### Economic

Otago's primary industries, *infrastructure*, energy and transport systems, and urban areas are exposed to the full range of hazards noted above, with potential for major-to-catastrophic economic consequences, including damage to production, *infrastructure* such as transport routes (highways, bridges), the built environment and communications, and often resulting in supply chain disruptions. Natural hazards could also impact on *renewable electricity generation with the potential for significant national and regional consequences*. New *infrastructure* should be encouraged to locate in areas where it is less vulnerable to natural hazards.<sup>463</sup> ~~in the region with subsequent impact on electricity generation capacity.~~

For individuals and households this can result in changes to employment, income, assets and

---

<sup>456</sup> 00140.010 Waitaki DC

<sup>457</sup> 00239.020 Federated Farmers

<sup>458</sup> 00140.010 Waitaki DC

<sup>459</sup> 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>460</sup> 00140.010 Waitaki DC

<sup>461</sup> 00140.010 Waitaki DC

<sup>462</sup> 00223.040 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>463</sup> 00315.015 Aurora Energy, 00314.09 Transpower, 00310.003 The Telecommunications Companies

consumption patterns, disruption to social protection, services, social safety net mechanisms and institutions.

For industry, hazards can damage production assets and *infrastructure* with associated costs, disrupt service delivery and limit availability and access to goods and services, and cause decline in sales and increased costs. Loss or changes in production flows can be either temporary or permanent depending on financial *resilience* of businesses, which is a function of their existing loan commitments, credit worthiness and insurance cover. Food security can also be affected.

Whilst the community and its businesses have substantial resilience to severe weather events and supply chain disruptions, there can be cumulative impacts from repeated events.<sup>464</sup>

## Social

Social impacts can be direct (e.g. physical destruction of housing or transport route, human physical harm) but equally important are indirect ~~and secondary~~<sup>465</sup> impacts of disasters, including the destruction of communities and the negative impacts on people. Physical impacts and community dislocation can also cause long term psychological stresses affecting people's coping mechanisms, recovery sources and capacity which can test the *resilience* of a community. There can also be cumulative impacts from events on physical and mental health.<sup>466</sup>

Social impacts of events can result in immediate impacts on livelihoods for individuals and families, particularly for lower socio-economic groups. Health services disruptions can occur, including access to and changes in demand for services. Similarly, there can be disruptions to education service delivery. Housing impacts may require urgent provision for basic human needs including replacement shelter and housing, and food and *water* immediately following an event.

Damage to *infrastructure* and assets may have varying impacts on different groups, for example those with less resources may have less capacity to respond to hazard events and be more impacted as a result. The relationship between affected people and their cultural assets may also be affected, for example customs and traditions related to housing, health, livelihoods, and nutrition.

## **SRMR-12 – Climate change will<sup>467</sup> ~~is likely to~~ impact our economy and environment**

### Statement

Otago's climate is changing, and these changes will continue for the foreseeable future. Central Otago is likely to see more varied precipitation, leading to increased flooding and reduced *water* reliability. This will be compounded by stronger winds, increased temperatures and longer dry periods, which may affect the number and types of crops and animals that the land can sustain, food production systems and related food supply and food security needs,<sup>468</sup> and the potential for renewable energy generation.<sup>469</sup> On the coast, low lying areas like South Dunedin are at *risk* of inundation from rising sea levels. This will also exacerbate coastal erosion, which could damage coastal *infrastructure* (including *roads*), damage historic heritage, particularly *wāhi tūpuna*, and expose old waste dumps (e.g. at Middle Beach). *Climate change* will also affect native animals and plants, compounding the

---

<sup>464</sup> 00239.020 Federated Farmers

<sup>465</sup> 00101.006 Toitū Te Whenua

<sup>466</sup> 00239.020 Federated Farmers

<sup>467</sup> 00236.023 Horticulture NZ, 00235.028 OWRUG, 00230.023 Forest and Bird

<sup>468</sup> 00236.023 Horticulture NZ

<sup>469</sup> 00306.014 Meridian

impacts of existing pests and stresses and providing opportunities for new pests to establish themselves due to changed conditions. The impact of other *climate change* threats is unpredictable. Our responses to climate change, whether that be mitigation or adaptation, will also impact on our economy and environment. An example of this will be the need to protect and maximise existing renewable electricity generation activities in the region, as well as providing for the development of new renewable electricity generation activities.<sup>470</sup>

## Context

The rate of future *climate change* depends on how fast *greenhouse gas* concentrations increase. These changes are expected to result in higher temperatures, changes in precipitation, drought, fire weather, extreme weather events, inland and coastal flooding, landslides and soil erosion, salinity, sea level rise, erosion, reduced snow and ice, and marine heatwaves. Rainfall and temperature change may result in drier soils and changes to river flow (low flow and floods), as well as increased occurrence of slips/landslides. Sea level rise will have impacts on coastal communities, infrastructure and habitats, while the risk of wildfire will also increase. Changing climate also risks increased biosecurity issues of increased plant, fungal and animal pests and diseases.<sup>471</sup>

It is expected temperatures will increase across Otago, and by 2090, Otago is projected to have from 4 to 25 extra days per year where maximum temperatures exceed 25°C, with around 13 to 45 fewer frosts per year (and consequently less snow). Precipitation overall will increase slightly (by up to 10%), more so in the western part of the region, with less precipitation in central and eastern Otago. There will be an increase in average annual flows across the region, apart from the Taiari Taiari<sup>472</sup> and North Otago, and flooding will be more severe – there will be an increase in the mean annual flood by 100% in some locations by the end of the century.

## Impact snapshot

*Climate change* impacts arising from changes in temperature, rainfall, *river* flows and flooding have been assessed in the Otago Regional Council's commissioned report: Otago Climate Change Risk Assessment Phase 1 report<sup>473</sup> (OCCRA report)<sup>474</sup>. The following discussion is based on potential *climate change* impacts at 2050.

## Environmental<sup>475</sup>

For terrestrial native<sup>476</sup> ecosystems and species, higher frequency of severe events (e.g. high/low temperatures, intense rainfall, drought, fire weather) could reduce *resilience* of native<sup>477</sup> terrestrial ecosystems and species over time with adverse impacts on biodiversity. Native species (including *threatened species*) and ecosystems are also likely to be affected by increased competition with invasive species/pests favoured by warmer temperatures, particularly with milder winters. This could be a contributory *risk* factor (but not sole cause) for native species that are threatened or close to extinction.

For marine and coastal ecosystems and species, potential climate impacts include lower ocean productivity and impacts on feeding grounds (e.g. decreasing the population of yellow-eyed penguins); ocean acidification; and changes in species diversity/distribution (e.g. reducing kelp forests). Increased

---

<sup>470</sup> 00318.003 Contact

<sup>471</sup> 00239.021 Federated Farmers

<sup>472</sup> 00234.005 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>473</sup> Tonkin+Taylor, 2020, Otago Climate Change Risk Assessment (Commissioned by the Otago Regional Council)

<sup>474</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>475</sup> Clause (16)2, Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>476</sup> 00231.023 Fish & Game

<sup>477</sup> 00231.023 Fish & Game

intensity of flooding would result in an increase in sediment which will change the physical composition of *freshwater* and marine waters and, for example, may reduce light availability, smother fragile habitats, or impact on the foraging ability of some species, particular those that rely on vision (e.g. yellow-eyed penguins). New pests and disease threats may arise from marine heatwaves/warmer ocean temperatures. Warmer temperatures could also reduce oxygen and cause stratification in shallow bays (resulting in *water* quality impacts). Sea level rise will also affect coastal habitats and ecosystems (inter-tidal zones, sand dunes). *Groundwater* impacts will include coastal aquifers being affected by salinisation, and reduced rainfall in some areas will affect *groundwater* recharge, flow and surface *water discharges*, with potential adverse impacts on ecosystems and species dependent on *groundwater*.

By 2090, the time spent in drought ranges from minimal change through to more than double, depending on the climate model and emissions scenario considered. More frequent droughts are likely to lead to *water* shortages, increased demand for irrigation and increased *risk* of wildfires. Reduced snowfalls may affect *water* availability since snow acts as a storage mechanism until the *water* is required in summer.<sup>478</sup> As a result, *river* ecosystems could be altered through reduced flows during drought periods with associated declining *water* quality, reduced food resources, and availability of habitats. This would affect ecosystems for key species, such as *river* nesting birds and endemic *freshwater* fish species.

*Lakes* could be subject to temperature increases. This can impact on the health of *lake* ecosystems, for example algal blooms. *Wetland* plant species and *wetland* habitats, and other species reliant on *wetlands* (including threatened bird species) are at *risk* of being negatively impacted. There are also likely to be cascading impacts on surrounding *environments* and ecosystems from hydrological changes (e.g. increased flood *risk*/changing *water* flows due to *wetland* loss). Coastal *wetlands* are particularly at *risk* due to salinisation from sea level rise and coastal flooding.

Human adaptation to climate change, such as building or expanding dams or flood protection schemes, will be necessary and may give rise to adverse impacts on ecosystems, in addition to those imposed by climate change itself.<sup>479</sup>

## Economy

### Regional industry

*Climate change* impacts will result in both impacts and opportunities for regional industry in terms of jobs, business income and profitability. Key industries likely to be impacted include sheep, beef, dairy and deer farming, cropping and viticulture, forestry, fisheries and aquaculture, as well as tourism. For example, agriculture may benefit from warmer temperatures, longer growing seasons and elevated carbon dioxide concentrations leading to better pasture and crop growth. *Climate change* may also result in shifting land-use activities to adapt to altered climate conditions, which will incur costs, and potentially enable resources previously unviable to come into production.

However, these benefits may be limited by negative *effects* of *climate change* such as prolonged drought and increased flood *risk*. Some of these impacts can be mitigated by adaptation, for example, planting new crops that are better suited to new climatic conditions or through changes in crop intensification, or *water* harvesting practices. Pests and diseases could spread in range and severity, and pasture composition is likely to change with uncertain impacts on animal productivity and nutrient balances.

Some<sup>480</sup> ~~For~~ tourism activities may be affected. For example,<sup>481</sup> ~~there will be negative impacts on skiing~~

---

<sup>478</sup> <https://www.mfe.govt.nz/climate-change/likely-impacts-of-climate-change/how-could-climate-change-affect-my-region/otago>

<sup>479</sup> 00231.024 Fish & Game

<sup>480</sup> 00206.082 Trojan 00411.101 Wayfare

<sup>481</sup> 00206.082 Trojan 00411.101 Wayfare

where the number of snow days experienced annually could decrease by as much as 30-40 days in some parts of the region. This reduction in natural snowfall will mean that ski fields will be more reliant on snowmaking.<sup>482</sup>The duration of snow cover is also likely to decrease, particularly at lower elevations. This will also lead to reduced summer waterflows.

#### Built environment

For Otago, by 2050, the built environment will experience high to extreme impact *risks* to *wastewater* and *stormwater infrastructure*, *roads* and bridges, airports, stop banks and flood management schemes, and rural drainage. Medium to extreme impact *risks* are expected to affect urban and rural housing, *water supply*, *landfill* areas; and medium level *risks* are likely for commercial and public *buildings*, open space, rail, and ports.

The main threat to the *urban environment* comes from possible increases in heavy rainfall, which would put pressure on drainage and *stormwater* systems and increase the *risk* of flooding in some areas. Erosion could also increase *road* maintenance costs. There is greater risk of wastewater network overflows, and wastewater treatment plants being compromised.

Warmer conditions will substantially reduce home heating costs, leading to reduced electricity demand during the peak winter season, but possibly increase demand for air conditioning during summer. A reduced winter demand for electricity, combined with an increased availability of *water* in hydroelectric storage *lakes* from projected rainfall increases over the Main Divide, would provide the opportunity for a more balanced annual cycle in electricity supply and demand.<sup>483</sup>

Areas of particular concern include inland areas of flooding *risk* including South Dunedin, Mosgiel, and Milton; coastal erosion *risk* areas including St Kilda, St Clair, Clutha Delta, Moeraki, and Oamaru; sea level rise and salinity *risk* areas including South Dunedin, Harbor Basin, Aramoana, and Kaka Point.

#### Social

Changes to the economy generally and in relation to local shift in economic activity because of *climate change* may impact on community cohesion and *resilience*, and mental well-being and health. Higher temperatures could reduce illness in winter but can increase heat stress in summer. Higher levels and duration of ultraviolet radiation could increase skin cancer *risks*. Insect pests could increase, adversely impacting outdoor recreation experiences. Additionally, the visual and recreational values of Otago's landscape may be impacted on by the effects of climate change.<sup>484</sup>

Differentiation may occur between highly *resilient* (high social capital, high income and politically empowered) and non-*resilient* communities (especially those with low adaptive capacity, such as low-income and marginalised groups) which has the potential to increase socio-economic and intergeneration and intrageneration inequality.

## SRMR–I3 – Pest species pose an ongoing threat to indigenous biodiversity, economic activities and landscapes

#### Statement

Pest species can be found throughout Otago, from alpine to marine environments. Rabbits are changing Central Otago's landscape, eroding soils and affecting agriculture. Wallabies are an increasing risk with incursion beyond their contaminant zone and illegal liberations resulting in an

<sup>482</sup> 00206.082 Trojan 00411.101 Wayfare

<sup>483</sup> <https://environment.govt.nz/assets/Publications/Files/impacts-report-jun01.pdf> (Accessed 28 May 2021)

<sup>484</sup> 00138.003 Queenstown Lakes District Council



expanding range within Otago, particularly Waitaki, Central Otago and Queenstown Lakes.<sup>485</sup> *Wilding conifers* threaten high country and tussock grassland, changing the landscape and impacting on primary production,<sup>486</sup> recreational, hydrological and conservation values. Aquatic pests and weeds such as didymo, lake snow and *lagarosiphon* affect our *lakes* and *rivers*. Invasive marine species affect our marine waters. Native aquatic plants are displaced, impacting ecosystem and indigenous biodiversity health and recreation activities. Climate change may compound the impacts of existing pest species and provide opportunities for new pest species to establish.<sup>487</sup>

## Context

Otago's landscape, water<sup>488</sup> and climate support many plants and animals considered to be pests. This includes weeds, vertebrate pests (e.g. rabbits), invertebrate pests, and diseases<sup>489</sup> (e.g. pathogenic pest diseases (e.g. foot and mouth disease, pine needle diseases)), and *freshwater* and marine pests which are all biosecurity threats in the Otago region.

There are 35 listed weed species in Otago, and 11 listed animal pests. Pest management approaches include exclusion and surveillance (e.g. African feather grass), attempted eradication (e.g. wallabies and rooks), containment (e.g. *bomarea*) and sustained control (e.g. rabbits, gorse and broom). The approach deployed depends on the degree to which species are entrenched.

The Otago Pest Management Plan 2019-2029<sup>490</sup> seeks to meet ORC's responsibilities under Part 2 of the Biosecurity Act 1992 to provide regional leadership through activities that prevent, reduce, or eliminate adverse *effects* resulting from harmful species that are present in the region. That plan details which approaches are to be used for which pest species, and the methods to be used for control.

In conjunction with that Plan, ORC has also established a Biosecurity Strategy (the Strategy) which sets out ORC's objectives for biosecurity management in the region using the full range of statutory and non-statutory tools available. Strategy priorities provide for protection of indigenous biodiversity, protection of landscape, recreation, cultural and *amenity values* and minimising the impact on agricultural production. The Strategy also supports pest management and seeks to integrate the regulatory and non-regulatory programmes. Collaborative partnership models of pest management are increasingly being developed and adopted in conjunction with community groups and land holders.

## Impact snapshot

### Environmental

Otago is one of the most biodiverse regions in New Zealand, with high levels of endemism. It is also one of the most modified regions in New Zealand. Both plant and animal species pests have significant impacts on biodiversity. Pests can also adversely impact waterways,<sup>491</sup> natural features and landscapes.

Vertebrate browsing pests such as rabbits, and wallabies and goats<sup>492</sup> cause erosion and damage to land in both introduced pastures and native tussock communities, impacting significant lands and

---

<sup>485</sup> 00235.033 OWRUG

<sup>486</sup> 00239.022 Federated Farmers

<sup>487</sup> 00236.024 Horticulture NZ, 00235.033 OWRUG, 00120.016 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

<sup>488</sup> 00239.022 Federated Farmers

<sup>489</sup> 00239.022 Federated Farmers

<sup>490</sup> [https://www.orc.govt.nz/media/8029/orc-pest-management-plan-2019\\_final\\_digital.pdf](https://www.orc.govt.nz/media/8029/orc-pest-management-plan-2019_final_digital.pdf) (accessed 26 May 2021)

<sup>491</sup> 00239.022 Federated Farmers

<sup>492</sup> 00223.042 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

taoka species.<sup>493</sup> Severe erosion can have adverse *effects* on *water* quality. Rats and stoats predate on native birds, while deer destroy native vegetation, and possums compete with native birds for hollows and have also been known to predate on chicks. Possums spread viruses and diseases such as bovine tuberculosis, which can have severe impacts on stock.

Weeds smother and compete with native vegetation, taking up available nutrients, *water*, space and sunlight. They reduce natural diversity and prevent native plants growing back after clearing, fire and other disturbance. Nationally, weeds will potentially affect 7% of the conservation estate within a decade, corresponding to a loss of native biodiversity equivalent to \$1.3 billion.<sup>494</sup> For example, wilding conifers pines<sup>495</sup> are a significant issue for the Otago region as well as nationally, where they threaten high country and tussock grassland, increase fire *risk*, and reduce *water* yield in *water* short catchments, impact soil nutrient cycling,<sup>496</sup> change the landscape and negatively impact recreational, hydrological and conservation values.

Pest species destabilise aquatic habitats and negatively modify *water* flow with consequences for drainage, irrigation, power generation and recreational activities. The introduction of the *freshwater* diatom didymo (*Didymosphenia geminata*) in South Island streams is an example.<sup>497</sup>

## Economic

Pests can cause economic losses because of reduction in production, quality, efficiency and or functionality. This can include lost crop or animal<sup>498</sup> production, higher *water* requirements and reductions in animal health. Weeds can affect wool quality, impact the quality of leather,<sup>499</sup> taint meat and milk, damage the feet of stock and, in some instances, be toxic.

Costs to agriculture, business and government to control pests and mitigate impacts are considerable, as are biosecurity costs to prevent pest incursion which are reflected in biosecurity fees and taxes. Biosecurity failure can have serious economic impacts on existing industries e.g. through the importation of fruit infected with fruitfly in a traveller's bag. Pests also adversely affect tourism through loss of landscape values (e.g. *wilding conifers pines*<sup>500</sup>) and *amenity values* (e.g. didymo compromising fishing) which lead to reduced visitor experiences. Human health problems caused by pests can have a related economic cost.<sup>501</sup>

Weeds, for example, are conservatively estimated to cost the New Zealand economy \$1.6 billion per annum<sup>502</sup> in terms of loss of economic production, management and control costs. They also affect landscape amenity value and tourism experiences relied upon by the tourism sector. Weeds, including didymo and lake snow,<sup>503</sup> can also adversely impact *infrastructure*, for example, *water* systems including irrigation, dams, and levies; ~~power systems (e.g. generation penstock, gates, valves, surge tanks, transmission lines);~~ electricity generation infrastructure<sup>504</sup> and transportation systems (e.g. *road* beds, *lake* and *river* transportation, airstrips).

## Social

---

<sup>493</sup> 00223.042 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>494</sup> <https://www.royalsociety.org.nz/news/pests-costing-economy-and-environment-billions> (accessed 26 May 2021)

<sup>495</sup> 00033.002 Port Blakely NZ Ltd

<sup>496</sup> 00239.022 Federated Farmers

<sup>497</sup> SL Goldson, GW Bourdôt, EG Brockerhoff, AE Byrom, MN Clout, MS McGlone, WA Nelson, AJ Popay, DM Suckling & MD Templeton (2015) New Zealand pest management: current and future challenges, *Journal of the Royal Society of New Zealand*, 45:1, 31-58, DOI: 10.1080/03036758.2014.1000343

<sup>498</sup> 00239.022 Federated Farmers

<sup>499</sup> 00239.022 Federated Farmers

<sup>500</sup> 00033.002 Port Blakely NZ Ltd

<sup>501</sup> 00239.021 Federated Farmers

<sup>502</sup> <https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/abs/10.1080/14735903.2017.1334179?journalCode=tags20> (accessed 26 May 2021)

<sup>503</sup> 00411.103 Wayfare Group Ltd

<sup>504</sup> 00306.016 Meridian

Recreation values can be impacted through loss of amenity, access or landscape values. Pests can also cause human health problems. For example, some weed pollens can induce asthma and cause allergies (e.g. hay fever).<sup>505</sup> Zoonoses (bacterium, viruses, parasites, prions) can result in diseases being transferred from animals to humans and include, for example, leptospirosis and campylobacter.

## **SRMR-I4 – Poorly managed urban and residential growth affects productive land, treasured natural assets, rural industry,<sup>506</sup> *infrastructure* and community well-being**

### **Statement**

Natural resources used for urban development are permanently transformed – with the opportunity cost of removing urban activity being too high for land to revert to productive uses. Frequently, places that are attractive for urban growth also have landscape and productive values all of which must be balanced and where possible protected. The growth of ~~Wānaka~~Wanaka<sup>507</sup> and Queenstown is changing the natural landscape. Mosgiel's and Cromwell's<sup>508</sup> growth is occurring on some of Otago's most highly productive soil, which removes the option for agriculture. Towns like Arrowtown, Clyde and Milton experience poor air quality in winter, while experiencing pressure to grow.

### **Context**

How urban areas function and grow now and in the future can directly impact on a significant proportion of the current and future urban population and correspondingly future environmental, economic, social and cultural outcomes and well-being. Most of Otago's population (87% or 225,186<sup>509</sup> in 2018) live in urban areas, while non-urban areas comprise 99% of the region.<sup>510</sup> Otago's total population under a medium scenario is projected to increase by 20% between 2018 and 2048, with Queenstown-Lakes population projected to grow by 60%, Central Otago by 42%, Dunedin and Waitaki by 8%, and Clutha by 4% over the same period.<sup>511</sup>

Otago's urban areas, like its people and landscapes, are also diverse. The attraction of urban areas results from the benefits of proximity and access to a variety of other people, experiences, goods, services (e.g. shopping, education, specialist service providers, recreation and leisure facilities and *infrastructure* (usually described as agglomeration effect)). These are generally considered to exceed the inconveniences such as congestion, pollution, and noise. Growth in some urban areas and demand for living in and visiting Otago can also be driven by proximity and access to highly valued natural features, such as the coast, mountains, *lakes*, and *rivers*. The open space and landscapes provided in rural areas also drives demand for rural residential living, particularly in areas with these qualities that are also in relative proximity to urban services.

Well-functioning urban places need to be dynamic and efficient, enable human social interactions and provide a wide variety of housing, employment, service and recreational opportunities that meet changing needs and preferences, in a way that maximises the well-being of all its present and future inhabitants, and respects its history and historic heritage, its setting and the *environment*. This

<sup>505</sup> <http://www.allergy.org.nz/site/allergyNZ/files/Annual%20Pollen%20Calendar.pdf> (accessed 26 May 2021)

<sup>506</sup> 00213.015 Fonterra

<sup>507</sup> 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>508</sup> 00236.025 Horticulture NZ

<sup>509</sup> 2018 Census place summaries: Stats NZ. (n.d.). Retrieved June 29, 2020, from <https://www.stats.govt.nz/tools/2018-census-place-summaries/otago-region> (accessed 26 May 2021)

<sup>510</sup> The rural/urban area definitions in this paragraph are taken from Statistics New Zealand Urban/Rural Classification at the SA2 geographic level using usually resident population data from the 2018 Census

<sup>511</sup> Statistics New Zealand Subnational Population Projections, 2018 base, published 31 March 2021 . (accessed 26 May 2021)

requires well located development, supported by the necessary infrastructure.

Urban growth, especially if it exceeds *infrastructure* capacity (either through sheer pace and scale or by lack of planning) or if it occurs in a way or at a rate that mean that appropriate *infrastructure* is not provided, is lagging or is inefficient, can result in adverse impacts on the *environment*, existing residents, business and wider society. ~~Quality urban environments are those that maximise the positive aspects of urban areas and minimise the negative.~~<sup>512</sup>

In addition, the productive *land* in Otago contributes to the social and economic well-being of the community through production of food and other rural production-based products. In some parts of Otago, *land* and soil resources are particularly valuable for food production. However, where development occurs in a place or manner that removes or reduces the potential to use productive *land*, including through *reverse sensitivity effects*, the ability of *land* to support *primary production* is compromised.<sup>513</sup>

## Impact snapshot

### Environmental

*Urban areas* and associated concentration of human activity result in adverse impacts on the natural *environment*, as a result of land consumption, landscape, waterway and vegetation modification for housing, industry, transport of goods and people and recreation areas, the diversion and use of *water*, and waste disposal and effluent and pollution *discharges* to air, *land* and *water*. Urban or rural lifestyle expansion can remove *land* and soil resources from productive uses, including for the production of food.<sup>514</sup> All of these can also impact *mana whenua* values. These impacts can also result in loss or impediment of access to important resources including significant biodiversity or natural features and landscapes. Poorly managed urban growth can lead to additional carbon emissions, this can create tensions between the need to increase residential housing stock and the need to meet carbon reduction targets.<sup>515</sup>

Urban growth within *rural areas* development<sup>516</sup> can also lead to reverse-sensitivity *effects* on existing *primary production* activities and related rural based activities, because urban activities can be sensitive to the *effects* generated by *primary production* activities<sup>517</sup> and related rural based activities.<sup>518</sup> ~~whereby traditional methods of pest management or the undertaking of rural production activities cannot be deployed due the proximity of urban populations and the potential for adverse impacts on these populations.~~<sup>519</sup> Urban growth can also impact air quality, through increased vehicle use, but also particularly where *solid fuel* burners are used, noting they are the heating of choice in Otago. Urban areas such as Arrowtown, Cromwell, Alexandra, Clyde, Milton, and Mosgiel already do not meet National Environment Standards for Air Quality (NESAQ), for example. Emissions from existing domestic fuel burners account for more than 95% of winter *PM<sub>10</sub>* emissions in all of these towns but Milton.<sup>520</sup> Air quality in urban areas in Otago therefore needs to be addressed from two perspectives, dealing with existing problems and, in areas where further development is planned, addressing the additional impact that development may have.

---

<sup>512</sup> 00411.105 Wayfare

<sup>513</sup> 00236.025 Horticulture NZ

<sup>514</sup> 00236.025 Horticulture NZ

<sup>515</sup> QLDC (not captured on SODR)

<sup>516</sup> 00208.004 AgResearch, 00410.002 Rural Contractors NZ

<sup>517</sup> 00208.004 AgResearch, 00410.002 Rural Contractors NZ

<sup>518</sup> 00213.015 Fonterra

<sup>519</sup> 00208.004 AgResearch, 00410.002 Rural Contractors NZ

<sup>520</sup> "Alexandra, Arrowtown, Mosgiel and Milton Air Emission Inventory – 2016" & "Wanaka, Cromwell and Clyde Air Emission Inventory -2019", prepared by Emily Wilton, Environet Ltd, for Otago Regional Council.

## Economic

While potentially providing short term commercial returns, poorly managed urban growth and development may result in long term impacts including:

- the loss of land for primary production activities productive land<sup>521</sup> (either directly through building on it, or indirectly through reverse sensitivity effects);
- the consequences of previous decisions (low density development, including rural lifestyle residential<sup>522</sup>, in the short term can preclude higher density development in the medium to longer term);
- increased capital and operational costs for *infrastructure* which can foreclose other more suitable investments or spending, increased costs from less efficient spatial arrangements (such as increased transportation and *infrastructure* costs to both users and operators), and loss of valued natural capital and future opportunities; and
- housing affordability challenged are present in the region and are can be<sup>523</sup> negatively affected by urban growth where demand outpaces supply.
- conflict arising from the location of incompatible activities within proximity of each other, including the potential for reverse sensitivity effects on the continued operation and growth of the rural based activities.<sup>524</sup>

~~In Otago, housing has been more affordable for homeowners than the NZ average in recent years, however house value growth has been higher in Otago (12.6% per annum) than the NZ average (7%) since 2017.~~<sup>525</sup>

The costs and negative impacts from 'over planning' for growth are much lower than the direct and wider costs and risks of under-planning, and largely relate to the provision of infrastructure ahead of demand. While this can cause financial and operational issues for infrastructure providers, undersized or delayed infrastructure also generates impacts for those providers, and the wider economy, through delayed, foregone, or less appropriate or efficient development, and contributes to rising housing and land costs.

## Social

Adverse impacts from inefficient or poorly planned urban development affect the well-being of both individuals and communities. This shows up as health risks as a result of increased air pollution and *water* pollution, decreased social capital and mental health in fragmented, disconnected and dispersed communities and inequality impacts arising from less-competitive land and house markets and reduced housing choice and access to affordable housing.

Changes in the overall number of people and changes in preferences can alter the relative balance between supply and demand for housing and where supply is unable to respond in a timely way to demand, this can impact on prices for housing, including rent. These impacts can disproportionately affect people on lower incomes who may already face affordability issues, and accordingly have less options. While Otago has traditionally been relatively affordable, house prices have risen rapidly

---

<sup>521</sup> 00322.006 Fulton Hogan

<sup>522</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – Consequential amendment arising from 00221.016 Silver Fern Farms, 00236.103 Horticulture NZ

<sup>523</sup> 00138.004 QLDC

<sup>524</sup> 00213.016 Fonterra

<sup>525</sup> 00138.004 QLDC

across almost all districts, at a rate higher than the national average.

Transportation of goods and people between and within urban areas can also generate impacts on humans. For example, increased traffic congestion and lack of safe and attractive alternatives within urban areas impacts people and businesses living near to high volume traffic routes, resulting in lost time for family and other activities for those who use them, and deaths and serious injuries on the transport network.<sup>526</sup> ~~road fatalities on rural highways.~~

Urban growth has the potential, through good development planning and provision of appropriate infrastructure, to improve well-being by providing an increased range of housing types in more locations, resulting in greater range of prices. Well planned subdivisions provide opportunities to increase public access to natural environments, including to the coast (e.g. via esplanades, *lakes, rivers* and their margins), to protect areas of cultural or historic significance and to provide means or other measures for their protection, such as through restrictive covenants. Poorly managed growth can compromise both access to and protection of natural and cultural environments, and as subdivision and development is effectively permanent and irreversible, it is important that it is done well with an eye to the longer term.

## SRMR-15 – Freshwater demand exceeds capacity in some places

### Statement

In *water-short* catchments, *freshwater* availability may not be able to meet competing demands from the health and well-being needs of the *environment*, the health and well-being needs of people, and the ability of people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural well-being. Many of these catchments are also experiencing urban growth, changes in rural *land* uses, and increased demand for hydro-electric generation. Individually and cumulatively these can alter demand including further increases in demand on *freshwater* supply. Some catchments are complex, making it challenging to identify or mitigate these *effects*.

### Context

*Freshwater*, including *rivers* and streams, *lakes*, *groundwater* systems, and *wetlands*, is a finite resource, critical to the environment, society and the economy. In Otago, access to, allocation, and *use* of *freshwater* reflects current demands and historical development associated with “deemed permits” (water permits under the RMA 1991) and a permissive water resource management regime. The deemed permits originated from mining licences issued under historic mining legislation and which enable water to continue to be used for a range of uses until October 2021.

Population growth and land-use intensification in urban and rural environments can create increased demand for *freshwater* for human consumption, irrigation, renewable electricity generation<sup>527</sup> and other ~~economic~~<sup>528</sup> uses. *Freshwater* resources in some places are reaching, or are beyond, their sustainable abstraction limits. However, there continues to be debate in the community about how historical *freshwater* allocations can be adjusted to prioritise protection of the health and well-being of *water bodies*, meet the health needs of people and provide for ~~achieve a balance of~~<sup>529</sup> economic, ~~environmental~~, social and cultural well-being needs.<sup>530</sup>

On 3 September 2020, new National Environmental Standards for Freshwater (NESF) and a new National

<sup>526</sup> 00139.017 DCC

<sup>527</sup> FPI016.009 Meridian

<sup>528</sup> FPI047.009 Horticulture NZ

<sup>529</sup> FPI027.010 Contact

<sup>530</sup> FPI027.010 Contact

Policy Statement for Freshwater Management (NPSFM)<sup>531</sup> came into force. They have a goal of making immediate improvements so that improving<sup>532</sup> freshwater quality is materially improving<sup>533</sup> within five years, reversing past degradation damage<sup>534</sup> and bringing New Zealand's freshwater resources, waterways and ecosystems to a healthy state within a generation. The NPS-FM also clarified the need to provide first for the health and well-being of *water bodies* and *freshwater* ecosystems; then health and needs of people (such as *drinking water*); and finally the ability of people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural well-being, now and in the future.

## Impact snapshot

### Environmental

*Freshwater* abstraction can reduce *water* level or flow and connections between different *water bodies*. This can negatively impact ecosystems by affecting<sup>535</sup> *freshwater* habitat size and the shape and condition of the *water body*, including *bed*, banks, margin, riparian vegetation, connections to *groundwater*, *water* chemistry (for example by increasing concentrations of pollutants), and interaction between species and their habitat. How much an ecosystem is affected by taking *freshwater* is determined by departure from natural flow regimes, taking into account magnitude, frequency, timing, duration and rate of change, and ecosystem capacity to recover.

### Economic

*Freshwater* in the Otago region is a factor of production that directly contributes to human needs (urban<sup>536</sup> water supply), primary production, agriculture (including irrigation),<sup>537</sup> industry and<sup>538</sup> hydro-electric power supply, and mineral extraction<sup>539</sup>. *Freshwater* also indirectly contributes to the tourism industry through maintenance of *freshwater* assets for aesthetic and commercial recreational purposes. Lack of *freshwater* can negatively impact economic output of those industries that rely on *water* in the production process. To varying degrees these impacts can be mitigated through *water* efficiency measures and innovation. At the same time other industries, such as tourism that rely on the aesthetic characteristic of *rivers* and *lakes*, do not have such opportunities available to them and instead rely on management regimes that sustain flows and *water* levels suitable for their activities.

### Social

Ensuring appropriate *freshwater* supply for human use is essential, including is available<sup>540</sup> as part of planned urban growth and to support rural communities<sup>541</sup> is essential<sup>542</sup>. It is possible this may require consideration of additional *freshwater* storage in the future. For the wider community, water is a source of kai and for food harvesting and food production.<sup>543</sup> The region's freshwater assets also support a range of recreation uses, for example camping, fishing, water sports, and swimming. These values are strongly linked to environmental, health, landscape and aesthetic<sup>544</sup> values and as such, reduced

---

<sup>531</sup> <https://www.mfe.govt.nz/fresh-water/freshwater-acts-and-regulations/national-policy-statement-freshwater-management> (accessed 26 May 2021)

<sup>532</sup> FPI025.010 Beef + Lamb and DINZ, FPI026.006 Federated Farmers

<sup>533</sup> FPI025.010 Beef + Lamb and DINZ, FPI026.006 Federated Farmers

<sup>534</sup> FPI027.010 Contact, FPI026.006 Federated Farmers

<sup>535</sup> Clapcott, 2018, Our Freshwater 2020

<sup>536</sup> Consequential amendment to FPI026.008 Federated Farmers, FPI023.003 Moutere Station

<sup>537</sup> FPI041.001 McArthur Ridge Vineyard

<sup>538</sup> FPI019.001 Fonterra, FPI020.008 Silver Fern Farms

<sup>539</sup> Consequential amendment to FPI041.001 McArthur Ridge Vineyard

<sup>540</sup> FPI038.020 NZSki, FPI039.022 Realnz

<sup>541</sup> FPI026.008 Federated Farmers, FPI023.003 Moutere Station

<sup>542</sup> FPI038.020 NZSki, FPI039.022 Realnz

<sup>543</sup> FPI047.009 Horticulture NZ

<sup>544</sup> FPI037.007 Fish and Game

environmental flows have a corresponding negative impact on social and cultural values, including people's wellbeing.<sup>545</sup>

## SRMR–I6 – Declining *water* quality has adverse *effects* on the *environment*, our communities, and the economy

### Statement

While the pristine areas of Otago generally maintain very<sup>546</sup> good *water* quality, some areas of Otago demonstrate poorer quality and declining trends in *water* quality which can often<sup>547</sup> be attributed to *discharges* from *land use* intensification (both rural and urban) and *land* management practices. Erosion, run-off and soil loss can lead to sediment and nutrients being deposited into *freshwater* bodies resulting in declining *water* quality.

### Context

The health of *water* is vital for the health of the *environment*, people and the economy. It is at the heart of culture and identity. Nationally, and in parts of Otago, *freshwater* is facing significant pressure. Population growth and land-use intensification in urban and rural environments has impacted the quality of *water*, increasing contamination from nutrients and sediment.

*Water* quality affects a wide range of environmental health factors, human health and<sup>548</sup> survival needs, and cultural, social, recreational, and economic uses. Some of the biggest impacts on *water* quality in Otago are considered to come from agriculture and urbanisation, through diffuse *discharges* and point source *discharges*.

On 3 September 2020, new National Environmental Standards (NESF) and a new National Policy Statement (NPSFM)<sup>549</sup> came into force to make immediate improvements to improve<sup>550</sup> *water* quality within five years; and reverse past degradation damage<sup>551</sup> and bring New Zealand's *freshwater* resources, waterways and ecosystems to a healthy state within a generation.

### Impact snapshot

#### Environmental

Despite the region's *lakes* and *rivers* being highly valued by Otago communities, reports indicate that in many areas<sup>552</sup> there are reasons for concern about *water* quality and its trends with consequent potential impact on ecosystems and people.

*Water* quality across Otago is variable. *River water* quality is best at *river* and stream reaches located at high or mountainous elevations under predominantly native vegetation cover, and mostly good in the upper areas of large river catchment and outlets from large *lakes*. *Water* quality is generally poorer in smaller low-elevation streams and coastal shallow lakes where they receive water from upstream pastoral areas or urban catchments. For example, catchments such as the Waiareka Creek, Kaikorai

<sup>545</sup> FPI037.007 Fish and Game, FPI038.020 NZSki, FPI039.022 Realnz

<sup>546</sup> FPI038.021 NZSki, FPI039.023 Realnz

<sup>547</sup> FPI026.011 Federated Farmers

<sup>548</sup> FPI047.010 Horticulture NZ, FPI043.023 OWRUG

<sup>549</sup> <https://www.mfe.govt.nz/fresh-water/freshwater-acts-and-regulations/national-policystatement-freshwater-management> (accessed 26 May 2021)

<sup>550</sup> FPI026.012 Federated Farmers, FPI025.011 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

<sup>551</sup> FPI026.012 Federated Farmers

<sup>552</sup> FPI043.023 OWRUG



Stream, and sub-catchments within<sup>553</sup> the lower Clutha rohe catchment<sup>554</sup>, have some of the poorest worst<sup>555</sup> *water* quality in the region; Otago's central lakes are impacted by increased population, urban development and tourism demand; other areas, such as urban streams in Dunedin, intensified catchments in North Otago and some tributaries, also have poor *water* quality.<sup>556</sup> Between 2006 and 2017, trends in a number of *water* quality parameters were worsening.<sup>557</sup>

For *E. coli*, for example, 30% of sites had a probable or significant worsening trend compared to 7% of sites that had either stable or improving trends. In urban streams in Dunedin, intensified catchments in North Otago and some tributaries of the Poumāhaka Pomahaka<sup>558</sup>, *E. coli* was the worst performing variable<sup>559</sup>. In many cases, the specific source of contamination is unknown.

There are many different types and sizes of *lakes* in Otago. ORC monitors *water* quality in *lakes*, of which eight have generally shown good *water* quality. There have been concerns within the community about the quality of *water* in Lakes Wānaka, Whakatipu Waimāori/Lake Wakatipu<sup>560</sup> and Lake<sup>561</sup> Hayes.

*Groundwater* quality also varies across the region, with some areas having elevated *E. coli* and nitrate concentrations above the NZ Drinking Water Standards. The main areas with elevated nitrate concentrations are North Otago and the Lower Clutha. Some bores across the region have exceeded the drinking water standards for *E. coli*; highlighting localized problems, likely due to inadequate bore head security. In addition to human sources of poorer groundwater quality, low groundwater quality from natural or geologic sources may also affect the potability of bore water throughout Otago (e.g. naturally occurring arsenic or boron concentrations found in bores associated with particularly geologies).

Stock entering *water bodies* can lead to pugging and destruction of riparian soils and *beds* that play an important role in filtering *contaminants*, as well as excreting directly in waterways. The growing practice of wintering cattle in Otago can exacerbate leaching *effects*, which may not connect to surface *water* until spring, creating spikes in nutrient loads.<sup>562</sup>

Sediment is a key issue for *freshwater* quality throughout Otago, including coastal estuaries where it can significantly impact the life supporting capacity of waterways. Urban development is a key generator of sediment input to *lakes* and *rivers* in Central Otago, from *building* platforms and from *stormwater* contamination. Activities such as agricultural land use intensification<sup>563</sup>, mining, and forestry also contribute.

Agricultural land use<sup>564</sup> intensification also contributes to nutrients (nitrogen and phosphorus) leaching into underlying *groundwater* or running off into surface *water bodies*, and can also increase the risk of *E. coli* contamination from animal waste.

Urban environmental *contaminants* include hydrocarbons, and metals from *roads* and *structures*. They often wash into urban *stormwater* systems and pass unfiltered into *water bodies*, or the *coastal marine area*. *Stormwater effects*, particularly in urban areas, are poorly understood. *Wastewater* and *stormwater* systems may not be adequate in some places due to aging *infrastructure*, rapid growth pressure, or insufficient investment in replacement or upgrades. Overflows of *wastewater* (*sewage* and waste products) create significant *risks* for *water* quality. These can enter the *environment* either directly

---

<sup>553</sup> FPI026.013 Federated Farmers

<sup>554</sup> FPI026.013 Federated Farmers

<sup>555</sup> FPI026.013 Federated Farmers

<sup>556</sup> Rachel Ozanne and Adam Uyendaal (2017) *State of the Environment Surface Water Quality in Otago 2006 to 2017*: Otago Regional Council p ii

<sup>557</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>558</sup> FPI030.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>559</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>560</sup> FPI030.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>561</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI030.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>562</sup> Science Staff Survey, June 2020.

<sup>563</sup> FPI019.002 Fonterra, FPI043.023 OWRUG

<sup>564</sup> FPI043.023 OWRUG

or through *stormwater* systems, particularly in flood events.

### Economic

*Water* pollution (from nutrients, chemicals, pathogens, ~~and~~ sediment and other contaminants)<sup>565</sup> can have far-reaching *effects* potentially impacting tourism, property values, commercial fishing, recreational businesses, and many other sectors that depend on clean *water*.<sup>566</sup>

These impacts can be direct (varying the quality of primary production outputs such as fish); increasing costs of production through mitigation or remediation costs (*drinking water* treatment cost, riparian restoration); loss of enjoyment and benefit from tourism uses, and indirect such as cost to human health and associated medical costs, or reduction in brand value (e.g. Brand New Zealand).

### Social

For the wider community, *water* is a source of kai ~~and~~ for harvesting and food production. *Water* is also a source<sup>567</sup> of recreation, including swimming, fishing and *water* sports. There are multiple dimensions to the way *water* quality impacts on peoples' interaction with *water bodies*, including environmental, health, landscape, and aesthetic factors.<sup>568</sup> Otago's *rivers, lakes, estuaries* and bays are important destinations for recreational use including swimming, fishing and *water* sports. Eighty-two percent of Otago's *rivers* and *lakes* are swimmable.<sup>569</sup> Where *water* quality cannot support these activities, the lifestyle of those living in Otago is impacted.

Degraded *water* quality reduces the mauri of the *water* and the habitats and species it supports, therefore also negatively affecting mahika kai and taoka species and places. This constitutes a loss of Kāi Tahu culture, affecting the intergenerational transfer of knowledge handed down from tūpuna over hundreds of years; and it culminates in a diminishing of loss of rakatirataka and<sup>570</sup> mana.

---

<sup>565</sup> FPI026.014 Federated Farmers

<sup>566</sup> <https://www.epa.gov/nutrientpollution/effects-economy> (accessed 26 May 2021)

<sup>567</sup> FPI043.023 OWRUG

<sup>568</sup> FPI037.008 Fish and Game

<sup>569</sup> This estimate applies to larger rivers and lakes, defined as "rivers that are fourth order in the River Environment Classification system and lakes with a perimeter of 1.5km or more" – ORC Policy Committee Report – 29 Nov 2018 - PPRM1843

<sup>570</sup> FPI030.014 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

## SRMR–17 – Rich and varied *biodiversity* has been lost or degraded due to human activities and the presence of pests and predators

### Statement

Fragmentation, loss and isolation of populations and communities of indigenous species has been ongoing across New Zealand, and Otago is no exception. *Biodiversity* mapping indicates Otago is one of the most modified regions in New Zealand<sup>571</sup>. This can be attributed to habitat loss, land use changes, vegetation clearance and the presence of pests and predators. Further, many of these *effects* are a result of the cumulative changes of past and current development. These cumulative *effects* have often not been identified, managed or measured. Leadership and coordination of the various initiatives to address *biodiversity* loss has also been lacking.

### Context

Otago is notable for the diversity of its landscapes, ecosystems, and climatic conditions. With that comes a diverse range of important *biodiversity* values which are at *risk*. These include rare ecosystems such as inland saline habitats, nationally rare *lake* and *river* systems, endemic and threatened lizard and fish species and important and diverse marine and coastal habitats.

Ecosystems are an interacting system of living and non-living parts such as sunlight, air, *water*, *minerals* and nutrients. *Biological diversity* (hereafter called *biodiversity*) describes the variety of all living things, including the range of species living in our *environments*, their genetics, and the ecosystems where they live. New Zealand's high level of indigenous *biodiversity* makes a unique contribution to the world's *biodiversity*. Otago is a good example of the enormous diversity in New Zealand's natural environment from toroa (albatross) and hoiho (yellow-eyed penguins) on the Otago Peninsula to the endangered species (for example, skinks) of Central Otago, the kea of the Southern Alps, galaxias species as well as the internationally significant braided *rivers* and their ecosystems.

The health of New Zealand's *biodiversity* has declined significantly since the arrival of humans. Environment Aotearoa 2019<sup>572</sup> found that our indigenous *biodiversity* is under significant pressure from introduced species, pollution, physical changes to our *environment* and harvesting of wild species.

Almost 4,000 native species are currently threatened with, or at *risk* of, extinction. The information available indicates Otago's *biodiversity* faces the same challenges.

### Impact snapshot

#### Environmental

Threats to *biodiversity* in Otago include invasive species (weeds and predators), vegetation clearing, land fragmentation and grassland "improvement", poor *water* quality (nutrients and sediments), dredging and overfishing.

There are 61 ~~62~~<sup>573</sup> ecosystems in the Otago region.<sup>574</sup> Whilst the average ecosystem extent compared to pre- European settlement is 62%, over 17 communities have been reduced to less than 40% extent. Forest communities have declined substantially, for example kahikatea forests have been reduced to

---

<sup>571</sup> Wildlands (2020). Unpublished Consultancy Report to Otago Regional Council R5015a. Mapping of potential natural ecosystems and current ecosystems in Otago region. Added through 00239.026 Federated Farmers

<sup>572</sup> <https://environment.govt.nz/assets/Publications/Files/environment-aotearoa-2019.pdf> (accessed 26 May 2021)

<sup>573</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>574</sup> Wildlands (2020). Unpublished Consultancy Report to Otago Regional Council R5015a. Mapping of potential natural ecosystems and current ecosystems in Otago region.

3.9% of pre-European extent. Matai, totara, broadleaved forest (6.5%) and Kirk's scurvy grass herbfield/loamfield (7.1%) have also been significantly reduced. ~~There are six ecosystems with less than 10 hectares remaining.~~<sup>575</sup>

Impacts of human activities are evident both in terms of species and ecosystems. Some 44% of Otago's bird species are threatened or at *risk*; 88% of lizard species; and 72% of indigenous fish species. Inland Otago has degraded native fish communities, due to anthropogenic alteration of waterways (such as damming, abstraction, bed manipulation, draining wetlands), the discharge of contaminants<sup>576</sup> ~~the presence of the Clutha dams and their effects on eel populations~~ and trout predation on native galaxiids. This is illustrated by the low scores for Otago's rivers in the *freshwater* fish index of biotic integrity.

The extent of impacts on marine species and environments is not well understood. Sedimentation and nutrients entrapped in land run-off<sup>577</sup> is known to have contributed to the loss of kelp forests.<sup>578</sup> In addition to sedimentation, other human impacts on kelp forests include rising sea surface temperatures associated with climate change, the introduction of invasive species and fishing<sup>579</sup> and trophic cascades from fishing pressure; together with downward trends in fish and crayfish catches.<sup>580</sup> There has been a 70% decline in the abundance of hoiho (yellow-eyed penguin) on the Otago coast since 2008<sup>581</sup> and ~~downward trends in ngohi (fish) and koura (crayfish) catches.~~<sup>582</sup> The effects of *climate change* will add significantly to *risks* of continuing *biodiversity* decline.

## Economic

*Biodiversity* and ecosystem services underpin primary production<sup>583</sup> ~~agriculture~~ (ecosystem services such as *water*, soil *biodiversity*, pest protection, pollination) and tourism (the "clean green" image of "pure New Zealand" is related to a public perception of Otago's healthy *environment* and *biodiversity*).

Short-term impacts of loss of productivity or increased costs of pest management occur and longer-term impacts of net loss of natural capital in the region over time are also of concern. The economic costs of lost productivity due to pests, erosion and damage to land, are likely to be significant and there is potential for loss of *biodiversity* to adversely impact on the economy.

## Social

*Biodiversity* is a significant contributor to the community's recreational experiences and intrinsic values. *Biodiversity* loss will adversely impact those values and experiences. Some introduced species such as trout, deer and pigs have social and recreation values but ~~may~~<sup>584</sup> also have impacts on native ecosystems and species.

---

<sup>575</sup> 00231.027 Fish & Game

<sup>576</sup> 00231.027 Fish & Game

<sup>577</sup> 00303.001 Fisheries New Zealand

<sup>578</sup> Schiel et al. 2006, Sediment on rocky intertidal reefs: Effects on early post-settlement stages of habitat-forming seaweeds, *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 331(2):158-172 (reference provided by Department of Conservation)

<sup>579</sup> 00303.001 Fisheries New Zealand

<sup>580</sup> 00125.023 Otago Rock Lobster

<sup>581</sup> Department of Conservation, 2008, Unpublished data.

<sup>582</sup> 00125.023 Otago Rock Lobster

<sup>583</sup> 00239.026 Federated Farmers

<sup>584</sup> 00230.026 Forest and Bird

## SRMR–I8 – Otago’s coast is a rich natural, cultural and economic resource that is under threat from a range of terrestrial and marine activities

### Statement

Otago’s coast provides habitat for rare species (including toroa and hoiho), comprises some of the region’s outstanding natural<sup>585</sup> landscapes, is a rich food source, provides many recreation opportunities, is the location for some industries, and has potential for further economic use (aquaculture). Threats to it are not always well understood and not always well managed. From the sedimentation *effects* of inland development to waste disposal, human activity puts stress on the marine and coastal environment. Some of those activities, like port activities and tourism, are also vital to the region’s economic well-being.

### Context

Otago’s coastal environment includes land adjoining the coast where coastal characteristics apply (as outlined in NZCPS Policy 1), and the coastal marine area<sup>586</sup> ~~is generally considered to extend from the land that forms the first significant ridgeline out to the twelve nautical mile seaward limit.~~ The coastal environment is a finite resource which is sensitive to change. Recent rapid expansion of some types of coastal development is a significant issue for the sustainable management of the coastal environment of Otago.

Activities occurring within or affecting the coastal environment include urban development, recreational activities, transport *infrastructure*, energy generation and transmission, land and marine based (e.g. aquaculture) food production industries and other rural industry activities, carbon forestry and<sup>587</sup> *plantation forestry*, fishing, tourism, and *mineral* extraction. Such activities are<sup>588</sup> ~~can be~~ important contributors to the ~~existing and future~~<sup>589</sup> health and well-being of communities, when they are located and managed appropriately. A number of these activities provide a significant contribution to the regional economy.

Dunedin is a major coastal city with increasing urban development. It also hosts *infrastructure* of national significance such as Port Otago and associated *road* transport networks servicing the Otago region and beyond which contribute to and facilitate regional economic and social development.

The community values the coast for its landscapes, natural character, recreational uses and associated habitat for biodiversity. Recreational activities such as boating, fishing, swimming and general beach access are interconnected with coastal values. Conserving coastal biodiversity and marine reserves are associated with coastal values.<sup>590</sup> A key challenge is the protection of the coast’s natural and cultural assets while enabling economic and social development opportunities to be realised.

### Impact snapshot

Impacts of hazards, climate change, pests, fresh<sup>591</sup> water, and biodiversity loss, which have been discussed above, all impact the coast. Urban development and population pressure can amplify these effects.

### Environmental

---

<sup>585</sup> 00411.116 Wayfare

<sup>586</sup> 00137.035 DOC

<sup>587</sup> 00239.027 Federated Farmers

<sup>588</sup> 00411.117 Wayfare

<sup>589</sup> 00411.117 Wayfare

<sup>590</sup> ORC Committee Report, *RPS Consultation Summary*, ORC Agenda 27 May 2020

<sup>591</sup> 00223.047 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

These impacts can affect natural processes. For example, poor water quality can result in degradation of estuarine and ocean chemistry with adverse impacts on ecosystems, including coastal *wetlands* and marshes, benthic muds, subtidal and inter-tidal area muds/sands, reefs, and marine vegetation areas (e.g. sea grasses, kelp). Ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity, and their flora and fauna (from zooplankton to whales) can be impacted by urban and industrial development, pests, and climate change leading to biodiversity loss.

Natural features, landscapes, seascapes, and *surf breaks* of national significance can be affected by human activity, climate change, and natural hazards. Susceptibility Vulnerability<sup>592</sup> to these impacts is determined by susceptibility, spatial scale, frequency, functional impact/consequence, recovery capacity/time, and likelihood of the impact's occurrence. Around Dunedin, for example, impacts include nutrients and contaminants from Dunedin stormwater which impact on coastal waters and estuaries; declining hoiho (yellow-eyed penguins) numbers due to introduced predators and domestic pets; whilst recovering seal and sealion numbers can create conflict with recreational *uses* on the coast; and beach erosion at ~~St. Clair in Dunedin~~<sup>593</sup> can impact social values and beach recreation *use*.

### Economic

Deterioration of coastal assets and values causes loss of production and income, increases *infrastructure* costs and costs of production, and loss of property values. There are also costs associated with mitigation, for example in the case of coastal erosion. Other economic impacts include recreation and tourism industries being adversely impacted by degraded coastal environments; marine industry production suffering because of poor *water* quality; dredging of sedimentation; and costs of mitigating adverse impacts, e.g. combatting invasive pests.

### Social

Impacts on the coastal environment and its associated unique values include those on its landscapes and landforms, those on it as a place to live and work and for recreation activities, those on access, and those which give rise to coastal deterioration and which compromise general enjoyment and amenity for communities.

## SRMR–I9 – Otago lakes are subject to pressures from tourism and population growth

### Statement

The beauty, recreational opportunities and regional climate of Lakes Wānaka ~~Wanaka~~<sup>594</sup>, Whakatipu Waimāori/Lake Wakatipu, Lake<sup>595</sup> Hāwea and Te Wairere/Lake<sup>596</sup> Dunstan and their environs attract visitors and residents from around the region, the country and the world. This influx supports human health and well-being and<sup>597</sup> brings economic opportunity, but the activities and services created to take advantage of it can degrade the *environment* and undermine the experience that underpins their attractiveness.

<sup>592</sup> 00230.020 Forest and Bird

<sup>593</sup> 00120.022 Yellow – eyed Penguin Trust

<sup>594</sup> FPI027.038 Contact, FPI042.142 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, FPI042.132 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>595</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI030.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>596</sup> FPI030.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>597</sup> FPI037.009 Fish and Game

## Context

Healthy *lakes* are one of Otago's most valued natural resources and for the most part *water* quality is good. The values assigned to *lakes* include the natural features and landscapes, the quality and quantity of *water* accessible to the Otago communities, the accessibility of these resources for recreation, the health of native flora and fauna associated with Otago's *rivers* and *lakes*, and renewable electricity generation energy production.<sup>598</sup>

Urban growth is adversely affecting the natural features and landscapes around the lakes. The amount of growth is demonstrated in the Queenstown Lakes District, including Queenstown and Wānaka ~~Wanaka~~<sup>599</sup>, where the population tripled in the last 20 years from 16,750 in 1999 to 47,400 in 2020.<sup>600</sup> Continued growth is projected over the 30 years from 2020 to 2050 (by 63%).<sup>601</sup>

This desire of ~~New Zealanders and international visitors~~<sup>602</sup> to enjoy the outstanding natural environments of the Otago *lakes* has placed significant pressures on the *environment*, transport, energy and other *infrastructure*, health services and social structures. At the same time the economy of the Otago lakes area is heavily dependent on tourism. For example in 2020, tourism employment accounted for an estimated 56% (or 17,758) of the jobs in the Queenstown-Lakes district; tourism GDP accounted for 43.7% (or NZ \$1.7 billion) of the district's GDP and international tourism contributed 64% (or NZ \$1.89 billion).<sup>603</sup> The Otago-Lakes area also supplies significant renewable electricity energy<sup>604</sup> for use in Otago and beyond.

## Impact snapshot

### Environmental

Population pressures arising from urban development, and tourism population pressures are impacting on the *environment*. Lake Wānaka, ~~Wanaka~~, Lake Hāwea, and Whakatipu Waimāori/ Lake Wakatipu<sup>605</sup>, as well as the Kawarau River and upper reaches of the Clutha Mata-au and Taiari ~~Taiari~~<sup>606</sup> Rivers all have good *water* quality which equates to the "A" band (being top/best level) for the *National Objectives Framework*.<sup>607</sup>

However, *water* quality is being adversely impacted by increased population, urban development and tourism demand which is straining existing waste management infrastructure. In addition, localised degradation of some areas is occurring due to overuse and unregulated use (e.g. freedom camping). The amenity of these areas is being compromised in some places by over-crowding.

Recreation *use* impacts on the *environment* can be a *risk*, for example the distribution of pest species can be accelerated as has occurred for lake snow and *Lagarosiphon* weeds being spread by recreation boating movements. Natural features and landscape values can be<sup>608</sup> ~~are also~~ adversely impacted by tourism and urban growth, and electricity generation. energy production.<sup>609</sup>

<sup>598</sup> FPI027.012 Contact

<sup>599</sup> FPI027.038 Contact, FPI042.142 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, FPI042.132 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>600</sup> Infometrics online database (February 2021)

<sup>601</sup> Queenstown-Lakes District Council demand projections by Utility

<sup>602</sup> FPI046.002 QLDC

<sup>603</sup> Infometrics online database; (February 2021)

<sup>604</sup> FPI027.012 Contact

<sup>605</sup> FPI030.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>606</sup> FPI030.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>607</sup> Land, Air, Water, Aotearoa: <https://www.lawa.org.nz/explore-data/otago-region/> (accessed 26 May 2021).

<sup>608</sup> 00318.004 Contact

<sup>609</sup> FPI027.012 Contact

## Economic

The economic benefits of urban development, tourism, primary production, agriculture,<sup>610</sup> energy production renewable electricity generation<sup>611</sup> and water supply can be positive for the Otago-Lakes' communities and visitors. It also impacts on the region's natural assets with a growing cost to the region that puts at *risk* the *environment* highly prized by residents and visitors. There are also impacts between industry sectors.

For example, the clean green image of New Zealand, of which the Otago Lakes area is symbolic, is at *risk* of being compromised if the quality of lakes becomes degraded or visitor numbers exceed the servicing capacity of the district. ~~because of over-crowding in peak tourism seasons.~~<sup>612</sup> This has the potential to adversely affect the existing regional economy and future economic development; and the tourism industry's social licence to operate. At the same time tourism can negatively impact on how primary production agriculture<sup>613</sup> can operate, potentially limiting its contribution to the regional economy.

Urban development brings economic development and improved opportunities and standards of living to the Otago lakes area but can adversely impact on both the *environment* and how primary production agriculture<sup>614</sup> can operate.

## Social

Over-crowding impacts can<sup>615</sup> adversely affect urban amenity and recreation experiences of both tourists and residents, particularly outdoor recreation such as fishing and water sports, and urban amenity.<sup>616</sup> Infrastructure capacity limits can, for example, result in an increased number of wastewater overflows to the environment when demand on the network exceeds capacity. These can have significant adverse impacts on human health as well as recreational amenity.

## **SRMR-I10A – The social, cultural and economic well-being of Otago's communities depends on the use and development of natural and physical resources, but that use and development can compromise or conflict with the achievement of environmental outcomes**

### Statement

The ability to access and use natural and physical resources, including for infrastructure, primary production, mineral and aggregate extraction, tourism and industrial activities, is essential for the social, cultural and economic well-being of the region. Access to, and the ability to use, natural and physical resources can be impacted by regulatory changes, incompatible land uses, natural hazards and climate change. Equally, the use and development of the region's natural and physical resources can have adverse effects on the environment which need to be appropriately managed.

### Context

The well-being of Otago's communities relies on the ability to access and use the region's natural and physical resources. The quality of these resources and the ability to access them has a direct bearing on the well-being of people and communities in the region.

---

<sup>610</sup> FPI043.026 OWRUG

<sup>611</sup> FPI027.012 Contact

<sup>612</sup> FPI 038.023 NZSki, FPI039.025 Realnz

<sup>613</sup> FPI043.026 OWRUG

<sup>614</sup> FPI043.026 OWRUG

<sup>615</sup> 00411.123 Wayfare

<sup>616</sup> FPI 038.023 NZSki, FPI039.025 Realnz, 00206.090 Trojan



Failing to plan and provide for activities that contribute to the regional economy can have an adverse socioeconomic consequences. Conversely, failure of activities to sustainably manage their impact on natural and physical resources can also lead to poor socioeconomic outcomes.

Appropriate access and use of natural and physical resource needs a planning framework that recognises and provides for the essential operational, locational and functional requirements of activities while managing the adverse effects of these activities. The ongoing effects of climate change (addressed elsewhere in the Issues section) will have an ongoing impact on the operation of activities.

## **Impact snapshot**

### **Environmental**

The use of natural and physical resources can have adverse effects on the environment, which need to be appropriately managed to avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects. Loss or degradation of resources can diminish their intrinsic values. Some of Otago's resources are nationally or regionally important for their natural values and economic potential and so warrant careful management.

However, it is recognised that the natural environment can benefit as activities change how they interact with, access and use natural resources. Activities that use natural and physical resources can achieve positive environmental outcomes, for example riparian planting, habitat restoration and enhancement, public access, and pest control activities. This can be as mitigation or compensation for the effects of activities or as contributions from economically sustainable activities in the region. Some activities, for example renewable electricity generation and other infrastructure, will have a significant role to play in addressing climate change.

### **Economic**

Activities that rely on natural and physical resources generate direct and indirect economic benefits; therefore, their ability to operate, or to improve their operational efficiency, affects the economy of the region.

The ability to access and use natural and physical resources may impact the ability of activities to optimise the use of investments and assets and realise their potential economic value.

Activities that rely on natural and physical resources also rely on clear regulatory settings to inform investment decision-making about the use and development of natural and physical resources.

### **Social**

The ability for activities to access and use natural and physical resources provides for the social and cultural well-being of people and communities including by supporting employment, livability, recreation, resilience, food security and investment into communities. Inappropriately located subdivision, use and development can increase the potential for harm to human health arising from incompatible activities locating in close proximity to each other.<sup>617</sup>

## **SRMR–I10 – Economic and domestic activities in Otago use natural resources but do not always properly account for the environmental stresses or the future impacts they cause**

---

<sup>617</sup> 00322.004 Fulton Hogan, 00314.009 Transpower, 00315.015 Aurora, 00310.003 The Telecommunication Companies, 00213.018 Fonterra, 00236.029, 00236.033 Horticulture NZ, 00231.022 Otago Fish and Game, 00235.058 OWRUG, 00411.097 Wayfare

## Statement

Sediment from poorly managed<sup>618</sup> development and primary production forestry<sup>619</sup> activities flows<sup>620</sup> into streams and builds up in the coastal environment, smothering kelp forests and affecting rich underwater habitats. *Water* abstraction and wastewater and stormwater discharges adversely affect the natural environment, cultural and amenity values, and recreation. Agriculture, fishing<sup>621</sup> and minerals extraction support employment and economic well-being but also change landscapes and habitats. Otago's port moves freight to and from Otago and Southland, but operates alongside sensitive environments, including the Aramoana saltmarsh. Tourism and recreation<sup>622</sup>, which relies on the environment, can also put pressure on natural environments.

## Context

The Otago regional economy GDP totals \$13.2 billion and supports a population of 236,200 residents (over half of which are in Dunedin). A significant part of the economy relies on the region's natural resources (air, vegetation, biodiversity, *water*, *land*, marine and *minerals*). This supports agriculture, forestry, fishing (6.9% of GDP), mining (4.5% of GDP), electricity, gas, *water* and waste services (4.4% of GDP), as well as conservation activities and hunting. Tourism (18.1% of GDP) also partially relies on the natural values of the region.<sup>623</sup>

However, economic activity needs to more effectively account for and manage its impacts on the region's natural resources.<sup>624</sup> Where business and social activity does not account for its impacts on natural resources in the long term, not only is the sustainability of the region's natural resources threatened, but equally the associated long term economic, social and cultural values are also threatened.

## Impact snapshot

### Environmental

Economic activities can lead to, for example, biodiversity loss, poor *water* quality, coastal and marine degradation, and loss of natural features and landscapes. These and other matters are considered in further detail elsewhere in this chapter.

Negative impacts on the *environment* can also compromise the ecosystems and the services economic activities depend on (ecosystem services), for example loss of *wetlands* which provide flood attenuation services, loss of biodiversity which provide pest control and pollination services, and loss of soil biodiversity. Economic activity also has the potential to compromise or destroy natural features and landscapes. Such impacts are both immediate and cumulative. Cumulative impacts that are not addressed have the potential to lead to tipping points beyond which systems can no longer properly function.

### Economic

The costs of production can rise because of poor quality natural resources, for example, through

---

<sup>618</sup> 00412.007, 00412.018 Ernslaw One, 00024.002 City Forests

<sup>619</sup> 00020.005 Rayonier

<sup>620</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>621</sup> 00126.001 Harbour Fish, 00124.001 Southern Inshore Fisheries

<sup>622</sup> 00231.022 Fish and Game

<sup>623</sup> Infometrics, August 2020.

<sup>624</sup> <https://www.orc.govt.nz/media/8882/community-consultation-summary-report-draft.pdf> (accessed 26 May 2021)

higher input costs (e.g. fertiliser, weed and pest control); and remediation requirements (e.g. riverbank restoration, erosion control). Some land management practices can compromise the ability of land to support primary production productive capacity of agricultural land,<sup>625</sup> for example, loss of soil through erosion or soil structure through compaction. Marine industries (e.g. fishing and aquaculture) can also be adversely affected.

Business environmental performance is becoming increasingly important in terms of providing access to investment. Poor business environmental performance can also lead to increased regulatory requirements and associated higher costs of doing business.

## Social

Damage to or loss of natural features and landscapes compromises *amenity values*. Failure of business to sustainably manage their impact on<sup>626</sup> natural resources can also have social impacts. ~~compromises the social licence of a business sector to operate. This adversely impacts social capital (trust) and can create community division.~~ In extreme cases it can lead to ~~calls for~~ reduced access to resources.<sup>627</sup>

## SRMR-I11 – Cumulative impacts and *resilience* – the environmental costs of our activities in Otago are adding up with tipping points potentially being reached

### Statement

How and where we currently live is likely to change significantly in coming years. To respond to all the issues identified in this RPS, it is essential to consider changes to how we travel, the industries our economy relies on, the use we currently make of the *natural and physical resources* of the region, and how we provide for personal and community well-being, all while protecting our natural environment.

### Context

The long term environmental, economic, and social well-being of the Otago region requires anticipating and minimising cumulative environmental impacts before they reach a tipping point, beyond which systems can no longer properly function. This requires *resilient* frameworks that take account of the dynamic relationship between the *environment*, economy and people while acknowledging that the future is always uncertain, and knowledge is imperfect. Should a tipping point be reached a *resilient* Otago society will have the ability to absorb, respond to, adapt to, and recover from disruptive events.<sup>628</sup>

### Impact snapshot

#### Environmental

While many ecosystems have a degree of *resilience*, increasing pressures on the *environment*, typically as a result of human activities (for example economic development), can have an adverse cumulative *effect*. *Climate change* also has the potential to seriously challenge ecosystem adaptive capacity. Much work is being undertaken to address this challenge, but it is still possible that permanent changes may occur (tipping point).

---

<sup>625</sup> 00236.031 Horticulture New Zealand

<sup>626</sup> 00206.093 Trojan, 00411.126 Wayfare

<sup>627</sup> 00206.093 Trojan, 00411.126 Wayfare

<sup>628</sup> <https://www.civildefence.govt.nz/cdem-sector/plans-and-strategies/national-disaster-resilience-strategy/national-disaster-resilience-strategy-summary-version/> (accessed 26 May 2021)

The first and best response is to ensure sustainable management of our natural resources and avoid immediate and long-term cumulative *effects* that degrade the *environment*. At the same time a *resilience* approach is needed that identifies thresholds ~~or and~~<sup>629</sup> sets limits on the use of natural resources to avoid permanent and potentially catastrophic changes occurring, as would occur if a tipping point is reached.

Indicators and tools for measuring *resilience* and tipping points remain in the early stages of understanding and development. Even though regulatory agencies and proponents for natural resource development and environmental rehabilitation projects have difficulties interpreting and verifying the potential for environmental recovery and *resilience* (particularly in relation to the regulatory context of impact assessment in order to provide consenting decisions for regulated activities)<sup>630</sup> that should not be taken as a reason to delay acting.

### **Social and economic**

The well-being of Otago's people and communities in the long term will be sustained by the enduring ecological health and *resilience* of the *environment* and by human activity providing for the *environment* in equal or greater measure than is taken from it (in other words, net impact determines net well-being). It will also be sustained through community *resilience* so that it can adapt and nimbly respond to future challenges.

---

<sup>629</sup> Needs a reference. Change comes from legal issues section but refers to SRMR-I11 section 42A report

<sup>630</sup> <https://par.nsf.gov/servlets/purl/10047476> (accessed 26 May 2021)

# RMIA – Resource management issues of significance to iwi authorities in the region

## Introduction

The MW – *Mana Whenua* chapter describes the integral relationship between Kāi Tahu and the natural world, including the relationship with particular resources, and the values that influence the Kāi Tahu approach to resource management. The issues and concerns described in this chapter should be read and understood in the context of the explanations in the MW – *Mana Whenua* chapter.

## RMIA–WAI – Wai Māori

### Context

*Water* plays a significant role in Kāi Tahu spiritual beliefs and cultural traditions. Kāi Tahu have an obligation through whakapapa to protect wai and all the life it supports. Whānau have observed the health of *water* degrade through time and consider it is crucial that this degradation is reversed.

### RMIA–WAI–I1 – The loss and degradation of *water* resources through drainage, abstraction, pollution, and damming has resulted in material and cultural deprivation for Kāi Tahu ki Otago

The drainage of *wetlands*, *water* abstraction, degraded *water* quality, barriers to fish passage and changes to flow regimes as a result of damming have had significant negative impacts on Kāi Tahu. These activities degrade the mauri of the *water* and the habitats and species it supports, therefore also degrading *mahika kai* and taoka species and places.

These changes to the *environment* have meant that Kāi Tahu have had to adapt and change their *use* of the *environment*. As traditional *mahika kai* places and species have declined, *mahika kai* must now be carried out in artificial habitats such as reservoirs, and whānau have had to switch to exotic species such as trout and salmon. The mātauraka associated with traditional *mahika kai* species and places cannot be passed on, and the intergenerational transfer of knowledge that has occurred for over 800 years is broken. Place names that carry tribal history are no longer reflective of their places – for example no one would now claim that the Waiareka is ‘sweet water’ to drink.

### RMIA–WAI–I2 – Current water management does not adequately address Kāi Tahu cultural values and interests

Kāi Tahu values and interests are not properly considered in current *land* and *water* resource management. The well-being of *mahika kai* ~~mahika kai~~<sup>631</sup> and taoka and protection of other cultural values is rarely given effect to in environmental policy or decision-making processes and these considerations are often compromised in favour of other values, including economic values. The mana of *mana whenua* and of the *water* is not recognised because *water* quality and quantity have been allowed to be degraded. Resource management in Otago has failed to meet its obligation to recognise Kāi Tahu values and provide for the relationship of Kāi Tahu with the *water bodies* within their rohe. The understanding of cultural values by many is still developing and, as a result, Kāi Tahu values and

<sup>631</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

interests are often not well represented in plans and decision-making.

### **RMIA–WAI–I3 – The *effects of land and water use activities on freshwater habitats have resulted in adverse effects on the diversity and abundance of mahika kai resources and harvesting activity***

*Mahika kai* ~~Mahika kai~~<sup>632</sup> is the gathering of foods and other resources, the places where they are gathered, and the practices used in doing so. *Mahika kai* ~~Mahika kai~~<sup>633</sup> is an intrinsic part of Kāi Tahu identity and economic well-being. Kāi Tahu fishing rights were explicitly protected by the Treaty of Waitangi. Not only was the right to engage in *mahika kai* ~~mahika kai~~<sup>634</sup> activity confirmed, so too was the expectation that such activity will continue to be successful as measured by reference to past practice. However, as described in evidence provided to the Waitangi Tribunal in the Ngāi Tahu claim, there has been a dramatic loss of *mahika kai* ~~mahika kai~~<sup>635</sup> resources and places of procurement since the Treaty was signed. This loss is greater than the loss of kai. It is a loss of Kāi Tahu culture, as it affects the intergenerational transfer of mātauraka handed down from tūpuna over hundreds of years. It represents a significant loss for mana whenua and diminishing of rakatirataka and<sup>636</sup> of mana. *Mahika kai* ~~mahika kai~~<sup>637</sup> continues to be degraded through the *effects of land and water use activities on freshwater habitats*. Activities such as the construction of barriers to fish passage, drainage, altered flow regimes, reduced *water* quality and removal of riparian vegetation all impact on access to and use of resources. Inadequate regulation of commercial fishing of tuna (eels) and inaka (whitebait) has also exacerbated the impacts of degradation and loss of habitat from land and water use activities on remaining populations of these species.<sup>638</sup>

### **RMIA–WAI–I4 – Effective participation of Kāi Tahu in *freshwater management is hampered by poor recognition of mātauraka***

The term ‘mātauraka Māori’ includes all branches of Māori knowledge, past, present, and still developing. It involves observing, experiencing, studying, and understanding the world from an indigenous cultural perspective. It is a tool for thinking, organising information, considering the ethics of knowledge, and informing us about our world and our place in it. Incorporation of mātauraka in resource management decision-making is important to ensure that cultural interests are appropriately recognised and provided for. Resource managers do not always appreciate the depth and value of mātauraka held by members of Kāi Tahu Whānui. Even where mātauraka is valued there may be difficulty in determining how best to apply the knowledge.

### **RMIA–WAI–I5 – Poor integration of *water management, across agencies and across a catchment, hinders effective and holistic freshwater management***

Kāi Tahu place emphasis on the holistic management of resources. Cultural values such as whakapapa and concepts such as ki uta ki tai recognise the interconnectedness of all things, and that *effects* on one part of the whole will be felt throughout the whole. Management of *water* in Otago is not holistic. Catchments are often managed by multiple councils, and the Waitaki (a most significant *river* to Kāi Tahu) is managed by two regional councils with policies and management approaches that include

<sup>632</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>633</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>634</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>635</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>636</sup> FPI030.014 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>637</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>638</sup> FPI030.014 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

some significant differences. Regional councils are responsible for managing *land use effects* on *land* and at sea up to 12 nautical miles offshore, but beyond that the Environmental Protection Authority manages *effects* through a separate piece of legislation. District councils, although not specifically responsible for managing *freshwater*, are responsible for managing activities that affect *freshwater*.

In Otago there are separate plans for *freshwater* and the coastal area, and they are not consistent with each other. These divisions in the management of the *environment* fail to recognise that all *water*, in *rivers*, underground, in the air and in the ocean is connected, and what occurs in the headwaters and on *land* will have an impact in the ocean. This lack of holistic *freshwater* management also makes it difficult to understand and address the cumulative *effects* of different activities and decisions on cultural values.

Specific concerns related to RMIA-WAI-I1 to RMIA-WAI-I5 are interrelated, and include:

- *Water* quality concerns:
  - Deterioration in *water* quality resulting from poor *land* management practices.
  - The cultural and *water* quality impacts of point and non-point source *discharge* of human waste and other *contaminants* to *water*. Whānau cannot gather kai from places where human waste (whether treated or not) has been *discharged*, or where herbicides and pesticides have been used. Reliance on dilution rates to mitigate the *effects* of *discharges* is culturally inappropriate.
  - The *water* quality impacts of *discharges* from mining activities.
- *Water* allocation concerns:
  - Kāi Tahu consider that many of the waterways in the region are over-allocated from a cultural perspective.
  - Abstractions of greater volumes of *water* than are required, lack of *water* harvesting and continuation of inefficient methods of *water* use.
  - The implications of increased *water* demand for domestic use which will put additional pressure on the already scarce *water* resource.
  - The *effects* of long durations for *water* take consents which lock in a pattern of resource use for a long time, limiting the ability of for Kāi Tahu to exercise their role as kaitiaki as an expression of mana and rakatirataka. kaitiakitaka responsibilities.<sup>639</sup>
  - The impact of cross mixing of *water* from different catchments on the distinctive mauri of the *water bodies*.
  - The lack of understanding of the interactions between *groundwater* and surface *water*.
- Concerns about channel modification and *river* works:
  - The *effects* of damming on disruption of natural flow patterns, loss of *freshwater* habitats and migration of indigenous fish species.
  - The *effects* on the mauri of the water body from diversion of watercourses upstream and downstream of mines.
  - Impacts of activities such as channel maintenance and channel cleaning on *water* quality and on disruption of species living in the channel and their habitat.
  - Impacts of channel reshaping, in particular straightening, on *river* flow and habitats, and the mauri of the *water body*.
  - The *effects* of *bed* disturbance, including suction dredging and gravel extraction, on stream morphology and habitats.
  - Impacts of willow removal on *water* quality, *water* temperature and mahika kai mahika kai<sup>640</sup> habitat.
  - Introduction of exotic weeds through poorly cleaned machinery, and the subsequent

---

<sup>639</sup> 00226.064 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>640</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

- impact on bank habitat and *water* ecosystems.
- The *effects* of changes in vegetation cover, including clearance of *indigenous vegetation* and exotic *afforestation*, on the *water* retention capacity of *land* and consequent flow patterns, which can negatively affect *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>641</sup> and taoka species through a reduction in their habitat.

## RMIA–MKB – *Mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>642</sup> and biodiversity

### Context

The cold climate in southern Te Waipounamu, and the consequent difficulty of growing crops, made it difficult for tūpuna to establish permanent settlements and as a result Kāi Tahu in this area traditionally had a hunter-gatherer lifestyle, and went where the *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>643</sup> was abundant and in season. This lifestyle was unique to southern Kāi Tahu and *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>644</sup> retains a central place in Kāi Tahu cultural identity. All indigenous species and habitats are treasured by Kāi Tahu as taoka in their own right, as well as for the *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>645</sup> values associated with some species.

### RMIA–MKB–I1 – The diversity and abundance of terrestrial and aquatic indigenous species has been reduced due to adverse *effects* of resource use and development

Resource *use* and development in Otago has led to degradation of taoka and *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>646</sup> places. This has occurred in a myriad of ways, contributing to a significant negative cumulative *effect* on many species and habitats. The decrease in diversity and abundance of indigenous species causes a negative impact on the mauri and health of the natural environment.

The Kāi Tahu perspective recognises that species within ecosystems are connected, and effects on one species will be felt throughout the rest of the system. Effects on *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>647</sup> and taoka species diversity and abundance affect the relationship of Kāi Tahu with these species. Whānau are unable to access traditional *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>648</sup> and taoka species and places because in many cases they no longer exist, or no longer provide resources that were once abundant there.

Specific concerns include:

- Degradation of *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>649</sup> due to the impacts of *contaminants* from both point and non-point source *discharges*, including human waste disposal to *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>650</sup> areas.
- The effects of soil contamination from poorly managed landfills, industrial sites and waste disposal sites.
- Continued urban spread encroaching on *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>651</sup> sites.

<sup>641</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>642</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>643</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>644</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>645</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>646</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>647</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>648</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>649</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>650</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>651</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago



- Genetic modification of indigenous flora and fauna, which represents deliberate alteration of whakapapa.
- The impact on *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>652</sup> and indigenous *biodiversity* from weed and pest invasion.
- Loss of indigenous *freshwater fish*<sup>653</sup> species, many of which are taoka and *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>654</sup>, through displacement and predation.
- Loss of indigenous flora and fauna remnants and lack of co-ordinated management of habitat corridors.
- Impacts on *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>655</sup> and aquatic ecosystems from a lack of effective catchment-wide riparian management.
- Loss of recruitment of indigenous flora in remnant bush areas due to continuous stock grazing.
- The impact of inappropriate forestry developments, conversion of tussock lands and other intensification of farming on indigenous flora and fauna values, including ecological disturbance and displacement of species.
- A persistent lack of recognition of Kāi Tahu perspectives, values and mātauraka in indigenous species and habitat management, planning, and decision-making.<sup>656</sup>
- The loss of cultural knowledge, mātauraka, and tikaka that has accompanied the loss of *mahika kai*, and indigenous *biodiversity*.<sup>657</sup>

### **RMIA–MKB–I2 – Regulatory and physical barriers have impeded the ability of Kāi Tahu to access *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>658</sup> and to undertake customary harvest**

The ability for Kāi Tahu to exercise customary rights to *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>659</sup> has been impeded by obstacles to accessing *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>660</sup> sites. Obstacles include lack of physical access and the sites no longer being safe to access due to the site becoming polluted, or a change in the flow velocity and/or depth.

### **RMIA–MKB–I3 – Impacts of *climate change* on both species/habitat viability and increasing pest (flora/fauna) encroachments**

*Climate change* is now affecting and will continue to affect habitat availability and suitability for species in Otago. In some cases, this will mean that species will be able to increase their distribution, which will encourage spread of pest/weed species. *Climate change* will also reduce habitat and distributions for some species and affect habitat quality. These *effects* may also accumulate; for example, a native species may have worse and less habitat and its pest/predator’s distribution and population may increase due to *climate change effects*. Where possible, environmental management should include planning for these *effects* should be planned for in environmental management. and having regard for their impacts on Kāi Tahu and *mana whenua* values.<sup>661</sup>

<sup>652</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago  
<sup>653</sup> 00137.037 DOC

<sup>654</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>655</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago  
<sup>656</sup> 00226.066 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>657</sup> 00226.066 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>658</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>659</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>660</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>661</sup> 00226.068 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

## RMIA–MKB–I4 – Shortage of protected and secure areas for biodiversity

Currently there are not enough protected and secure areas for biodiversity in Otago. To ensure the long-term survival of our region’s most *threatened species*, a series of protected areas must be established, ideally in a network connected by corridors so that each individual population is more *resilient* as well as the species’ overall population.

## RMIA–MKB–I5 – Inconsistent approaches to biodiversity protection amongst regulatory authorities

Biodiversity is managed by several entities who have different approaches and powers through their separate governing legislation. For example, regional and district councils have obligations under the Resource Management Act and the Department of Conservation has obligations under the Conservation Act 1987 and the Wildlife Act 1953.<sup>662</sup> Different pieces of legislation are not always consistent with each other. There can also be confusion about who is responsible for different aspects of biodiversity management as it is not managed by one entity.

## RMIA–MKB–I6 – Lack of information on species health and viability

In many instances there is a lack of information on species. This absence of information on matters such as life histories, current and previous distributions and habitat preferences makes it difficult to make decisions about how best to manage these species.

## RMIA–WTU – *Wāhi tūpuna*

### Context

*Wāhi tūpuna* (ancestral landscapes) across Otago are made up of interconnected sites and areas reflecting the history and traditions associated with the long settlement of Kāi Tahu in Otago. Areas of significance that form part of *wāhi tūpuna* include, but are not limited to:

- Wāhi tapu
- Kāika *nohoaka* (settlements)
- Wāhi kohātu and wāhi mahi kohātu (quarry sites)
- Wāhi ikoa (place names)
- Ara tawhito (traditional travel routes)
- Mauka (mountains), awa (rivers), roto (lakes), tai (coasts) and moana (seas)<sup>663</sup>

It is important that resource management recognises the wider cultural setting by considering effects of activities on the broader *wāhi tūpuna* rather than just on discrete sites.

## RMIA–WTU–I1 – The values of *wāhi tūpuna* are poorly recognised in resource management in Otago

Land, freshwater, and coastal<sup>664</sup> management regimes have failed to adequately provide for Kāi Tahu interests in *wāhi tūpuna*. Attention has been too narrowly focused on the cultural redress components

---

<sup>662</sup> 00411.132 Wayfare

<sup>663</sup> 00226.072 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>664</sup> 00223.050 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

of the NTCSA<sup>665</sup> Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 (statutory acknowledgements, place names, tōpuni areas and *nohoaka* sites), whereas *wāhi tūpuna* are considerably broader than the areas described in the legislation. The values of *wāhi tūpuna*<sup>666</sup> ~~these areas~~ can be adversely affected by inappropriate ~~land~~ use and development and by a range of activities that affect *land, freshwater and coastal environments* when those activities are poorly managed. Cumulative adverse *effects* on *wāhi tūpuna* values can result, impacting on the intergenerational relationship of Kāi Tahu with these areas.<sup>667</sup>

Specific *land management*<sup>668</sup> concerns include:

- Changes to the recognisable character of *wāhi tūpuna* resulting from intensified *land use*, spread of exotic wilding trees and other woody weeds, forestry, subdivision, development of *buildings and structures*.
- Impacts on the integrity of *wāhi tūpuna* from extension and maintenance of *infrastructure* such as transport, telecommunications and other utility networks.
- Modification of landforms by *earthworks*, particularly on ridgelines and upper slopes and near waterways.
- Impacts on *wāhi tapu* and archaeological sites from *earthworks*.
- Sedimentation of *water bodies* within *wāhi tūpuna* ~~*wāhi tūpuna*~~<sup>669</sup> from *earthworks*.
- Poor land management and inappropriate *land use* degrades the whenua itself.
- Failure to recognise Kāi Tahu connections to the land through use of traditional names for landscape features and sites.

*Freshwater, biodiversity, coastal management and air and atmosphere issues that affect Kāi Tahu relationship with wāhi tūpuna* are outlined in the RMIA-WAI, RMIA-MKB, RMIA-CE and RMIA-AA sections.<sup>670</sup>

## RMIA–WTA – Wāhi tapu and wāhi taoka

### Context

Ancestral Tribal<sup>671</sup> land was not just the source of economic well-being. For Māori it was also the burial ground of the placenta and of the bones of ancestors, the abode of tribal atua and a storybook through place names and traditions. This is reflected in *te reo* ~~*Te Reo*~~<sup>672</sup> Māori, as the word ‘whenua’ means both ‘placenta’ and ‘land’. Ancestral lands were therefore regarded with deep veneration. For Kāi Tahu, *wāhi tapu* and *wāhi taoka* refers to the places with elevated mana and tapu due to their close association with atua and tūpuna. For example: that hold the respect of the people in accordance with tikaka or history including:<sup>673</sup>

- Mauka (mountains)
- Urupā (burial places)
- Tuhituhi neherā (rock art)
- Umu (ovens)

---

<sup>665</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>666</sup> 00223.050 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>667</sup> 00223.050 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>668</sup> 00223.050 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>669</sup> 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>670</sup> 00223.050 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>671</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule, RMA

<sup>672</sup> 00226.073 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>673</sup> 00226.073 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

- *Nohoaka* (seasonal camp sites)

## RMIA–WTA–I1 – ~~Land use a~~ Activities<sup>674</sup> have resulted in disturbance and degradation of wāhi tapu and wāhi taoka sites and the cultural and spiritual values associated with these areas

Wāhi tapu and wāhi taoka sites are vulnerable to disturbance or destruction from the direct and indirect<sup>675</sup> effects of resource use and development. ~~This is through~~ Direct effects can include those resulting from<sup>676</sup> activities that require earthworks in proximity, as well as from a<sup>677</sup> Natural or human-induced changes to biophysical processes can threaten these sites, such as for example,<sup>678</sup> coastal erosion. Wāhi tapu and wāhi taoka values can also be adversely affected by the encroachment of culturally offensive activities e.g. it is inappropriate to have a *wastewater* treatment plant at or near a wāhi tapu or wāhi taoka. *Nohoaka*, as sites where *mahika kai* is gathered or was gathered in the past, are particularly at risk from the combination of direct and indirect effects, and from cumulative adverse effects. *Nohoaka* sites are degraded when *mahika kai* can no longer be gathered there.<sup>679</sup>

Specific concerns include:

- Disturbance, modification or destruction of wāhi tapu or wāhi taoka by *earthworks*.
- Degradation of the cultural value and integrity of wāhi tapu or wāhi taoka through contamination by *discharges*, inappropriate development, and culturally inappropriate activities such as mining/quarrying, *landfills* or *wastewater* disposal.
- The resurfacing of kōiwi takata (human remains) through natural and human-induced processes, such as *climate change*,<sup>680</sup> and ensuring that these are kept safe and returned to Kāi Tahu so that they can be reinterred in accordance with tikaka.
- Ineffective management of *effects* due to inappropriate and inaccurate recording of wāhi tapu and wāhi taoka, and misinterpretation of the status and importance of sites.

## RMIA–WTA–I2 – Access to wāhi tapu and wāhi taoka and the ability to undertake customary activities on these sites has been impeded

Access to culturally important sites has been impeded in many ways, affecting the ability of *mana whenua* to carry out customary activities and maintain relationships with wāhi tapu and wāhi taoka.<sup>681</sup> Many sites are privately owned and cannot be accessed. Some sites no longer exist, or the customary activities associated with them<sup>682</sup> cannot be undertaken. ~~— for~~ For<sup>683</sup> example, *nohoaka* sites associated with *mahika kai* gathering cannot be used if there is no way to reach the site or no safe way to harvest when at the site because of physical constraints.<sup>684</sup> ~~the *mahika kai* is no longer there.~~ A limited number of *nohoaka* sites were granted to Kāi Tahu through the ~~Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998~~ NTCSA<sup>685</sup> as redress for loss of traditional sites. Some of these were traditional sites, but others were in new locations. Some *nohoaka* have also become dissociated from their customary use due to land use, freshwater management practices,<sup>686</sup> change and hazard

<sup>674</sup> 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>675</sup> 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>676</sup> 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>677</sup> 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>678</sup> 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>679</sup> 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>680</sup> 00226.074 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>681</sup> 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>682</sup> 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>683</sup> 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>684</sup> 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>685</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>686</sup> 00223.051 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

management. For example, if the *river* channel has moved and the *nohoaka* has not, whānau visiting the *nohoaka* are not able to fish there.

## RMIA-AA – Air and atmosphere

### Context

As discussed in Part 1, the air and atmosphere are resources of significance to Kāi Tahu. In Kāi Tahu traditions, air and atmosphere emerged through the creation traditions and Te Ao Marama. The air is an integral part of the environment that must be valued, used with respect, and passed on intact to the next generation. Pollution of the atmosphere adversely affects the mauri of this taoka and other taoka such as plants and animals.

### RMIA-AA-11 –The cultural impacts of *discharges* to air are poorly recognised in resource management

The cultural impacts of air pollution and *discharges* to air are poorly understood and seldom recognised. *Discharges* to air can adversely affect health and can be culturally offensive. Clean air is important to the health of *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>687</sup> and people, and odour and other emissions impact on the tapu of wāhi tapu sites. Air emissions can also reduce the visibility of *wāhi tūpuna* cultural landscape<sup>688</sup> features and of the moon, stars and rainbows.

Specific concerns include:

- Potential impacts of *climate change* which could potentially negatively affect taoka such as wai māori māori and wai tai,<sup>689</sup> *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>690</sup> and biodiversity, *wāhi tūpuna*, wāhi tapu, and wāhi taoka, the coastal environment<sup>691</sup> and<sup>692</sup> the well-being of all people, and the environment as an integrated system.<sup>693</sup>
- Insufficient data has been collected and distributed about the effects of *discharges* to air.
- The effects of *discharges* to air on the health of people and *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>694</sup>, including *discharges* from industrial or trade premises, agrichemical spray drift, vehicle emissions and emissions from domestic fires in built up areas prone to inversion layers.
- Culturally offensive *discharges* from crematoriums, if located in close proximity to *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>695</sup> and wāhi taoka.
- Adverse effects of vegetation burning on the integrity and the tapu of wāhi tapu sites.
- Impacts of odour on wāhi tapu, *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>696</sup> sites and *nohoaka*.
- Impacts of urban settlement and *discharges* to air on the visibility of the sky and *wāhi tūpuna* features.
- The impact of dust on the integrity of rock art sites.

---

<sup>687</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>688</sup> 00223.006 Te Ao Marama

<sup>689</sup> 00226.077 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>690</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>691</sup> 00226.077 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>692</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>693</sup> 00226.077 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>694</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>695</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>696</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

## RMIA–CE – Coastal environment (te takutai Taku tai moana me te wai tai Māori)<sup>697</sup>

### Context

The coastal environment is particularly significant for Kāi Tahu in the southern South Island. The spiritual and cultural significance of taku tai moana me te wai māori (saltwater and *freshwater*) and the interconnection between *land* and sea environments are not always well recognised in management of the coastal environment.

## RMIA–CE–I1 – Mahika kai Mahika kai<sup>698</sup> and coastal systems are adversely affected by lack of integrated management across the land-water interface

Management of mahika kai mahika kai<sup>699</sup> species and their habitats varies and is not holistic. Many important indigenous mahika kai mahika kai<sup>700</sup> fish species are diadromous and move between *freshwater* and the ocean during different parts of their life cycle. The interconnection between *land* and marine environments needs to be carefully considered in order to manage *effects* that cross the *coastal marine area* boundary.

Specific concerns include:

- *Effects* on the coastal environment and natural systems resulting from modifications to waterways, such as damming and artificial openings of *river* mouths, estuary and lagoon systems.
- The *effects* of reductions in *river* flows on ingress of saltwater to *river* systems and conditions for inaka spawning.
- Barriers to species migration, and hence lifecycles, created by changes to *river* mouths from reductions in *river* flow.
- Impacts of changes in sediment transport on coastal ecosystems.
- The *effects* of *land reclamation* on *water* quality and flow in enclosed harbours ~~harbours~~<sup>701</sup> and estuarine ecosystems.
- *Effects* of *land use* activities and poor management of coastal margins on *coastal water* quality.
- *Climate change effects* occur across the land-water interface and the *freshwater*-saltwater interface, and cause changes to mahika kai mahika kai<sup>702</sup> species distribution and the quality and locations of mahika kai mahika kai<sup>703</sup> habitat.

## RMIA–CE–I2 – Discharges into coastal waters and marine dumping of waste degrade mahika kai mahika kai<sup>704</sup> and the mauri of the waters

The practice of using the marine environment as a sink for disposal of waste from activities that occur on land and in the marine environment ~~both land development and marine vessels~~<sup>705</sup> is culturally offensive and has resulted in degradation of kaimoana resources. Leaching and overland runoff of

---

<sup>697</sup> 00226.078 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>698</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>699</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>700</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>701</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>702</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>703</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>704</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>705</sup> 00126.002 Harbour Fish; 00124.002 Southern Inshore Fisheries

*contaminants* from activities occurring near the coast have also contributed to the adverse *effects* on the marine area.

Specific concerns include:

- Point source industrial *discharges* to the coastal environment.
- Contamination of *coastal waters* by leachate from inappropriately sited *landfills* and other waste disposal sites and runoff from coastal subdivisions.
- *Discharges of sewage* from marine outfalls, poorly designed or inadequate coastal sewerage *infrastructure* and freedom camping.
- The *effects of contaminants* such as oil and carbon particles in *discharges of stormwater* from urban *roads*.
- *Discharges of sewage* and contaminated bilge and ballast *water* from *ships*.
- Proliferation of rubbish in the coastal environment and in lakes and rivers,<sup>706</sup> including materials such as lengths of rope from boats and moorings, plastic packaging strips, discarded and lost fishing gear, glass and plastic bottles as well as other dumped material.
- *Discharge* or disposal of waste products from the processing of marine species.
- Oil and chemical spills negatively affecting the natural environment.
- Indiscriminate Inappropriate disposal of human wastes, including indiscriminate<sup>707</sup> *discharge* of human ashes in sensitive areas such as kaimoana areas, or without the knowledge of *takata whenua*, and discharge of washdown wastes from mortuaries and funeral homes to coastal waters through stormwater drains.<sup>708</sup>

### **RMIA–CE–I3 – The ability for Kāi Tahu ki Otago to access and harvest kaimoana has been impeded by the *effects* of activities in the coastal and marine environment**

Parts of the coastal environment in Otago have been heavily modified since the arrival of settlers. Many parts of the coast around Dunedin have been reclaimed to establish the city, and the harbor has been dredged to enable the growth of the port. This has limited the ability for whānau to carry out customary harvest of kaimoana resources and to access sites of significance for customary fishing. Whānau are often unable to physically access the foreshore and seabed for the collection of kaimoana, or find that kai is no longer safe to eat due to pollution.

Specific concerns include:

- Impacts on kaimoana and associated habitats from the *effects* of waterway modifications on estuarine systems and the *freshwater/saltwater* interface.
- Modification or loss of marine habitats as a result of *reclamation*, dredging and dumping.
- Disturbance of intertidal habitats by vehicle access along beaches.
- Potential for modification and displacement of habitats by *aquaculture activities*.
- The negative *effects* of point and non-point source *discharges* on *water* quality.
- The introduction and spread of exotic species, such as the invasive seaweed *undaria*, through ballast, hull cleaning, and other shipping activities.
- Loss of access due to development of coastal *land*.

---

<sup>706</sup> 00411.134 Wayfare

<sup>707</sup> 00226.080 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>708</sup> 00226.080 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

## RMIA–CE–I4 – Habitat disturbance and modification has contributed to decline in populations of indigenous marine species, including marine mammals

Indigenous marine species, including marine mammals, are regarded as taoka by Kāi Tahu, and in many cases these are recognised through the NTCSA 1998<sup>709</sup>. The health and abundance of marine species populations are threatened by modification and loss of natural habitat as a result of the impacts identified in RMIA–CE–I2 and RMIA–CE–I3.

## RMIA–CE–I5 – Wāhi tapu and wāhi tūpuna values in the coastal environment are poorly recognised and protected

The coastal environment is the domain of Takaroa and includes the *coastal waters* of Te Tai o Arai Te Uru as well as the adjoining land. Tauraka waka (waka landing places) occur up and down the coast in their hundreds and wherever a tauraka waka is located there is also likely to be a *nohoaka*, fishing ground, kaimoana resource, or rimurapa (seaweed) with the sea trail linked to a land trail or *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>710</sup> resource. Burial sites and other wāhi tapu are also associated with these *wāhi tūpuna*. Seascapes such as reef systems also form part of *wāhi tūpuna*.

Wāhi tapu and the broader *wāhi tūpuna* can be adversely affected by inappropriate activities and developments on coastal land and in the *coastal marine areas*.

Specific concerns include:

- Damage to and disturbance of wāhi tapu resulting from coastal erosion and the impacts of climate change,<sup>711</sup> earthworks associated with *subdivisions*, and development of coastal walkways.
- The *effects of land fragmentation* on access to sites of significance.
- Loss of the integrity of *wāhi tūpuna cultural landscapes*<sup>712</sup> by *reclamation* and the inappropriate location of *structures* and activities associated with aquaculture, tourism activities, *infrastructure*, and vessel moorings.
- Disturbance from mining of the seabed and foreshore.
- Restriction of access to tauraka waka and associated trails due to *land* development.
- The cumulative *effect* of incremental, uncoordinated *subdivisions, land use change* and building within the coastal environment.
- Failure to recognise and provide for the *effects of climate change and*<sup>713</sup> of changing sea levels on coastal landscapes.

## RMIA–PO – Pounamu

### Context

Kāi Tahu customs are intricately linked to this special taoka. ~~There is currently no Regional Pounamu Plan for Otago. Many ara tāwhito, ancient trails, in Otago lead from coastal settlements to inland pounamu resources.~~<sup>714</sup> Management of this taoka is currently dependent on the provisions of the Ngāi Tahu (Pounamu Vesting) Act 1997 ~~and a rāhui pounamu is in place in the Otago region, which vests~~

<sup>709</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>710</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>711</sup> 00226.083 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>712</sup> 00223.006 Te Ao Marama

<sup>713</sup> 00226.083 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>714</sup> 00223.052 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku



pounamu with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu. Papatipu rūnaka act as kaitiaki pounamu. There is currently no Regional Pounamu Plan for Otago. However, a rāhui pounamu is in place in the Otago region.<sup>715</sup>

### **RMIA–PO–I1 – Pounamu resources need protection ~~from the effects of land use activities~~**<sup>716</sup>

Pounamu is a taoka for Kāi Tahu, but and pounamu management according to mātauraka, tikaka and kawa is a tribal priority. Lack<sup>717</sup> of recognition and protection of pounamu resources may lead to these resources, the areas where they are found and Kāi Tahu relationship with them being unknowingly<sup>718</sup> degraded. Pounamu resources may be present on *land* or in waterways. Kāi Tahu relationship with these resources can be affected by extractive activities,<sup>719</sup> for example by extraction of material for road aggregate, and by reduced *water* quality and poor *water body* management.<sup>720</sup>

---

<sup>715</sup> 00223.052 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>716</sup> 00223.052 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>717</sup> 00223.052 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>718</sup> 00223.052 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>719</sup> 00223.052 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>720</sup> 00223.052 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

# IM – Integrated management

## Objectives

### IM–O1 – Long term vision (mō tatou, ā, mō kā uri ā muri ake nei)<sup>721</sup>

The management of *natural and physical resources in Otago*,<sup>722</sup> by and for the people of Otago, in partnership with including<sup>723</sup> Kāi Tahu, ~~and as expressed in all resource management plans and decision making,~~<sup>724</sup> achieves a healthy, and resilient, and safeguarded<sup>725</sup> natural *environment, systems,*<sup>726</sup> and including<sup>727</sup> the ecosystem services it provides they offer,<sup>728</sup> and supports the well-being of present and future generations, ~~mō tatou, ā, mō kā uri ā muri ake nei.~~<sup>729</sup>

### IM–O2 – Ki uta ki tai

~~The management of *natural and physical resources* management and decision making in Otago~~<sup>730</sup> embraces ki uta ki tai, recognising that the *environment* is an interconnected system,<sup>731</sup> which depends on its connections to flourish,<sup>732</sup> and must be managed considered<sup>733</sup> as an interdependent whole.

### IM–O3 – ~~Environmentally s~~Sustainable impact<sup>734</sup>

Otago's communities provide for their social, economic, and cultural well-being in ways<sup>735</sup> ~~carry out their activities in a way~~<sup>736</sup> that support or restore preserves<sup>737</sup> environmental integrity, form, functioning,<sup>738</sup> and *resilience*, so that the life-supporting capacities of air, water, soil, and<sup>739</sup> ecosystems are sustainably managed, and indigenous biodiversity endure<sup>740</sup> for future generations.

### IM–O4 – Climate change<sup>741</sup>

Otago's communities, including Kāi Tahu, understand what *climate change* means for their future, and responses to climate change responses<sup>742</sup> in the region (including climate change adaptation and

---

<sup>721</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>722</sup> 00239.034 Federated Farmers

<sup>723</sup> 00226.085 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>724</sup> 00121.015 Ravensdown

<sup>725</sup> 00211.004 LAC, 00210.004 Lane Hocking, 00209.004 Universal Developments, 00118.005 Maryhill, 00014.005 Mt Cardrona Station

<sup>726</sup> 00231.03 Fish and Game

<sup>727</sup> 00139.022 DCC

<sup>728</sup> 00239.034 Federated Farmers

<sup>729</sup> 00239.034 Federated Farmers

<sup>730</sup> 00121.016 Ravensdown

<sup>731</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>732</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>733</sup> 00137.039 DOC

<sup>734</sup> 00231.031 Fish and Game, 00411.024 Wayfare

<sup>735</sup> 00239.035 Federated Farmers

<sup>736</sup> 00121.017 Ravensdown

<sup>737</sup> 00211.005 LAC, 00210.005 Lane Hocking, 00118.006 Maryhill, 00114.006 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.005 Universal Developments

<sup>738</sup> 00235.060 OWRUG

<sup>739</sup> 00239.035 Federated Farmers

<sup>740</sup> 00121.017 Ravensdown

<sup>741</sup> All formatting amendments recommended: Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendments arising from 00120.025 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust, 00509.038 Wise Response

<sup>742</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

climate change mitigation), actions,<sup>743</sup>

- (1) are aligned with national level *climate change* responses,
- (2) assist with achieving the national target for emissions reduction, including by having a highly renewable energy system,<sup>744</sup> and
- (3) are recognised as integral to achieving the outcomes sought by this RPS.

## Policies

### **IM-P1 – Integrated approach to decision-making**<sup>745</sup>

Giving effect to the integrated package of objectives and policies in this RPS and other relevant statutory provisions requires decision-makers to:

- (1) consider all provisions relevant to an issue or decision and apply them purposively according to the terms in which they are expressed and
- (2) if after (1) there is an irreconcilable conflict between any of the relevant RPS and/or statutory provisions which apply to an activity, only consider the activity if:
  - (a) the activity is necessary to give effect to a relevant policy or statutory provision and not merely desirable, and
  - (b) all options for the activity have been considered and evaluated, and
  - (c) if possible, the chosen option will not breach any other relevant policy or statutory provision, and
  - (d) if (c) is not possible, any breach is only to the extent required to give effect to the policy or statutory provision providing for the activity, and
- (3) if 2(d) applies, evaluate all relevant factors in a structured analysis to decide which of the conflicting policies or statutory provisions should prevail, or the extent to which any relevant policy or statutory provision should prevail, and
- (4) in the analysis under (1), (2) or the structured analysis under (3), assess the nature of the activity against the values inherent in the relevant policies or statutory provisions in the particular circumstances.<sup>746</sup>

### **IM-P1 – Integrated approach**

The objectives and policies in this RPS form an integrated package, in which:

- (1) ~~all activities are carried out within the environmental constraints of this RPS,~~
- (2) ~~all provisions relevant to an issue or decision must be considered,~~
- (3) ~~if multiple provisions are relevant, they must be considered together and applied according to the terms in which they are expressed, and~~

<sup>743</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – Consequential amendment arising from 00509.015 Wise Response

<sup>744</sup> 00120.025 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust, 00509.038 Wise Response

<sup>745</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>746</sup> 00139.026 DCC, 00235.062 OWRUG, 00314.011 Transpower, 00239.036 Federated Farmers, 00139.027 DCC, 00231.033 Fish and Game, 00314.011 Transpower, 00230.032 Forest and Bird, 00230.033 Forest and Bird, 00206.016 Trojan, 00411.026 Wayfare, 00306.020 Meridian

~~(4) notwithstanding the above, all provisions must be interpreted and applied to achieve the integrated management objectives IM-O1 to IM-O4.<sup>747</sup>~~

### **IM-P2 – Decision priorities**

~~Unless expressly stated otherwise, all decision making under this RPS shall:~~

- ~~(1) firstly, secure the long-term life-supporting capacity and mauri of the natural environment,~~
- ~~(2) secondly, promote the health needs of people, and~~
- ~~(3) thirdly, safeguard the ability of people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural well-being, now and in the future.<sup>748</sup>~~

### **IM-P3 – Providing for *mana whenua* cultural values in achieving integrated management**

Recognise and provide for the relationship of Kāi Tahu's relationship<sup>749</sup> with natural resources by:

- (1) enabling *mana whenua* to exercise rakatirataka and *kaitiakitaka*,
- (2) facilitating active participation of *mana whenua* in resource management processes and<sup>750</sup> decision making,
- (3) incorporating mātauraka Māori in processes and<sup>751</sup> decision-making,<sup>752</sup> and
- (4) ensuring resource management provides for the connections of Kāi Tahu to *wāhi tūpuna*, wai māori (including awa [rivers] and roto [lakes] and wai tai (including te takutai moana [coastal marine area]) and water and water bodies, the coastal environment,<sup>753</sup> *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>754</sup> and habitats of taoka species.

### **IM-P4 – Setting a strategic approach to ecosystem health**

Healthy and *resilient*<sup>755</sup> ecosystems and ecosystem services are achieved by developing regional plans and district plans through a planning framework that:<sup>756</sup>

- (1) have<sup>757</sup> protects particular regard to their the intrinsic values of ecosystems,<sup>758</sup>
- (2) takes a long-term strategic approach that recognises changing environments ongoing environmental change,<sup>759</sup> including the impacts of climate change,<sup>760</sup>

<sup>747</sup> 00025.002 Boxer Hill Trust, 00313.004 Queenstown Airport, 00121.019 Ravensdown

<sup>748</sup> 00121.020 Ravensdown, 00315.016 Aurora Energy, 00322.007 Fulton Hogan, 00235.063 OWRUG, 00314.011 Transpower, 00016.001 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 00017.001 Danny Walker and Others, 00023.003 Waterfall Park, 00025.016 Boxer Hill Trust, 00320.013 Network Waitaki, 00511.013 PowerNet, 00313.005 Queenstown Airport, 00311.009 Trustpower, 00240.012 NZ Pork, 00301.013 Port Otago, 00236.036 Horticulture NZ, 00115.010 Oceana Gold, 00138.008 QLDC

<sup>749</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>750</sup> 00226.091 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>751</sup> 00226.091 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>752</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>753</sup> 00226.091 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>754</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>755</sup> 00231.034 Fish and Game, 00230.034 Forest and Bird

<sup>756</sup> 00121.021 Ravensdown

<sup>757</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential to 00121.021 Ravensdown

<sup>758</sup> 00211.006 LAC, 00210.006 Lane Hocking, 00118.007 Maryhill, 00014.007 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.006 Universal Developments, 00121.021 Ravensdown, 00235.064 OWRUG; Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>759</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>760</sup> 00226.092 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

- (3) ~~recognises~~ recognise<sup>761</sup> and ~~provides~~ provide<sup>762</sup> for ecosystem complexity and interconnections, and
- (4) ~~anticipates~~ anticipate,<sup>763</sup> or ~~responds~~ respond<sup>764</sup> swiftly to, changes in activities, pressures, and trends.

### **IM–P5 – Managing environmental interconnections**

Manage the use and development of ~~Coordinate the management of~~<sup>765</sup> interconnected *natural and physical resources* by recognising and ~~providing for~~:<sup>766</sup>

- (1) situations where the value and function of a *natural or physical resource* extends beyond the immediate, or directly adjacent, area of interest,
- (2) ~~situations where effects of an activity extend to a different part of the environment,~~<sup>767</sup> situations where effects of an activity extend to a different part of the environment, ~~the effects of activities on a natural or physical resource as a whole when that resource is managed as sub-units, and~~
- (3) the impacts of management of one *natural or physical resource* on the values of another, or on the *environment*.

### **IM–P6 – Managing uncertainties ~~Acting on best available information~~<sup>768</sup>**

In resource management decision-making, manage uncertainties by using the best information available at the time, including scientific data and mātauraka Māori, and:

- (1) taking all practicable steps to reduce uncertainty, and
  - (a) in the absence of complete and scientifically robust data, using information obtained from modelling, reliable partial data, and local knowledge, with preference for sources of information that provide the greatest level of certainty, and
  - (b) avoiding unreasonable delays in making decisions because of uncertainty about the quality or quantity of the information available, and
- (2) adopting a precautionary approach, including through use of adaptive management, towards activities whose effects are uncertain, unknown, or a little understood, but potentially significantly adverse.<sup>769</sup>

~~Avoid unreasonable delays in decision-making processes by using the best information available at the time, including but not limited to mātauraka Māori, local knowledge, and reliable partial data.~~<sup>770</sup>

<sup>761</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential to 00121.021 Ravensdown

<sup>762</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential to 00121.021 Ravensdown

<sup>763</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential to 00121.021 Ravensdown

<sup>764</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential to 00121.021 Ravensdown

<sup>765</sup> 00509.035 Wise Response

<sup>766</sup> 00226.093 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>767</sup> 00226.093 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>768</sup> 00226.094 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>769</sup> 00137.042 DOC, 00014.022 John Highton, 00239.038 Federated Farmers, 00235.065 OWRUG, 00233.023 Fonterra, 00406.005 Lauder Creek Farming, 00120.024 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust, 00509.036 Wise Response, 00139.040 DCC, 00121.027 Ravensdown, 00301.015 Port Otago

<sup>770</sup> 00137.042 DOC, 00014.022 John Highton, 00239.038 Federated Farmers, 00235.065 OWRUG, 00233.023 Fonterra, 00406.005 Lauder Creek Farming, 00120.024 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust, 00509.036 Wise Response, 00139.040 DCC, 00121.027 Ravensdown, 00301.015 Port Otago

### IM-P7 – Cross boundary management

Coordinate the management of ~~Otago's~~<sup>771</sup> natural and physical resources and the environment<sup>772</sup> across jurisdictional boundaries and, whenever possible, between overlapping or related agency responsibilities.

### IM-P8 – Effects of climate change impacts<sup>773</sup>

Recognise and provide for the effects of climate change processes and risks by:<sup>774</sup>

- (1) identifying the effects of climate change impacts<sup>775</sup> in Otago, including impacts from a ~~te ao Māori~~ the<sup>776</sup> perspectives of Kāi Tahu as mana whenua,<sup>777</sup>
- (2) assessing how the effects impacts<sup>778</sup> are likely to change over time, and
- (3) taking into account ~~anticipating~~<sup>779</sup> those changes in resource management processes and decisions.

### IM-P9 – ~~Community response to climate change impacts~~

~~By 2030 Otago's communities have established responses for adapting to the impacts of climate change, are adjusting their lifestyles to follow them, and are reducing their greenhouse gas emissions to achieve net-zero carbon emissions by 2050.~~<sup>780</sup>

### IM-P10 – Climate change adaptation and climate change mitigation<sup>781</sup>

Identify and implement climate change adaptation and climate change mitigation<sup>782</sup> methods for Otago that:

- (1) minimise the effects of climate change processes or risks<sup>783</sup> to existing activities and the wider environment,<sup>784</sup>
- (2) ~~prioritise avoiding the establishment of new activities in areas subject to risk from the effects of climate change, unless those activities reduce, or are resilient to, those risks, and~~<sup>785</sup>
- (3) provide Otago's communities, including Kāi Tahu, with the best chance to thrive, ~~even under the most extreme climate change scenarios, and~~<sup>786</sup>
- (4) enhance environment, social, economic, and cultural<sup>787</sup> resilience to the adverse effects of

---

<sup>771</sup> Clause 16(2) Schedule 1 RMA

<sup>772</sup> 00231.036 Fish and Game

<sup>773</sup> 00509.044 Wise Response

<sup>774</sup> 00509.044 Wise Response

<sup>775</sup> 00509.044 Wise Response

<sup>776</sup> 00226.096 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>777</sup> 00226.096 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>778</sup> 00509.044 Wise Response

<sup>779</sup> 00239.039 Federated Farmers, 00139.033 DCC

<sup>780</sup> 00213.011 Waitaki Irrigators, 00239.040 Federated Farmers

<sup>781</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – Consequential amendment arising from 00509.015 Wise Response

<sup>782</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – Consequential amendment arising from 00509.015 Wise Response

<sup>783</sup> 00509.044 Wise Response

<sup>784</sup> 00137.044 DOC, 00226.098 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>785</sup> 00211.057 LAC, 00210.057 Lane Hocking, 00118.011 Maryhill

<sup>786</sup> 00509.039 Wise Response

<sup>787</sup> 00322.008 Fulton Hogan

climate change, including<sup>788</sup> by facilitation activities that reduce those effects, and<sup>789</sup>

- (5) protects Otago's existing renewable electricity facilities and provides for the development of new renewable electricity generation and infrastructure.<sup>790</sup>

### **IM-P11 – Enhancing environmental resilience to effects of climate change**

Enhance environmental *resilience* to the adverse *effects of climate change* by facilitating activities that reduce human impacts on the *environment*.

### **IM-P12 – Contravening environmental bottom lines limits<sup>791</sup> for climate change mitigation and climate change adaptation**

~~If~~ ~~Where~~ a proposed activity provides or will provide enduring regionally or nationally significant *climate change mitigation* or *climate change adaptation* ~~mitigation of climate change impacts,~~<sup>792</sup> with commensurate benefits for the well-being of people and communities and the wider *environment*, decision makers may, ~~at their discretion,~~<sup>793</sup> allow non-compliance with limits an environmental bottom line<sup>794</sup> set in, or resulting from,<sup>795</sup> any policy or method of this RPS ~~only~~ if they are satisfied that:

- (1) ~~the activity is designed and carried out to have the smallest possible environmental impact consistent with its purpose and functional needs,~~
- (2) ~~the activity is consistent and coordinated with other regional and national climate change mitigation activities,~~
- (3) ~~adverse effects on the environment that cannot be~~ are avoided, remedied, or mitigated so that they are minimised to the extent reasonably practicable, and any significant residual adverse effects are offset, or compensated for, and if an offset is not possible, in accordance with any specific criteria for using offsets or compensation, and ensuring that any offset is:
  - (a) undertaken where it will result in the best ecological outcome,
  - (b) close to the location of the activity, and
  - (c) within the same ecological district or coastal marine biogeographic region,<sup>796</sup>
- (4) ~~the activity will not impede either the achievement of the objectives of this RPS or the objectives of regional policy statements in neighbouring regions, and<sup>797</sup>~~
- (5) ~~the activity will not contravene a bottom line set in<sup>798</sup> a national policy statement or national environmental standard.~~

---

<sup>788</sup> 00307.011 CIAL

<sup>789</sup> 00509.040 Wise Response, 00235.067 OWRUG

<sup>790</sup> 00311.010 Trustpower

<sup>791</sup> 00119.003 Blackthorn Lodge, 00231.009 Fish and Game, 00231.038 Fish and Game, 00306.025 Meridian, 00206.019 Trojan, 00411.030 Wayfare

<sup>792</sup> 00301.014 Port Otago

<sup>793</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>794</sup> 00231.009 Fish and Game

<sup>795</sup> 00306.025 Meridian

<sup>796</sup> 00119.003 Blackthorn Lodge, 00206.019 Trojan, 00411.030 Wayfare, 00306.025 Meridian, 00311.011 Trustpower, 00318.009 Contact

<sup>797</sup> 00311.011 Trustpower

<sup>798</sup> 00231.009 Fish and Game

### IM-P13 – Managing cumulative effects

In resource management decision-making, recognise and manage the impact of cumulative effects on the form, functioning and resilience of Otago’s environment (including resilience to climate change) and the opportunities available for future generations.<sup>799</sup>

~~Otago’s environmental integrity, form, function, and resilience, and opportunities for future generations, are protected by recognising and specifically managing the cumulative effects of activities on natural and physical resources in plans and explicitly accounting for these effects in other resource management decisions.~~<sup>800</sup>

### IM-P14 – Sustaining resource potential ~~Human impact~~<sup>801</sup>

When preparing regional plans and district plans, Preserve<sup>802</sup> sustainably manage opportunities for future generations by:

- (1) where necessary to achieve the objectives of this RPS,<sup>803</sup> identifying environmental<sup>804</sup> limits to both growth and adverse effects of human activities<sup>805</sup> beyond which the environment will be degraded,
- (2) requiring that activities are established in places, and carried out in ways, that are within those environmental<sup>806</sup> limits and are compatible with the natural capabilities and capacities of the resources they rely on, and
- (3) regularly assessing and adjusting environmental limits and thresholds for the way<sup>807</sup> activities are managed<sup>808</sup> over time in light of the actual and potential environmental impacts, including those related to climate change, and<sup>809</sup>
- (4) providing for activities that reduce, mitigate, or avoid adverse effects on the environment.<sup>810</sup>

### IM-P15 – Precautionary approach

~~Adopt a precautionary approach towards proposed activities whose effects are uncertain, unknown or little understood, but could be significantly adverse, particularly where the areas and values within Otago have not been identified in plans as required by this RPS.~~<sup>811</sup>

## Methods

### IM-M1 – Regional and district plans

*Local authorities* must prepare or amend and maintain their *regional* and *district plans* to:

---

<sup>799</sup> 00137.045 DOC, 00119.004 Blackthorn Lodge

<sup>800</sup> 00235.070 OWRUG, 00121.026 Ravensdown

<sup>801</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>802</sup> 00235.071 OWRUG

<sup>803</sup> 00210.008 Lane Hocking

<sup>804</sup> 00231.009 Fish and Game

<sup>805</sup> 00235.071 OWRUG

<sup>806</sup> 00231.009 Fish and Game

<sup>807</sup> 00314.012 Transpower, 00118.014 Maryhill

<sup>808</sup> 00314.012 Transpower, 00118.014 Maryhill

<sup>809</sup> 00226.102 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>810</sup> 00137.046 DOC

<sup>811</sup> 00315.103 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00239.045 Federated Farmers, 00235.072 OWRUG, 00124.007 Southern Inshore Fisheries, 00314.013 Transpower, 00311.012 Trustpower



- (1) establish, by December 2030, policy frameworks designed to achieve the objectives for Otago set out in IM–O1 to IM–O4,
- (2) include provisions to manage the *effects*, resources, and communities identified in accordance with IM-M3,<sup>812</sup> ~~give effect to any response to *climate change* developed under this RPS, if applicable,~~
- (3) provide for activities that support *climate change adaptation* and *climate change mitigation* in accordance with IM-P10 ~~seek to mitigate or adapt to the effects of *climate change* or reduce greenhouse gas emissions,~~<sup>813</sup>
- (4) ensure cumulative *effects* of activities on *natural and physical resources* are accounted for in resource management decisions by recognising and managing such *effects*, including:
  - (a) the same *effect* occurring multiple times,
  - (b) different *effects* occurring at the same time,
  - (c) different *effects* occurring multiple times,
  - (d) one *effect* leading to different *effects* occurring over time,
  - (e) different *effects* occurring sequentially over time,
  - (f) *effects* occurring in the same place,
  - (g) *effects* occurring in different places,
  - (h) *effects* that are spatially or temporally distant from their cause or causes, and,
  - (i) more than minor cumulative *effects* resulting from minor or transitory *effects*,
- (5) adopt a ki uta ki tai approach to resource management by establishing policy and implementation frameworks that treat Otago’s *environments* as an integrated system, including collaboration between local authorities to achieve consistent management of resources or *effects* that cross jurisdictional boundaries, and
- (6) establish clear thresholds for, and limits on, activities that have the potential to adversely affect healthy ecosystem services and *intrinsic values*.

## IM–M2 – Relationships

~~Starting immediately,~~ Local authorities must:<sup>814</sup>

- (1) partner with Kāi Tahu to ensure *mana whenua* involvement in resource management processes and decision-making,<sup>815</sup>
- (2) work together and with other agencies (including local authorities in neighbouring regions)<sup>816</sup> to enable ensure<sup>817</sup> consistent implementation of the objectives, policies and methods of this RPS where appropriate,<sup>818</sup> and
- (3) consult with Otago’s communities to ensure policy frameworks adequately respond to the

<sup>812</sup> 00119.006 Blackthorn Lodge, 00509.044 Wise Response

<sup>813</sup> 00139 DCC (uncoded submission point)

<sup>814</sup> 00239.047 Federated Farmers

<sup>815</sup> 00226.105 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>816</sup> 00013.008 ECan

<sup>817</sup> 00139.043 DCC

<sup>818</sup> 00139.043 DCC

diverse facets of environmental, social, cultural, and economic well-being.

### IM–M3 – Identification of *climate change* impacts and community guidance

By December 2025,<sup>819</sup> Otago Regional Council Local authorities<sup>820</sup> must:

- (1) identify the specific types and locations of the effects of climate change impacts<sup>821</sup> in Otago by undertaking a *climate change risk* assessment, including an assessment that incorporates a Kāi Tahu approach to *climate change risk* identification and evaluation, ~~and~~
- (1A) identify natural and built resources vital to environmental (including indigenous biodiversity and ecosystems)<sup>822</sup> and community resilience and well-being,<sup>823</sup>
- (1B) identify vulnerable resources and communities and develop adaptation pathways for them where possible, and<sup>824</sup>
- (2) develop guidance to support communities to be prepared and *resilient*.

### IM–M4 – ~~Climate change response~~

~~By January 2027, local authorities (led by Otago Regional Council) must together, in partnership with Kāi Tahu and in consultation with Otago’s communities, develop *climate change* responses for the region that achieve *climate change* adaptation and mitigation, and that include:~~

- ~~(1) identifying natural and built resources vital to environmental and community *resilience* and well-being,~~
- ~~(2) identifying vulnerable resources and communities and developing adaptation pathways for them where possible, and~~
- ~~(3) developing plans and agreements for implementation.~~<sup>825</sup>

### IM–M5 – Other methods

*Local authorities* should:

- (1) ~~at their next plan review or by December 2030, whichever is sooner,~~<sup>826</sup> align (to the extent practicable possible)<sup>827</sup> all strategies and management plans prepared under other legislation to contribute to the attainment of the long-term vision for Otago, and
- (2) facilitate community involvement in achieving realising the long-term vision for Otago stated in<sup>828</sup> IM–O1 through non-regulatory means,
- (3) encourage changes to business practice that will enable businesses and communities<sup>829</sup> to

---

<sup>819</sup> 00139.002 DCC

<sup>820</sup> 00119.006 Blackthorn Lodge, 00509.044 Wise Response

<sup>821</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – Consequential amendment arising from 00509.044 Wise Response

<sup>822</sup> 00230.037 Forest and Bird

<sup>823</sup> 00119.006 Blackthorn Lodge, 00509.044 Wise Response

<sup>824</sup> 00119.006 Blackthorn Lodge, 00509.044 Wise Response

<sup>825</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – Consequential amendment arising from 00119.006 Blackthorn Lodge, 00509.044 Wise Response, 00235.066 OWRUG

<sup>826</sup> 00139.042 DCC, 00239.046 Federated Farmers

<sup>827</sup> 00119.008 Blackthorn Lodge, 00206.026 Trojan, 00411.037 Wayfare

<sup>828</sup> 00139.046 DCC

<sup>829</sup> 00226.108 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

function in a net-zero carbon economy, and

- (4) advocate for and incentivise activities that reduce, mitigate, or eliminate risk of environmental degradation.

## Explanation

### IM–E1 – Explanation

The policies in this chapter provide direction on integrated management across the region, to achieve the revitalisation, *resilience* and safeguarding of Otago’s environment and ensure that it supports ~~ka takata~~ people<sup>830</sup> and the community’s cultural, social, and economic well-being. The policies seek to apply a *ki uta ki tai* approach and ensure that the *effects of climate change* are understood and responded to across the region. Further, they are designed to ensure that environmental integrity, form, function, and *resilience, including resilience to climate change*,<sup>831</sup> are at the centre of all resource management decision making and that changes are made where necessary to ensure the environment’s life-supporting capacity continues to support people’s health and well-being both now and into the future.

The policies in this chapter include direction for resolving issues when multiple Regional Policy Statement provisions need to be applied simultaneously. This direction reinforces the primacy of national legislation and regulation, as some provisions of National Policy Statements and National Environmental Standards are prescriptive enough that they do not need a regional interpretation and are only referred to in the RPS when necessary. Further, some direction in the NZCPS,<sup>832</sup> ~~New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010~~, such as in Policy 3, is considered appropriate to apply to the management of resources throughout Otago, rather than solely within the coastal environment.

## Principal reasons

### IM–PR1 – Principal reasons

Integrated management is at the core of the RMA 1991.<sup>833</sup> The provisions in this chapter set out core facets of integration - the interconnections and interdependencies within the environment, involvement of *mana whenua* in resource management, the fundamental importance of environmental health to human well-being, and holistic assessment of human *effects* on the *environment*. They also address the *effects of climate change* as the key threat to environmental stability.

~~The provisions seek to enshrine an explicit recognition and implementation of these facets into plan making and resource consenting processes. They~~<sup>834</sup> set an expectation of integrated resource management that flows through to all other provisions of the RPS, and informs the limits and thresholds we set on human activities for protecting environmental health. It sets explicit expectations that local authorities will work with each other and with other agencies to ensure management approaches are clear, coordinated, and able to support Otago’s communities into the future. This

---

<sup>830</sup> 00226.109 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>831</sup> 00226.109 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>832</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>833</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>834</sup> 00236.041 Horticulture NZ, 00235.075 OWRUG

applies to plan making and resource consenting processes.<sup>835</sup>

## Anticipated environmental results

- IM-AER1** Monitoring shows the limits ~~and thresholds~~<sup>836</sup> set for human activities are adhered to and are resulting in ~~environmental well-being and~~ resilience in the natural environment.<sup>837</sup>
- IM-AER2** ~~Environmental well-being and r~~ Resilience in the natural environment<sup>838</sup> is resulting in sustainable social, cultural, and economic well-being for all communities including Kāi Tahu.<sup>839</sup>
- IM-AER3** Communities, including Kāi Tahu,<sup>840</sup> are aware of the potential impacts of *climate change* and there are observable changes in community behaviour towards more sustainable lifestyles.
- IM-AER4** Plan development and decision-making processes demonstrate improved awareness of the interdependencies and interconnectedness of *natural and physical resources* within the region, and across regional and jurisdictional boundaries.<sup>841</sup>

---

<sup>835</sup> 00236.041 Horticulture NZ

<sup>836</sup> 00231.009 Fish and Game

<sup>837</sup> 00223.059 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>838</sup> 00223.060 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>839</sup> 00226.111 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>840</sup> 00226.112 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>841</sup> 00226.113 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

# PART 3 – DOMAINS AND TOPICS

## DOMAINS

### AIR – Air

#### Objectives

##### AIR–O1 – Ambient air quality

Ambient air quality provides for the health and well-being of the people of Otago, *amenity values*<sup>842</sup> and *mana whenua values*, and the life-supporting capacity of ecosystems.

##### AIR–O2 – Discharges to air

~~The localised<sup>843</sup> adverse effects of discharges to air do not compromise human<sup>844</sup> health, amenity values,<sup>845</sup> and mana whenua values and the life-supporting capacity of ecosystems. are protected from the adverse effects of discharges to air.<sup>846</sup>~~

#### Policies

##### AIR–P1 – Maintain good ambient air quality<sup>847</sup>

~~Good ambient<sup>848</sup> air quality is, at a minimum,<sup>849</sup> maintained across Otago by:~~

- ~~(1) ensuring discharges to air comply with ambient air quality limits, including ambient air quality standards and guidelines, where those have been set as limits have been set<sup>850</sup>, and~~
- ~~(2) where limits, including ambient air quality standards and guidelines<sup>851</sup>, have not been set, only allowing discharges to air if the adverse effects on ambient air quality are avoided, remedied or mitigated<sup>852</sup> no more than minor.~~

##### AIR–P2 – Improve degraded<sup>853</sup> poor ambient air quality

~~Degraded<sup>854</sup> Poor ambient air quality is improved across Otago by:~~

- ~~(1) establishing, maintaining and enforcing plan provisions that set limits and timeframes for improving ambient air quality, including by managing the spatial distribution of activities and transport, and~~

---

<sup>842</sup> 00226.114 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>843</sup> 00236.042 Horticulture NZ

<sup>844</sup> 00233.025 Fonterra, 00121.030 Ravensdown

<sup>845</sup> 00226.115 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00233.025 Fonterra

<sup>846</sup> 00236.042 Horticulture NZ; 00233.025 Fonterra; 00121.030 Ravensdown

<sup>847</sup> 00121.031 Ravensdown; 00213.026 Fonterra; 00138.014 QLDC;

<sup>848</sup> 00121.031 Ravensdown

<sup>849</sup> 00121.031 Ravensdown; 00213.026 Fonterra

<sup>850</sup> 00233.026 Fonterra- Fleur to check

<sup>851</sup> 00121.031 Ravensdown

<sup>852</sup> 00121.031 Ravensdown

<sup>853</sup> 00121.032 Ravensdown

<sup>854</sup> 00121.032 Ravensdown

- (2) prioritising actions to reduce  $PM_{10}$  and  $PM_{2.5}$  concentrations in *polluted airsheds*, including:
- (a) phasing out existing domestic *solid fuel* burning appliances, and
  - (b) preventing any *discharges* from new domestic *solid fuel* burning appliances that do not comply with the standards set in the NESAQ.<sup>855</sup>

### **AIR-P3 – Providing for discharges to air**

Provide for<sup>856</sup> ~~Allow~~<sup>857</sup> *discharges* to air ~~that provided they~~<sup>858</sup> do not adversely affect human health, amenity values, and<sup>859</sup> *mana whenua* values and the life supporting capacity of ecosystems.

### **AIR-P4 – Managing<sup>860</sup> ~~Avoiding~~<sup>861</sup> certain discharges**

Manage the adverse effects of discharges to air<sup>862</sup> by:

- (1) avoiding noxious or dangerous effects,<sup>863</sup>
- (2) ensuring discharges to air do not cause offensive or objectionable effects,<sup>864</sup>
- (3) avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects from discharges to air, including but not limited to discharges arising from:
  - (a) outdoor burning of organic material,
  - (b) agricultural and fertiliser applications,<sup>865</sup>
  - (c) primary production activities,<sup>866</sup>
  - (d) activities that produce dust, and
  - (e) industrial and trade activities.
- (4) locating new sensitive activities to avoid potential reverse sensitivity effects from existing consented or permitted discharges to air, unless these can be appropriately managed.<sup>867</sup>

~~Avoid discharges to air that cause offensive, objectionable, noxious or dangerous effects.~~

### **~~AIR-P5 – Managing certain discharges~~**

~~Manage the effects of discharges to air beyond the boundary of the property of origin from activities that include but are not limited to:~~

- ~~(1) outdoor burning of organic material,~~

<sup>855</sup> RMA Clause 16(2)

<sup>856</sup> 00322.011 Fulton Hogan, 00121.033 Ravensdown

<sup>857</sup> 00233.028 Fonterra, 00322.011 Fulton Hogan, 00121.033 Ravensdown

<sup>858</sup> 00121.033 Ravensdown, 00322.011 Fulton Hogan

<sup>859</sup> 00226.118 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>860</sup> 00233.030 Fonterra, 00022.014 Graymont, 00236.045 Horticulture NZ, 00236.045 Horticulture NZ, 00240.015 New Zealand Pork Industry, 00213.029 Fonterra, 00115.013 Oceana Gold, 00121.034 Ravensdown, 00121.035 Ravensdown

<sup>861</sup> 00121.034 Ravensdown

<sup>862</sup> 00233.030 Fonterra, 00022.014 Graymont, 00121.035 Ravensdown

<sup>863</sup> 00233.029 Fonterra

<sup>864</sup> 00121.034 Ravensdown

<sup>865</sup> 00236.045 Horticulture NZ

<sup>866</sup> 00236.045 Horticulture NZ, 00240.015 NZ Pork

<sup>867</sup> 00213.033 Fonterra, 00236.049 Horticulture NZ, 00236.047 Horticulture NZ, 00240.016 NZ Pork

- (2) ~~agricultural and fertiliser spraying,~~
- (3) ~~farming activities,~~
- (4) ~~activities that produce dust, and~~
- (5) ~~industrial and trade activities.~~<sup>868</sup>

### **AIR-P6 – Impacts on *mana whenua* values**

Ensure that<sup>869</sup> ~~Avoid~~<sup>870</sup> *discharges to air do not*<sup>871</sup> ~~that~~<sup>872</sup> adversely affect *mana whenua* values by having particular regard to values and areas of significance to *mana whenua*, including *wāhi tūpuna*<sup>873</sup>, *wāhi tapu* and *wāhi taoka*.<sup>874</sup>

## **Methods**

### **AIR-M1 – Review *airshed* boundaries**

Prior to implementing AIR-M2, and within 12 months of the AIR chapter being made operative, no later than 31 December 2022,<sup>875</sup> the Otago Regional Council must review existing *airshed* boundaries and apply to the Ministry for the Environment to gazette amended boundaries where *airsheds* do not account for:

- (1) current or anticipated areas of development,
- (2) weather patterns and geography, or
- (3) existing areas of degraded ~~poor~~<sup>876</sup> air quality.

### **AIR-M2 – Regional plans**

~~No later than 31 December 2024,~~<sup>877</sup> Otago Regional Council must prepare or amend and maintain its *regional plans* to:

- (1A) set limits (including *ambient air quality standards* and *guidelines*) to maintain ambient air quality in accordance with AIR-P1, and improve ambient air quality in accordance with AIR-P2<sup>878</sup>,
- (1) manage the adverse effects of discharges to air by avoiding noxious or dangerous effects and ensuring discharges to air do not cause offensive or objectionable effects, ~~avoid offensive, objectionable, noxious or dangerous discharges to air,~~<sup>879</sup>
- (2) include provisions to avoid, remedy, or mitigate other ~~the~~ *adverse effects* from *discharges* to

<sup>868</sup> 00233.030 Fonterra, 00022.014 Graymont, 00236.045 Horticulture NZ, 00236.045 Horticulture NZ, 00240.015 New Zealand Pork Industry, 00213.029 Fonterra, 00115.013 Oceana Gold, 00121.034 Ravensdown, 00121.035 Ravensdown

<sup>869</sup> 00121.036 Ravensdown

<sup>870</sup> 00239.055 Federated Farmers, 00121.036 Ravensdown

<sup>871</sup> 00121.036 Ravensdown

<sup>872</sup> 00121.036 Ravensdown

<sup>873</sup> 00223.062 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>874</sup> 00226.121 Kāi Tahu ki Otago and 00223.062 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>875</sup> RMA Clause 16(2)

<sup>876</sup> 00138.020 Queenstown Lakes District Council

<sup>877</sup> RMA Clause 16(2)

<sup>878</sup> 00121.031 Ravensdown, 00138.014 Queenstown Lakes District Council

<sup>879</sup> 00233.032 Fonterra

air beyond the boundary of the property of origin,<sup>880</sup>

- (3) prioritise the implementation of the prioritisation of<sup>881</sup> actions set out in AIR-P2, to reduce *PM<sub>10</sub>* and *PM<sub>2.5</sub>* concentrations in *polluted airsheds*,
- (4) mitigate the adverse *effects* of *discharges* to air in areas adjacent to *polluted airsheds* where the *discharge* will adversely affect air quality in the *polluted airshed*, and
- (5) ~~give effect to the Air Quality Strategy for Otago and any subsequent amendments or updates.~~<sup>882</sup>
- (6) Include measures to ensure that discharges to air do not adversely affect *mana whenua* values.<sup>883</sup>

### AIR-M3 – Territorial authorities

~~No later than 31 December 2029,~~ Territorial<sup>884</sup> authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* to include provisions that direct an urban form that assists in achieving good air quality by:

- (1) encouraging or facilitating a reduced<sup>885</sup> ~~reducing~~ reliance on private non-electric<sup>886</sup> motor vehicles and enabling the adoption of *active transport*, shared transport and *public transport* options to assist in achieving good air quality, and
- (2) managing the spatial distribution of activities.
- (3) managing new sensitive activities to avoid reverse sensitivity effects in relation to consented and permitted activities that discharge to air.<sup>887</sup>

### AIR-M4 – Monitoring and reporting

Otago Regional Council must monitor and report no less frequently than annually on:

- (1) air quality in accordance with the NESAQ to identify changes in ambient air quality within *airsheds*, and
- (2) progress towards attainment of the *ambient air quality standards*.

### AIR-M5 – Incentives and other mechanisms

In partnership with Kāi Tahu ki Otago and in<sup>888</sup> collaboration with *territorial authorities*, ~~in~~ authorities<sup>889</sup> key stakeholders and industry, Otago Regional Council must, on an on-going basis, use other mechanisms or incentives to assist with achieving the air quality objectives, including:

- (1) improving community awareness of air quality issues in Otago associated with home heating,
- (2) educating communities and promoting the use of alternative methods for home heating including the use of new technology (including low emission or ultra-low emission home heating

---

<sup>880</sup> 00121.037 Ravensdown

<sup>881</sup> 00233.032 Fonterra

<sup>882</sup> 00236.048 Horticulture NZ, 00121.037 Ravensdown

<sup>883</sup> 00226.122 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00234.012 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>884</sup> 00139.054 DCC

<sup>885</sup> 00239.056 Federated Farmers

<sup>886</sup> 00411.038 Wayfare

<sup>887</sup> 00213.033 Fonterra, 00236.049 Horticulture NZ, 00240.016 NZ Pork

<sup>888</sup> 00226.125 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>889</sup> 00226.125 Kāi Tahu ki Otago



appliances) and cleaner fuels or energy sources,

- (3) advocating, promoting and supporting upgrading Otago's housing stock and changes to the Building Act 2004 and Building Code to require houses to create and maintain warmth more efficiently and reduce reliance on non-compliant domestic *solid fuel* burning appliances as described in AIR-P2,
- (4) advocating to energy providers to improve the *resilience and reliability*<sup>890</sup> of electricity infrastructure so alternative sources of heating are available and reliable,
- (5) measures to encourage the use of *active transport*, shared transport and *public transport* over the use of private motor vehicles, and
- (6) providing financial incentives (such as funding schemes, subsidies or rates relief) and support to improve home heating efficiency and assist with the transition towards cleaner heating, improved energy efficiency and home insulation, including the replacement of *solid fuel* burners that do not comply with the NESAQ standards.

## Explanation

### AIR-E1 – Explanation

The policies in this chapter are designed to achieve and maintain good air quality for Otago by requiring improvements where air quality is poor, maintaining it where it is good. Managing air quality does not include emissions from ships which are managed under separate national regulation. The policies in this chapter focus on preventing further decline in air quality by preventing use of new domestic *solid fuel* burning appliances that do not comply with the NESAQ, and phasing out the use of existing domestic *solid fuel* burning appliances that are non-compliant. The policies also require the boundaries of *airsheds* be amended to accurately reflect current and anticipated areas of urban growth. This is required to ensure monitoring of ambient air quality is accurate and that all activities that contribute to poor ambient air quality within an *airshed* are subject to the same measures to improve ambient air quality. This policy framework also directs future reviews of the Air Plan<sup>891</sup> to manage the adverse effects of discharges to air.

~~In addition to the objectives and policies in this chapter, the air quality outcomes are also provided for in the objectives and policies listed within the following chapters of the RPS where they provide direction on the management of *environments* and activities that may affect air quality:~~

- ~~● IM – Integrated management~~
- ~~● EIT – Energy, *infrastructure* and transport~~
- ~~● UFD – Urban form and development<sup>892</sup>~~

## Principal reasons

### AIR-PR1

Clean air is vital for supporting a healthy population and *environment*. Air quality monitoring shows that for most of the year air quality in the Otago Region is very good. During winter months however, temperatures drop and emissions from home heating increase. This, coupled with the topography of

---

<sup>890</sup> 00306.026 Meridian

<sup>891</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>892</sup> 00120.006 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

some areas and cold, calm conditions, leads to poor winter air quality in many towns and cities across the region. At times, parts of Otago have some of the poorest air quality in New Zealand. This is intensifying through urban growth.

The provisions in this chapter set out the framework for a review of the Air Plan and supports ORC's obligation to both observe and enforce the NESAQ. Implementation of the provisions in this chapter will occur primarily through regional *plans*<sup>893</sup> and *district plan* provisions, however a collaborative approach with central government, other *local authorities*, stakeholders, communities<sup>894</sup> and industry, and in partnership with Kāi Tahu as *mana whenua*,<sup>895</sup> will support the achievement of the objectives over time.

## Anticipated environmental results

- AIR-AER1** Where air quality is degraded ~~poor~~,<sup>896</sup> there is a decreasing trend in concentrations of  $PM_{10}$  and  $PM_{2.5}$ .
- AIR-AER2** Otago has an urban form that takes into account the *effects* of activities, and any *discharges* to air they create, on Otago's air quality.
- AIR-AER3** Homes have cleaner forms of heating and non-compliant burners are no longer in use.
- AIR-AER4** There is a decrease in the number of complaints regarding offensive, objectionable, noxious or dangerous *discharges* into air.
- AIR-AER5** Where air quality complies with ambient air quality limits ~~is good~~<sup>897</sup> it is maintained.
- AIR-AER6** Otago is compliant with NESAQ requirements.

---

<sup>893</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>894</sup> 00226.127 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>895</sup> 00226.127 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>896</sup> Consequential to 00121.032 Ravensdown

<sup>897</sup> Consequential to 00121.031 Ravensdown, 00138.014 QLDC, 00213.026 Fonterra

# CE – Coastal environment

## Objectives

### CE–O1A – Te Mauri o te Moana

The health of Otago’s coastal water is:

- (a) protected from inappropriate activities so as to protect the health and well-being of the wider environment and the mauri of coastal waters, and
- (b) restored where it is degraded, including through enhancing coastal water quality where it has deteriorated from its natural condition.<sup>898</sup>

### CE–O1 – Safeguarding the coastal environment (Te Hauora o Te Tai o Arai Te Uru)<sup>899</sup>

The health,<sup>900</sup> integrity, form, functioning and *resilience* of Otago's coastal environment is safeguarded so that:

- ~~(1) the mauri of coastal water is protected, and restored where it has degraded,~~<sup>901</sup>
- (2) *coastal water* quality supports healthy ecosystems, natural habitats, water-based recreational activities, existing activities, and customary uses, including practices associated with *mahika kai* ~~mahika kai~~<sup>902</sup> and kaimoana,
- (3) the dynamic and interdependent natural biological and physical processes in the coastal environment are maintained or enhanced,
- (4) the diversity of indigenous coastal flora and fauna is maintained, and areas of representative of<sup>903</sup> significant areas of indigenous<sup>904</sup> *biodiversity* are protected and
- (5) *surf breaks* of national significance are protected,
- (6) the interconnectedness of wai Māori and wai tai is protected, and the effects of terrestrial and fresh water uses and activities on coastal waters and ecosystems, are recognised and understood, and<sup>905</sup>
- (7) the ongoing effects of climate change within the coastal environment are identified and planned for.<sup>906</sup>

---

<sup>898</sup> 00226.131 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>899</sup> 00226.131 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>900</sup> 00226.131 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>901</sup> 00226.131 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>902</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>903</sup> 00120.028 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

<sup>904</sup> 00137.049 DOC, 00230.046 Forest and Bird

<sup>905</sup> 00226.131 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>906</sup> 00226.131 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago, 00234.015 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

## **CE-02 – Public access and recreation ~~Maintaining or enhancing highly valued areas of the coastal environment~~<sup>907</sup>**

Public walking<sup>908</sup> access, and recreation opportunities, ~~and highly valued natural features and landscapes~~<sup>909</sup> in the coastal environment are maintained and ~~or~~<sup>910</sup> enhanced, and vehicle access is controlled.<sup>911</sup>

## **CE-03 – Natural character, features and landscapes**

Areas of natural character, are preserved and<sup>912</sup> natural features, and landscapes ~~and~~ (including seascapes)<sup>913</sup> within the coastal environment are protected from inappropriate activities, and restoration is encouraged where the values of these areas have been compromised.

## **CE-04 – Mana moana ~~Kāi Tahu associations with Otago's coastal environment~~<sup>914</sup>**

The enduring cultural relationship ~~association~~<sup>915</sup> of Kāi Tahu with Otago's coastal environment is recognised and provided for, and *mana whenua* are able to:

- (1) exercise their ~~rakatirataka~~ ~~kaitiaki~~ role, manaakitaka and their kaitiaki duty of care<sup>916</sup> within the coastal environment, and
- (2) engage in customary fishing and other *mahika kai*.<sup>917</sup>

## **CE-05 – Activities in the coastal environment**

Activities in the coastal environment:

- (1) make efficient use of space occupied in the *coastal marine area*,
- (2) are of a scale, density and design compatible with their location,
- (3) are only provided for within appropriate locations and limits acknowledging that some activities have a *functional need* to be located in the coastal environment<sup>918</sup>, and
- (4) maintain or enhance public access to and along the *coastal marine area*, including for customary uses, such as *mahika kai*<sup>919</sup>, except where public access needs to be restricted for reasons of health and safety or ecological or cultural sensitivity.<sup>920</sup>

<sup>907</sup> 00121.039 Ravensdown, 00230.047 Forest and Bird, 00239.057 Federated Farmers, 00306.027 Meridian Energy, 00124.015 Southern Inshore Fisheries.

<sup>908</sup> 00226.132 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>909</sup> 00121.039 Ravensdown, 00230.047 Forest and Bird, 00239.057 Federated Farmers, 00306.027 Meridian Energy, 00124.015 Southern Inshore Fisheries.

<sup>910</sup> 00226.132 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>911</sup> 00226.132 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>912</sup> 00226.133 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>913</sup> 00301.057 Port Otago

<sup>914</sup> 00226.134 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>915</sup> 00230.049 Forest and Bird

<sup>916</sup> 00226.134 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>917</sup> 00226.134 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>918</sup> 00315.021 Aurora Energy

<sup>919</sup> 00226.014, 00226.135 Kai Tahu ki Otago

<sup>920</sup> 00234.017 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

## Policies

### CE-P1A – Integrated management/ki uta ki tai

Implement an integrated approach to managing Otago’s coastal environment that:

- (1) recognises the interactions, ki uta ki tai, between the terrestrial *environment*, *fresh water*, and the *coastal marine area*, including the migration of fish species between *fresh water* and *coastal water*,
- (2) provides for the natural functioning of coastal processes at the physical interface between *land*, *fresh water*, and the *coastal water*,
- (3) ensures the *effects* of the use and development of *land* and *fresh water* maintain or enhance the health and well-being of the coastal environment, and
- (4) takes into account the ongoing *effects* of *climate change*.<sup>921</sup>

### **CE–P1 – Links with other chapters**

Recognise that:

- (1) the provisions of the ECO, EIT, and HAZ chapters apply within the coastal environment, except for the following provisions:
    - (a) ECO-P3 to ECO-P6 and associated methods,
    - (b) EIT-INF-P13 and associated methods,
    - (c) HAZ-NH-P1 to HAZ-NH- P4 and associated methods, and
  - (2) the provisions within the following chapters of this RPS apply in addition to the provisions within this chapter:
    - (a) MW – Mana whenua,
    - (b) IM – Integrated management,
    - (c) AIR – Air,
    - (d) LF – Land and freshwater,
    - (e) HCV – Heritage and historical values, and
    - (f) UFD – Urban form and development, and
  - (3) the provisions of the NFL – Natural features and landscapes chapter do not apply in the coastal environment.<sup>922</sup>
- ~~(1) coastal hazards must be identified in accordance with CE–P2(4) and managed in accordance with the HAZ–NH– Natural hazards section of this RPS;~~
- ~~(2) port activities must be managed in accordance with the TRAN – Transport section of this RPS; and~~
- ~~(3) *historic heritage* must be managed in accordance with the HCV – Historical and cultural values~~

---

<sup>921</sup> 00226.136 Kai Tahu ki Otago

<sup>922</sup> 00301.018 Port of Otago

section of this RPS.<sup>923</sup>

## CE-P2 – Identification

Identify the following in the coastal environment:

- (1) the landward extent of the coastal environment, recognising that the coastal environment includes:
  - (a) the *coastal marine area*,
  - (b) islands within the *coastal marine area*,
  - (c) areas where coastal processes, influences or qualities are significant, including coastal lakes, lagoons, tidal estuaries, saltmarshes, coastal wetlands, and the margins of these,
  - (d) areas at risk from coastal hazards as identified in HAZ-NH-P1A CE-P2(4),<sup>924</sup>
  - (e) coastal vegetation and the habitat of indigenous coastal species including migratory birds,
  - (f) elements and features that contribute to the natural character, landscape, visual qualities or *amenity values*,
  - (g) items of Kāi Tahu<sup>925</sup> cultural association<sup>926</sup> and *historic heritage* in the *coastal marine area* or on the coast,
  - (h) inter-related coastal marine and terrestrial systems, including the intertidal zone, and
  - (i) physical resources and built facilities, including *infrastructure*, that have modified the coastal environment,
- (2) areas of *water* quality in the *coastal marine area* that are considered to have deteriorated so that:
  - (a) it is having a significant adverse *effect* on:
    - (i) the health of *coastal water*, or<sup>927</sup>
    - (ii) ecosystems, and natural habitats, or
    - (iii) water-based recreational activities, or
  - (b) is restricting existing uses, such as:
    - (i) customary fisheries, including mātaimai reserves and taiāpure,
    - (ii) cultural activities such as *mahika kai*, including harvesting of kaimoana, or
    - (iii) aquaculture, and shellfish gathering, and cultural activities such as *mahika kai* and harvesting of kaimoana,<sup>928</sup>
- (3) areas of *coastal water* where *mana takata*<sup>929</sup> *whenua* have a particular interest, including *wāhi tupuna*, mātaimai and taiapure, and any aquaculture settlement areas gazetted under the Māori

---

<sup>923</sup> 00301.018 Port of Otago

<sup>924</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) of Schedule 1 of the RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00301.047 Port of Otago

<sup>925</sup> 00226.137 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>926</sup> 00226.137 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>927</sup> Clause 10 of Schedule 1 of the RMA

<sup>928</sup> 00226.138 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>929</sup> 00226.154 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement Act 2004, and<sup>930</sup>

- ~~(4) areas that are potentially affected by coastal hazards (including tsunami), giving priority to the identification of areas at high risk of being affected, and~~<sup>931</sup>
- (5) the nationally significant *surf breaks* at Karitāne ~~Karitane~~<sup>932</sup>, Papatowai, The Spit, and Whareakeke and ~~any regionally significant *surf breaks*.~~<sup>933</sup>

### **CE-P3 – Coastal water quality**

Manage water quality in the coastal environment by:

~~Coastal water quality is improved where it is considered to have deteriorated to the extent described within CE-P1(2), and otherwise managed, so that:~~<sup>934</sup>

- (1A) restoring coastal water quality where it is considered to have deteriorated to the extent described within CE-P2(2),<sup>935</sup>
- (1) maintaining or enhancing<sup>936</sup> healthy coastal ecosystems, indigenous<sup>937</sup> habitats provided by the coastal environment, *indigenous vegetation and fauna*,<sup>937</sup> and the migratory patterns of indigenous *coastal water species are maintained or enhanced,*<sup>938</sup>
- (2) sustaining Kāi Tahu relationships with and customary uses of *coastal water* ~~are sustained,~~<sup>939</sup>
- (3) maintaining or enhancing recreation opportunities and existing uses of *coastal water* ~~are maintained or enhanced, and~~<sup>940</sup>
- (4) ~~within identified areas where *mana whenua* have a particular interest, adverse effects on these areas and values are remedied or where remediation is not practicable, are mitigated.~~<sup>941</sup>
- (5) controlling<sup>942</sup> activities outside the coastal marine area that have an effect on coastal water quality,<sup>943</sup>
- (6) maintaining or enhancing water quality within areas of coastal water identified in CE-P2(3) where *mana whenua* have a particular cultural interest, and<sup>944</sup>
- (7) setting appropriate limits and targets for coastal water quality, including for ecosystem health, habitats of taoka species, sediment, contact recreation and safe kaimoana gathering.<sup>945</sup>

### **CE-P4 – Natural character**

Identify, preserve and restore the natural character of the coastal environment by:

<sup>930</sup> 00234.018 Te Runanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>931</sup> 00226.138 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago, 00234.019 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>932</sup> 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>933</sup> 00301.019 Port Otago

<sup>934</sup> 00226.138 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago, 00234.019 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>935</sup> 00226.014, 00226.138 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago, 00234.019 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>936</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.138 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>937</sup> DOC 00137.054

<sup>938</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.138 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>939</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.138 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>940</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.138 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>941</sup> 00226.138 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago, 00234.019 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>942</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.138 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>943</sup> 00230.053 Forest and Bird

<sup>944</sup> 00226.138 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago, 00234.019 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>945</sup> 00226.138 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

- (1) identifying areas and values of high and outstanding natural character which may include matters such as:
  - (a) natural elements, processes and patterns,
  - (b) biophysical, ecological, geological and geomorphological aspects,
  - (c) natural landforms such as headlands, peninsulas, cliffs, dunes, *wetlands*, estuaries, reefs, *freshwater* springs and *surf breaks*,
  - (d) the natural movement of *water* and sediment,
  - (e) the natural darkness of the night sky,
  - (f) places or areas that are wild or scenic,
  - (g) a range of natural character from pristine to modified,
  - (h) experiential attributes, including the sounds and smell of the sea, and their context or setting,
- (2) avoiding adverse *effects* on natural character in areas identified as having outstanding natural character,
- (3) avoiding significant adverse *effects* and avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse *effects* on natural character outside the areas in (2) above, and
- ~~(4) encouraging de-reclamation of redundant reclaimed *land* where it would restore the natural character and resources of the *coastal marine area* and provide for more public open space, and<sup>946</sup>~~
- (5) promoting *activities* and ~~restoration~~ projects that will restore or rehabilitate<sup>947</sup> natural character in the coastal environment where it has been reduced or lost.

#### **CE-P5 – Coastal indigenous *biodiversity***

Protect indigenous *biodiversity* in the coastal environment by:

- (1) identifying and avoiding adverse effects on the following ecosystems, vegetation types and areas:
  - (a) indigenous taxa that are listed as threatened or at risk in the New Zealand Threat Classification System lists,
  - (b) taxa that are listed by the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources as threatened,
  - (c) indigenous ecosystems and vegetation types in the coastal environment that are threatened or are naturally rare,
  - (d) habitats of indigenous species where the species are at the limit of their natural range, or are naturally rare,
  - (e) areas containing nationally significant examples of indigenous community types, and
  - (f) areas set aside for full or partial protection of indigenous *biodiversity* under other legislation, and

---

<sup>946</sup> 00226.139 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>947</sup> 00226.139 Kāi Tahu ki Otago



- (2) identifying and avoiding significant adverse *effects* and avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse *effects* on the following ecosystems, vegetation types and areas:
  - (a) areas of predominantly indigenous vegetation in the coastal environment,
  - (b) habitats in the coastal environment that are important during the vulnerable life stages of indigenous species,
  - (c) indigenous ecosystems and habitats that are only found in the coastal environment and are particularly vulnerable,
  - (d) areas sensitive to modification, including estuaries, lagoons, coastal *wetlands*, dunelands, intertidal zones, rocky reef systems, eelgrass and saltmarsh,
  - (e) habitats of indigenous species in the coastal environment that are important for recreational, commercial, traditional or cultural purposes,
  - (f) habitats, including areas and routes, important to migratory species, ~~and~~
  - (g) ecological corridors, and areas important for linking or maintaining biological values identified under this policy;<sup>z</sup>
  - (h) significant natural areas identified in accordance with APP2 that are not included in (1) above, and<sup>948</sup>
  - (i) indigenous species and ecosystems identified as taoka in accordance with ECO-M3 that are not included in (1) above.<sup>949</sup>

#### **CE-P6 – Natural features, and landscapes ~~and~~ (including seascapes)<sup>950</sup>**

Protect natural features, and landscapes ~~and~~ (including seascapes)<sup>951</sup> in the coastal environment by:

- (1) identifying their areas and values, at minimum by *land* typing, soil characterisation and landscape characterisation,<sup>952</sup> in accordance with APP9,
- (2) avoiding adverse *effects* of activities on outstanding natural features, and landscapes ~~or~~ (including seascapes),<sup>953</sup>
- (3) avoiding significant adverse *effects* and avoiding, remedying, or mitigating other adverse *effects* of activities on other natural features and natural landscapes ~~or~~ (including seascapes),<sup>954</sup> and
- (4) promoting restoration or enhancement of natural features, and landscapes ~~and~~ (including seascapes)<sup>955</sup> where the values of these areas ~~they~~<sup>956</sup> have been reduced or lost.

#### **CE-P7 – Surf breaks**

Manage Otago's nationally ~~and regionally significant~~<sup>957</sup> significant surf breaks so that:

<sup>948</sup> 00137.055 DOC, 00120.042 Yellow-eyed Penguin Society

<sup>949</sup> 00137.055 DOC, 00120.042 Yellow-eyed Penguin Society

<sup>950</sup> 00301.057 Port Otago

<sup>951</sup> 00301.057 Port Otago

<sup>952</sup> 00230.056 Forest & Bird, 00122.018 Sanford

<sup>953</sup> 00301.057 Port Otago

<sup>954</sup> 00301.057 Port Otago

<sup>955</sup> 00301.057 Port Otago

<sup>956</sup> 00223.071 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>957</sup> 00301.019 Port Otago

- (1) nationally significant *surf breaks* are protected by avoiding adverse *effects* on the *surf breaks*, including on access to and use and enjoyment of them, ~~and~~
- (2) ~~the values of and access to regionally significant *surf breaks* are maintained.~~<sup>958</sup>

#### CE-P8 – Public access

~~Maintain or enhance~~ Manage public walking and vehicle access to, and along and adjacent to the coastal marine area by; ~~unless restricting public access is necessary:~~

- (1A) maintaining or enhancing public walking access,
- (1B) controlling vehicle access, and
- (1C) restricting public walking and vehicle access where necessary:
  - ~~(1)(a)~~ (1)(a) to protect public health and safety,
  - ~~(2)(b)~~ (2)(b) to protect areas of significant *natural areas* indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna,
  - ~~(3)(c)~~ (3)(c) to protect dunes, estuaries and other sensitive natural areas or habitats,
  - ~~(4)(d)~~ (4)(d) to protect places or areas of special or outstanding containing *historic heritage* of regional or national significance,
  - ~~(5)(e)~~ (5)(e) to protect places or areas of significance to *takata mana whenua*, including wāhi tapu, and wāhi tupuna and wāhi taoka,
  - ~~(6)(f)~~ (6)(f) for defence purposes in accordance with the Defence Act 1990,
  - ~~(7)(g)~~ (7)(g) for temporary activities or special events, or
  - ~~(8)(h)~~ (8)(h) to ensure a level of security consistent with the operational requirements of a lawfully established activity.<sup>959</sup>

#### CE-P9 – Activities on *land* within the coastal environment

The strategic and co-ordinated use of *land* within the coastal environment is achieved by:

- (1) encouraging the consolidation of existing coastal settlements and *urban areas* where this will contribute to the avoidance or mitigation of sprawling or sporadic patterns of settlement and urban growth, avoiding sprawling or sporadic patterns of subdivision, use and development,<sup>960</sup>
- (2) considering the rate at which built development should be enabled to provide for the reasonably foreseeable needs of population growth without compromising the values of the coastal environment,
- (2A) recognising and providing for the functional needs and operational needs of infrastructure,<sup>961</sup>
- (3) recognising the importance of the provision of *infrastructure*, and food production, and pastoral farming activities<sup>962</sup> to the social, economic and cultural well-being of people and communities,

<sup>958</sup> 00301.019 Port Otago

<sup>959</sup> 00226.143 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago, 00230.058 Forest and Bird

<sup>960</sup> 00139.071 DCC

<sup>961</sup> 00305.013, 00305.014, 00305.015 Waka Kotahi

<sup>962</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential to 00021.002 Matakanui Gold Limited, 00016.009 Alluvium Limited and Stoney Creek Mining, 00017.007 Danny Walker and others, 00226.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

- (4) requiring development to be set back from the *coastal marine area* and other *coastal water* where practicable and reasonable, to protect the natural character, open space, public access and *amenity values* of the coastal environment, maintaining or enhancing public access to the coastal environment, and<sup>963</sup>
- (5) considering where activities that maintain the character of the existing built environment should be encouraged, and where activities resulting in a change in character would be acceptable,
- (6) taking into account the ongoing *effects of climate change and coastal hazard risk*.<sup>964</sup>
- (7) enabling mana whenua to provide for their cultural and social needs for papakāinga, marae and associated developments and make appropriate provision for them.

### **CE-P10 – Activities within the *coastal marine area***

Use and development in the *coastal marine area* must:

- (1) enable multiple uses of the *coastal marine area* wherever reasonable and practicable, and<sup>965</sup>
- (2) maintain or improve the health,<sup>966</sup> integrity, form, function and *resilience* of the *coastal marine area*, or and<sup>967</sup>
- (3) have a *functional need*<sup>968</sup> or *operational need* to be located in the *coastal marine area*, or
- (4) have a public benefit or opportunity for public recreation that cannot practicably be located outside the *coastal marine area*.

### **CE-P11 – Aquaculture**

Provide for the development and operation of *aquaculture activities* ~~within appropriate locations and limits,~~ taking into account policies CE-P3 to CE-P12, and<sup>969</sup>:

- (1) the need for high quality *water* required for an *aquaculture activity*,
- (2) the need for *land*-based facilities and infrastructure required to support the operation of *aquaculture activities*, and
- (3) the potential social, economic and cultural benefits associated with the operation and development of *aquaculture activities*.

### **CE-P12 – Reclamation and de-reclamation**<sup>970</sup>

Manage reclamation and de-reclamation by:<sup>971</sup>

- (1A) Avoiding<sup>972</sup> *reclamation* in the *coastal marine area*, unless:

<sup>963</sup> 00139.071 DCC

<sup>964</sup> 00139.071 DCC

<sup>965</sup> 00226.145 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>966</sup> 00226.145 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>967</sup> 00315.025 Aurora Energy

<sup>968</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>969</sup> 00137.057 DOC

<sup>970</sup> 00226.147 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>971</sup> 00226.147 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>972</sup> 00226.147 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

- (1a) *land* outside the *coastal marine area* is not available for the proposed activity,
  - (2b) the activity to be established on the reclamation can only occur immediately adjacent to the *coastal marine area*,
  - (3c) there are no practicable alternative methods of providing for the activity, and
  - (4d) the reclamation will provide significant regional or national benefit, and
- (1B) encouraging de-reclamation of redundant reclaimed *land* where it would restore natural character, resources of the *coastal marine area*, and/or provide for more public open space.<sup>973</sup>

### CE-P13 – Rakatirataka and ~~K~~kaitiakitaka

Recognise and give practical effect to Kāi Tahu rakatirataka and provide for<sup>974</sup> the role of Kāi Tahu as kaitiaki of the coastal environment by:

- (1) facilitating partnership with, and actively<sup>975</sup> involving *mana whenua* in decision making and management processes in respect of the coast,
- (2) identifying, protecting, and improving where degraded, sites, areas and values of importance to Kāi Tahu within the coastal environment, and managing these in accordance with tikaka,
- (3) providing for customary uses, including *mahika kai* and the harvesting of kaimoana,
- (4) incorporating the impact of activities on customary fisheries, mātaimai reserves and taiāpure<sup>976</sup> in decision making, and
- (5) incorporating mātauraka Māori ~~Maori~~<sup>977</sup> in the management and monitoring of activities in the coastal environment.

## Methods

### CE-M1A – Mana whenua/mana moana involvement

Otago Regional Council must partner with Kāi Tahu in coastal management by:

- (1) actively identifying and pursuing opportunities for *mana whenua* to be involved in coastal governance, including through use of available mechanisms such as transfers of functions (under section 33 of the RMA 1991) and supporting the establishment of mātaimai reserves and taiāpure,
- (2) implementing actions to foster the development of *mana whenua* capacity to contribute to the Council's decision-making processes,
- (3) supporting *mana whenua* initiatives that contribute to maintaining or improving the health and well-being of coastal water and ecosystems, and
- (4) providing relevant information to *mana whenua* for the purposes of (1), (2), and (3).<sup>978</sup>

<sup>973</sup> 00226.147 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>974</sup> 00226.148 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>975</sup> 00226.148 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>976</sup> 00226.148 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>977</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>978</sup> 00226.156 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

## CE–M1 – Identifying the coastal environment

Local authorities must:

- (1) ~~no later than 31 May 2023,~~<sup>979</sup> work collaboratively, including with local authorities in neighbouring regions,<sup>980</sup> to:
  - (a) identify the landward extent of the coastal environment, in accordance with CE-P2(1),
  - (b) map the landward extent of the coastal environment area in the relevant *regional plans*<sup>981</sup> and *district plans*.

## CE–M2 – Identifying other areas

Local authorities must work collaboratively, with Kāi Tahu<sup>982</sup> and local authorities in neighbouring regions,<sup>983</sup> together to:

- (1) identify areas and values of high and outstanding natural character within their jurisdictions in accordance with CE–P4(1), map the areas and describe their values in the relevant *regional plans*<sup>984</sup> and *district plans*, and identify their capacity to accommodate change through use or development while protecting the values that contribute to the natural character of the area being considered high or outstanding,
- (2) identify, at an appropriate scale,<sup>985</sup> areas and values of outstanding natural features, and landscapes, ~~and (including seascapes)~~ {in the coastal environment} within their jurisdictions in accordance with CE–P6(1), map the areas and describe their values in the relevant *regional plans*<sup>986</sup> and *district plans*, and identify their capacity to accommodate change through use or development while protecting the values that contribute to the natural features, and landscapes and (including seascapes) being considered outstanding,
- (3) identify areas and values of indigenous *biodiversity* within their jurisdictions in accordance with CE–P5, map the areas and describe their values in the relevant *regional* and *district plans*, and
- (4) prioritise identification under (1) – (3) in areas that are:
  - ~~(a)~~—likely to face development or growth pressure over the life of this RPS, ~~or~~<sup>987</sup>
  - ~~(b)~~—likely to contain outstanding natural character areas, outstanding natural features or landscapes, and areas of significant indigenous biodiversity, including the areas in the table below.

*Table 2: Areas likely to contain significant values*<sup>988</sup>

---

<sup>979</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>980</sup> 00013.009 ECan

<sup>981</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>982</sup> 00226.149 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>983</sup> 00013.010 ECan

<sup>984</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>985</sup> 00122.018 Sanford

<sup>986</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>987</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00301.025 Port Otago

<sup>988</sup> 00301.025 Port Otago

<p>Oamaru Harbour Breakwater  Moeraki Beach  Moeraki Peninsula  Shag Point &amp; Shag River Estuary  Stony Creek Estuary  Pleasant River Estuary  Hawksbury Inlet  Waikouaiti River Estuary  Karitane Headland  Puketeraki  Blueskin Bay  Orokonui Inlet  Mapoutahi  Purakanui Inlet  Aramoana  Otago Harbour Historic Walls  Otakou &amp; Taiaroa Head  Pipikaretu Point</p>	<p>Te Whakarekaiwi  Papanui Inlet  Hoopers Inlet  Kaikorai Estuary  Brighton  Akatore Creek Estuary  Tokomairiro Estuary  Wangaloa  Clutha River Mata-au, Matau Branch  Nugget Point  Surat Bay  Catlins Lake Estuary  Jacks Bay  Waiheke Beach  Tahakopa Estuary  Oyster Bay  Tautuku Estuary  Waipati Estuary &amp; Kinakina Island</p>
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### CE-M3 – Regional plans

Otago Regional Council must prepare or amend and maintain its *regional plans* no later than 31 December 2028 to:

- (1) map areas of deteriorated *water* quality in the coastal environment, in accordance with CE-P2(2) and CE-P2(3),<sup>989</sup>
- (1A) identify, manage, and improve where degraded, areas of coastal water where *mana whenua* have a particular interest, including *wāhi tūpuna*, statutory acknowledgement areas, tōpuni and *nohoaka* identified in the NTCSA, and customary fisheries,
- (1B) set water quality limits and targets for *coastal waters* in accordance with CE-P3,<sup>990</sup>
- (2) map the areas and characteristics of, and access to, *surf breaks* of national significance, nationally<sup>991</sup> and regionally significant *surf breaks*,<sup>992</sup>
- (3) require development to be set back from the *coastal marine area* and other *coastal water*<sup>993</sup> where practicable to protect the natural character, open space, public access and *amenity values* of the coastal environment,
- (4) manage the *discharge of contaminants* into *coastal water* to achieve limits or targets for water quality<sup>994</sup> by:
  - (a) using the smallest *mixing zone* necessary to achieve the required *water* quality standards only enabling the use of small *mixing zones* before the *water* quality standards need to be met<sup>995</sup> in the *receiving environment*; and minimising<sup>996</sup> *adverse effects* on the life-supporting capacity of *water* within any mixing zone,

<sup>989</sup> 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>990</sup> 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>991</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>992</sup> 00301.019 Port Otago

<sup>993</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00139.071 DCC

<sup>994</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>995</sup> 00139.076 DCC

<sup>996</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

- (b) prohibiting any new ~~the~~<sup>997</sup> *discharge* of untreated human *sewage* directly to water in the coastal environment,
- (ba) requiring the implementation of methods to progressively reduce the volume and frequency of existing *discharges* of untreated human *sewage* from reticulated *wastewater* systems in the event of a system failure or overloading the system, including by minimising *stormwater* inflows and infiltration into *wastewater* systems,<sup>998</sup>
- (bb) encouraging methods and actions to reduce *contaminant discharges* at source,<sup>999</sup>
- (c) prohibiting the *discharge* of treated human *sewage* directly to water in the coastal environment unless:
- (i) there has been adequate consideration of alternative methods, sites and routes for undertaking the *discharge*, and
- (ii) it can be demonstrated that the proposal has been informed by consultation with *tangata whenua* and the affected community, and
- (d) reducing the *discharge* of sediment by:
- (i) requiring that *subdivision*, use, or development will not increase sedimentation of the *coastal marine area* or other *coastal water*,
- (ii) controlling the impacts of vegetation removal on sedimentation including the impacts of harvesting *plantation forestry*, and
- (iii) reducing sediment loadings in runoff and in *stormwater* systems through controls on *land* use activities, and
- (e) designing, installing, operating and maintaining new reticulated *wastewater* systems to avoiding cross-contamination between *wastewater sewage* and *stormwater* systems where new systems are proposed and remedying cross-contamination where they it currently exists in established systems, and<sup>1000</sup>
- (f) having particular regard to:
- (i) the sensitivity of the receiving environment,
- (ii) the nature of the *contaminants* to be *discharged*, the *contaminant* concentration thresholds not to be exceeded to achieve the required *water* quality in the receiving environment, and the risks if that concentration of *contaminants* is exceeded,
- (iii) the capacity of the receiving environment to assimilate the *contaminants*, and
- (iv) avoiding significant adverse *effects* on ecosystems and habitats after reasonable mixing,
- (5) control the use and development of the *coastal marine area*, in order to:
- (a) manage *coastal water* quality; preserve and restore the<sup>1001</sup> natural character; and protect<sup>1002</sup> natural landscapes, features, and landscapes and (including seascapes)<sup>1003</sup>

<sup>997</sup> 00139.076 DCC

<sup>998</sup> 00139.076 DCC

<sup>999</sup> 00510.020 Fuel Companies

<sup>1000</sup> 00139.076 DCC

<sup>1001</sup> 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1002</sup> 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1003</sup> 00301.057 Port Otago

wāhi tūpuna and indigenous *biodiversity* of the *coastal marine area* in accordance with CE-P3, CE-P4, CE-P5, and CE-P6 and HCV-WT-P2<sup>1004</sup>, and

- (b) manage Otago's surf breaks of national significance nationally<sup>1005</sup> and ~~regionally significant surf breaks~~<sup>1006</sup> in accordance with CE-P7,
- (6) include provisions requiring the adoption of a precautionary approach to assessing the *effects* of activities in the coastal environment in accordance with IM-P15<sup>1007</sup> where:
- (a) there is scientific uncertainty or a lack of relevant knowledge<sup>1008</sup>, or
- (b) there are potentially significant or irreversible adverse *effects*, or
- (c) coastal resources are potentially vulnerable to effects from climate change,<sup>1009</sup>
- (7) identify areas that may be<sup>1010</sup> appropriate for aquaculture ~~and the forms and limits associated with providing for aquaculture that will enable achievement of objectives CE-O1 to CE-O5~~<sup>1011</sup>,
- (8) provide for walking access to, ~~and along, and adjacent to~~<sup>1012</sup> the *coastal marine area* in accordance with Policy 19 of the NZCPS,
- (9) control vehicle access to, ~~and along, and adjacent to~~<sup>1013</sup> the *coastal marine area* in accordance with Policy 20 of the NZCPS,
- (10) manage reclamation and de-reclamation<sup>1014</sup> activities in accordance with CE-P12, and when *reclamation* is considered suitable in accordance with CE-P12, have particular regard to the matters listed in Policy 10(2) and (3) of the NZCPS,
- (11) require stock to be excluded from the *coastal marine area*, adjoining intertidal areas and ~~other~~ coastal water bodies<sup>1015</sup> and riparian margins in the coastal environment, and
- (12) provide for and encourage activities undertaken for the primary purpose of enhancing coastal water quality, coastal habitats and ecosystems, customary fisheries, mahika kai and kaimoana activities, and<sup>1016</sup> restoring natural character, features, and landscapes ~~and (including seascapes)~~<sup>1017</sup> in accordance with CE-P3,<sup>1018</sup> CE-P4, CE-P5, and<sup>1019</sup> CE-P6, and CE-P13<sup>1020</sup>, and
- (13) identify any aquaculture settlement areas gazetted under the Māori Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement Act 2004.<sup>1021</sup>

## **CE-M4 – District plans**

*Territorial authorities* must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* to:

<sup>1004</sup> 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1005</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1006</sup> 00301.026 Port Otago

<sup>1007</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00137.042 DOC, 00014.022 John Highton

<sup>1008</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00137.042 DOC, 00014.022 John Highton

<sup>1009</sup> 00230.063 Forest and Bird

<sup>1010</sup> 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1011</sup> 00137.057 DOC

<sup>1012</sup> Consequential amendment to 00230.058 Forest and Bird

<sup>1013</sup> Consequential amendment to 00230.058 Forest and Bird

<sup>1014</sup> 00226.147 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1015</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1016</sup> 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1017</sup> 00301.057 Port Otago

<sup>1018</sup> 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1019</sup> 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1020</sup> 00226.153 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1021</sup> 00234.022 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu



- (1) control the location, density and form of *subdivision* in the coastal environment (outside the *coastal marine area*),
- (2) control the location, scale and form of *buildings* and *structures* in the coastal environment (outside the *coastal marine area*),
- (3) control the location and scale of *earthworks, mining*,<sup>1022</sup> and vegetation planting, modification and removal in the coastal environment (outside the *coastal marine area*),
- (3A) achieve the integrated management of, and control over, land use activities which could cause direct or indirect effects on the *coastal marine area*,<sup>1023</sup> in accordance with CE-P1A,<sup>1024</sup>
- (4) require *resource consent* for uses of *land* on reclamations that have occurred after the date this RPS becomes operative,
- (5) provide for the establishment of *esplanade reserves* and *esplanade strips*,
- (6) include provisions requiring the adoption of a precautionary approach to assessing the *effects* of activities in the coastal environment in accordance with IM-P615<sup>1025</sup> where:
  - (a) there is scientific uncertainty or a lack of relevant knowledge<sup>1026</sup>, or
  - (b) there are potentially significant or irreversible adverse *effects*,
  - (c) coastal resources are potentially vulnerable to the effects of climate change.<sup>1027</sup>
- (7) provide for walking access to, ~~and along,~~ and adjacent to<sup>1028</sup> the *coastal marine area* in accordance with Policy 19 of the NZCPS,
- (8) control vehicle access to, ~~and along,~~ and adjacent to<sup>1029</sup> the *coastal marine area* in accordance with Policy 20 of the NZCPS,
- (9) recognise ~~takata mana~~<sup>1030</sup> *whenua* needs for *papakāiika*, marae and associated developments within the coastal environment and make appropriate provision for them,
- (10) provide access to surf breaks of national significance nationally<sup>1031</sup> ~~and regionally significant surf breaks~~<sup>1032</sup>, and
- (11) provide for and encourage activities undertaken for the primary purpose of enhancing coastal water quality, coastal habitats and ecosystems, customary fisheries and other *mahika kai* activities restoring natural character, features, or landscapes in accordance with CE-P1, CE-P3, CE-P4, and CE-P6 and CE-P13<sup>1033</sup>.

<sup>1022</sup> 00226.154 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1023</sup> 00137.059 DOC, 00226.154 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1024</sup> 00226.154 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1025</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00137.042 DOC, 00014.022 John Highton

<sup>1026</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00137.042 DOC, 00014.022 John Highton

<sup>1027</sup> 00230.064 Forest and Bird

<sup>1028</sup> Consequential amendment to 00230.058 Forest and Bird

<sup>1029</sup> Consequential amendment to 00230.058 Forest and Bird

<sup>1030</sup> 00226.154 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1031</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1032</sup> 00301.019 Port Otago

<sup>1033</sup> 00226.154 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

## CE–M5 – Other incentives and mechanisms

*Local authorities shall* ~~are encouraged to~~<sup>1034</sup> consider the use of other mechanisms or incentives to assist in achieving Policies CE–P2 to CE–P13~~2~~<sup>1035</sup>, including:

- (1) identifying areas and opportunities within the coastal environment for restoration or rehabilitation,
- (2) identifying opportunities to enhance or restore public walking access in accordance with Policy 19(c) of the NZCPS,
- (3) promoting the removal of abandoned or redundant structures that have no heritage, amenity or reuse value,
- (4) funding assistance for restoration projects (for example, through Otago Regional Council’s ECO Fund),
- (5) development or design guidelines (for example, colour palettes for *structures* in the coastal environment),
- (6) rating differentials for *land* that is protected due to its status as a high or outstanding natural character area,
- (7) education and advice,
- (8) research relevant to the *effects* of activities on:
  - (a) coastal network *infrastructure*,
  - (b) coastal values,
  - (c) coastal hazards,
  - (d) riparian vegetation cover or any *land* cover that contributes to supporting coastal values or mitigating coastal hazards, or
  - (e) areas particularly sensitive to *land* use changes, or
  - (f) coastal water quality, or<sup>1036</sup>
  - (g) coastal habitats and ecosystems,<sup>1037</sup>
- (9) facilitating the restoration, rehabilitation or creation of coastal habitats, particularly when it:
  - (a) encourages the natural regeneration of indigenous species,
  - (b) buffers or links ecosystems, habitats and areas of significance that contribute to ecological corridors, ~~or~~
  - (c) maintains or enhances the provision of indigenous ecosystem services, ~~and~~
  - (d) benefits *mahika kai* and kaimoana species or customary fisheries areas, or<sup>1038</sup>
  - (e) will lead to the improvement of areas of deteriorated water quality, and<sup>1039</sup>
- (10) bylaws controlling vehicle access to and along the *coastal marine area* in accordance with

<sup>1034</sup> 00230.065 Forest and Bird, 00137.060 DOC, and 00239.064 Federated Farmers

<sup>1035</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1036</sup> 00226.155 Kai Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>1037</sup> 00226.155 Kai Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>1038</sup> 00226.155 Kai Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>1039</sup> 00226.155 Kai Tahu Ki Otago

Policy 20 of the NZCPS.

### **CE–M6 – Monitoring**

Otago Regional Council shall:

- (1) establish a long-term monitoring programme for coastal waters and coastal ecosystems that incorporates cultural health monitoring,
- (2) record information (including monitoring data) about the state of coastal waters and coastal ecosystems and the challenges to their health and well-being,
- (3) regularly prepare reports on the matters in (1) and (2) and publish those reports, and
- (4) take action where the results of monitoring show that this is necessary to achieve the objectives of this policy statement.<sup>1040</sup>

### **Explanation**

#### **CE–E1 – Explanation**

The provisions in this chapter recognise that the coastal environment is a finite resource with a range of values that need to be preserved. The policies within the chapter are designed to protect the coastal environment from inappropriate activities. The coastal environment is also recognised as dynamic and the policies, in association with others in the ORPS, seek to prevent increasing *risks* to life, *infrastructure* and property.

The policies in this chapter require the identification and management of a range of values within the coastal environment. They also set out a number of environmental bottom lines that give effect to the requirements of the NZCPS. Provided these environmental bottom lines are achieved, the chapter also acknowledges that there are a range of activities including port activities, aquaculture, and appropriately designed and located *subdivision*, use and development that can be undertaken within the coastal environment. The policies also provide specific direction on how activities in the coastal environment are to be undertaken. The combination balance<sup>1041</sup> of protective and enabling policies within this chapter are designed to implement the objectives by requiring that activities in the coastal environment are undertaken in a manner that preserves or restores the values of the coastal environment.

Kāi Tahu tūpuna had an extensive knowledge of the coastal environment and weather patterns, passed from generation to generation. This knowledge continues to be held by whānau and hapū and is regarded as a taoka. The seasonal lifestyle of Kāi Tahu led to their dependence on the resources of the coast. This enduring relationship with the coastal environment, arising from long whakapapa associations and the use of tikaka to guide resource management practices, is manifested in the rakatirataka and *kaitiakitaka* responsibilities that Kāi Tahu hold as *mana whenua*.

Coastal waters can be influenced by activities which are undertaken beyond the coastal environment. This interconnectedness between coastal and freshwater environments means provisions contained within the LF – Land and freshwater chapter may also need to be considered to manage the coastal environment.<sup>1042</sup>

Some of the policies in the NZCPS are highly prescriptive and will be most effectively implemented

---

<sup>1040</sup> 00226.157 Kāi Tahu Ki Otago

<sup>1041</sup> 00230.066 Forest and Bird

<sup>1042</sup> 00230.066 Forest and Bird

through *regional* and *district plans*. In those cases, the policies in this RPS have included additional region-specific context where that is possible, but have not sought to restate the content of NZCPS policies with the expectation that those policies will be implemented by the *regional* and *district plans*.

In addition to the policies in this chapter, the values of the coastal environment are recognised and provided for in a number of other the following chapters of the ORPS, as set out in CE-P1. ~~where they provide direction on the management of the coastal environment or activities within the coastal environment:~~

- ~~ECO – Ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity~~
- ~~LF – Land and freshwater~~
- ~~EIT – Energy, infrastructure and transport~~
- ~~HCV – Historical and cultural values~~
- ~~NFL – Natural features and landscapes~~
- ~~HAZ – Hazards and risks~~<sup>1043</sup>

## Principal reasons

### CE-PR1 – Principal reasons

The coastal environment includes the *coastal marine area*, islands within the *coastal marine area* and the area landward of the line of mean high-water springs. The landward extent of the coastal environment is determined by the natural and physical elements, features and processes set out in Policy 1(2) of the NZCPS. The importance of the coastal environment is reflected in the statutory resource management framework, particularly as identified in sections 6 and 7 of the RMA ~~1991~~<sup>1044</sup> and as set out in the NZCPS.

A number of activities occur within or affect the coastal environment including urban development, recreational activities, transport infrastructure, port activities, *infrastructure*, energy generation and transmission, food production and other farming activities, *plantation forestry*, rural industry and *mineral* extraction. These activities can be important contributors to the existing and future health and well-being of communities. However, poorly located or managed activities can have adverse *effects* that compromise the values of the coastal environment such as natural character, biophysical processes, *water quality*, *surf breaks*, indigenous *biodiversity* and natural landscapes.

The coastal environment is highly valued by Kāi Tahu *mana whenua*, with a number of areas in the coastal environment recognised in statutory acknowledgments in the NTCSA 1998. The marine environment is a moving force, a reminder of the power of Takaroa. The *coastal waters* and processes were integral to the way of life *tūpuna* enjoyed, and the coastal environment supports significant *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>1045</sup>/*kaimoana* resources and *wāhi tūpuna*. This environment was traditionally important for settlement and travel and continues to provide for settlement and *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>1046</sup> and fisheries resources. *Kaimoana* is essential to coastal iwi and hapū relationships with the *environment* and in particular as part of the *tikaka* of food gathering and as indicators of the health of coastal environments.

The *coastal waters* are a *receiving environment* for *freshwater*, gravels, sediment and *contaminants* from the terrestrial landscape - of particular concern are the significant *discharges* of sediments, transported by *rivers* and waterways, that have a smothering effect on the benthic systems of the

---

<sup>1043</sup> 00301.027 Port Otago, 00230.066 Forest and Bird

<sup>1044</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1045</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1046</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

coastal area, including the important kelp beds. The interconnection of the *land* and sea environments is central to the *ki uta ki tai* ('mountains to the sea') philosophy. This interconnection requires careful consideration in managing the *effects of land* use activities.

Other chapters of the Regional Policy Statement are also relevant for managing the coastal environment as land-based activities can have a significant *effect* on the health of the marine environment. Sediment, *contaminants* and litter that are carried by waterways or pipes into the sea affect *water* quality and the ecological health of the coastal environment.

Implementation of the provisions in this chapter will occur primarily through *regional plans*<sup>1047</sup> and *district plan* provisions, however *local authorities* may also choose to adopt additional non-regulatory methods to support the achievement of the objectives.

## Anticipated environmental results

- CE–AER1** The values of the coastal environment are not adversely affected or lost because of inappropriate uses of the *natural and physical resources* in the coastal environment.
- CE–AER2** There is no reduction in the extent of identified areas of high and outstanding natural character in the coastal environment.
- CE–AER3** Areas where natural character has been reduced or lost are restored.
- CE–AER4** There is an improvement in the quality of *water* in areas identified as having deteriorated *water* quality.
- CE–AER5** The quality of *coastal water* supports healthy coastal ecosystems and provides for contact recreation and customary uses.
- CE–AER6** New building and development in the coastal environment is consistent with the character of the area and avoids increasing the or minimises<sup>1048</sup> risks from *natural hazards* to people and communities.
- CE–AER7** The public have improved access to, along, and adjacent to the *coastal marine area*.
- CE–AER8** The mauri of the coastal environment is protected, and restored where it has been degraded.<sup>1049</sup>
- CE–AER9** Customary uses, including practices associated with *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>1050</sup> and kaimoana, are supported, and *mana whenua* exercise their kaitiaki role within the coastal environment.<sup>1051</sup>

---

<sup>1047</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1048</sup> 00239.067 Federated Farmers

<sup>1049</sup> 00223.077 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>1050</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1051</sup> 00223.077 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

# LF – Land and freshwater

## LF–WAI – Te Mana o te Wai

### Objectives

#### LF–WAI–O1 – Te Mana o te Wai

The mauri of<sup>1052</sup> Otago's *water bodies* and their health and well-being ~~is~~ are<sup>1053</sup> protected, and restored where ~~it is they are~~<sup>1054</sup> degraded, so that the mauri of those water bodies is protected<sup>1055</sup>, and the management of *land* and *water* recognises and reflects that:

- (1) *water* is the foundation and source of all life – na te wai ko te hauora o ngā mea katoa,
- (2) there is an integral kinship relationship between water and Kāi Tahu whānui, and this relationship endures through time, connecting past, present and future,
- (3) each *water body* has a unique whakapapa and characteristics,
- (4) fresh<sup>1056</sup> *water*, ~~and~~ *land*, and coastal water<sup>1057</sup> have a connectedness that supports and perpetuates life, ~~and~~
- (4A) protecting the health and well-being of water protects the wider environment,<sup>1058</sup>
- (5) Kāi Tahu exercise rakatirataka, manaakitaka and their *kaitiakitaka* duty of care and attention over wai and all the life it supports, and
- (6) all people and communities have a responsibility to exercise stewardship, care, and respect in the management of fresh water.<sup>1059</sup>

### Policies

#### LF–WAI–P1 – Prioritisation

In all decision-making affecting management of<sup>1060</sup> *fresh water* in Otago, prioritise:

- (1) first, the health and well-being of *water bodies* and *freshwater ecosystems*, (te hauora o te wai) and the contribution of this to<sup>1061</sup> the health and well-being of the environment (te hauora o te taiao),

<sup>1052</sup> FPI024.015 DairyNZ, FPI009.003 COWA

<sup>1053</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment

<sup>1054</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment

<sup>1055</sup> FPI043.051 OWRUG

<sup>1056</sup> FPI019.003 Fonterra, FPI030.015 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1057</sup> FPI019.003 Fonterra, FPI032.014 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, FPI030.015 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI044.005 DOC, FPI042.008 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>1058</sup> FPI043.051 OWRUG, FPI019.003 Fonterra

<sup>1059</sup> FPI019.003 Fonterra, FPI037.012 Fish and Game, FPI032.014 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, FPI030.015 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI044.005 DOC

<sup>1060</sup> FPI024.016 DairyNZ, FPI027.016 Contact, FPI012.003, FPI019.004 Fonterra, FPI012.003 Minister for the Environment, FPI017.004 Ravensdown, FPI021.002 Ballance

<sup>1061</sup> FPI030.016 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

together with<sup>1062</sup> and the exercise of *mana whenua* to uphold these,<sup>1063</sup>

- (2) second, the health ~~and well-being~~<sup>1064</sup> needs of people, (te hauora o te tangata);<sup>1065</sup> interacting with *water* through ingestion (such as *drinking water* and consuming ~~harvested~~ resources harvested from the *water body*)<sup>1066</sup> and immersive activities (such as harvesting resources and primary contact bathing<sup>1067</sup>), and
- (3) third, the ability of people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural well-being, now and in the future.

### LF-WAI-P2 – Mana whakahaere

Recognise and give practical effect to Kāi Tahu rākatirataka in respect of *fresh water* by:

- (1) facilitating partnership with, and the active involvement of, *mana whenua* in *freshwater* management and decision-making processes,
- (2) sustaining the environmental, social, cultural and economic relationships of Kāi Tahu with *water bodies*,
- (3) providing for a range of customary uses, including *mahika kai* ~~*mahika kai*~~<sup>1068</sup>, specific to each *water body*, ~~and~~
- (4) incorporating mātauraka into decision making, management and monitoring processes, ~~and~~
- (5) managing wai and its connections with whenua in a holistic and interconnected way – ki uta ki tai.<sup>1069</sup>

### LF-WAI-P3 – Integrated management/ki uta ki tai

Manage the use of *fresh water* and *land* ~~in accordance with tikaka and kawa~~, using an integrated approach that is consistent with tikaka and kawa,<sup>1070</sup> that:

- (1) sustains and, to the greatest extent practicable, restores or improves:<sup>1071</sup>
  - (a) recognises and sustains<sup>1072</sup> the natural<sup>1073</sup> connections and interactions between *water bodies* (large and small, surface and ground, fresh and coastal, permanently flowing, intermittent and ephemeral),
  - (~~2b~~) sustains and, wherever possible, restores<sup>1074</sup> the natural<sup>1075</sup> connections and interactions between *land* and *water*, from the mountains to the sea,

<sup>1062</sup> FPI017.004 Ravensdown, FPI021.002 Ballance

<sup>1063</sup> In matters of mana, the associated spiritual and cultural responsibilities connect natural resources and *mana whenua* in a kinship relationship that is reciprocal and stems from the time of creation.

<sup>1064</sup> FPI016.011 Meridian, FPI019.004 Fonterra

<sup>1065</sup> FPI017.004 Ravensdown

<sup>1066</sup> FPI030.016 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI017.004 Ravensdown, FPI045.006 Forest and Bird, FPI027.016 Contact

<sup>1067</sup> FPI017.004 Ravensdown, FPI027.016 Contact

<sup>1068</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1069</sup> 00234.026 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>1070</sup> 00235.080 OWRUG, FS00226.362 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FS00234.164 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>1071</sup> 00306.032 Meridian

<sup>1072</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00306.032 Meridian

<sup>1073</sup> 00026.161 Moutere Station

<sup>1074</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00306.032 Meridian

<sup>1075</sup> 00026.161 Moutere Station

~~(3c)~~ sustains and, wherever possible, restores<sup>1076</sup> the habitats of *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>1077</sup> and indigenous species, including taoka species associated with the *water bodies*,  
~~body~~,<sup>1078</sup>

- (4) manages the effects of the use and development of land to maintain or enhance the health and well-being of *freshwater*, ~~and coastal water and associated ecosystems~~,<sup>1079</sup>
- (5) encourages the coordination and sequencing of regional or urban growth to ensure it is sustainable,
- (6) has regard to foreseeable *climate change risks*, and the potential effects of climate change on water bodies, including on their natural functioning,<sup>1080</sup> ~~and~~
- (7) has regard to cumulative *effects*, and
- (8) ~~the need to apply~~ applies<sup>1081</sup> a precautionary approach where there is limited available information or uncertainty about potential adverse *effects*,<sup>1082</sup> in accordance with IM-P6.<sup>1083</sup>

#### LF-WAI-P4 – Giving effect to *Te Mana o te Wai*

All persons exercising functions and powers under this RPS and all persons who use, develop or protect resources to which this RPS applies must recognise that LF-WAI-O1, LF-WAI-P1, LF-WAI-P2 and LF-WAI-P3 are fundamental to upholding *Te Mana o te Wai*, and must be given effect to when making decisions affecting *fresh water*, including when interpreting and applying the provisions of the LF chapter.

## Methods

#### LF-WAI-M1 – ~~Mana whenua involvement~~ Kāi Tahu rakatirataka<sup>1084</sup>

Otago Regional Council must partner with Kāi Tahu in *freshwater* management by:

- (1) implementing the actions in MW-M3 and MW-M4,
- (2) actively identifying and pursuing opportunities for *mana whenua* to be involved in *freshwater* governance, including through use of available mechanisms such as transfers of functions (under section 33 of the RMA 1991<sup>1085</sup>) and supporting the establishment of *freshwater* mātaimai,
- (3) implementing actions to foster the development of *mana whenua* capacity to contribute to the Council's decision-making processes, including resourcing,
- (4) supporting *mana whenua* initiatives that contribute to maintaining or improving the health and well-being of *water bodies*, ~~and~~
- (5) providing relevant information to *mana whenua* for the purposes of (1), (2), (3) and (4), ~~and~~

<sup>1076</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00306.032 Meridian

<sup>1077</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1078</sup> 00226.161 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00234.027 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>1079</sup> 00226.161 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00234.027 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>1080</sup> 00226.161 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00234.027 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>1081</sup> 00231.047 Fish and Game

<sup>1082</sup> 00239.072 Federated Farmers, 00022.016 Graymont, 00409.005 Ballance

<sup>1083</sup> 00022.016 Graymont, 00409.005 Ballance

<sup>1084</sup> 00226.163 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1085</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA



- (6) developing a Kaupapa Kāi Tahu monitoring programme and facilitating the use of mātauraka to inform freshwater management decision-making processes, methods and outcomes, in combination with environmental science.<sup>1086</sup>

### LF-WAI-M2 – Other methods

In addition to method LF-WAI-M1, the methods in the ~~LF-VM~~,<sup>1087</sup> LF-FW, and LF-LS sections are also applicable.

## Explanation

### LF-WAI-E1 – Explanation

Water is a central element in Kāi Tahu creation traditions. It was present very early in the whakapapa of the world: in the beginning there was total darkness, followed by the emergence of light and a great void of nothingness. In time Maku mated with Mahoronuiatea which resulted in great expanses of water, then Papatūānuku ~~Papatūānuku~~<sup>1088</sup> and Takaroa met and had children after which Takaroa took a long absence. ~~Papatūānuku Papatūānuku~~<sup>1089</sup> met Rakinui and they had many children who conspired to force their parents' coupled bodies apart to let the light in. They were also responsible for creating many of the elements that constitute our world today - the mountains, rivers, forests and seas, and all fish, bird and animal life. To Kāi Tahu, the<sup>1090</sup> ~~The~~ whakapapa and spiritual source of *water* and *land* are connected, and *water bodies* are the central unifying feature that connects our landscapes together. The spiritual essence of *water* derives from the atua and the life it exudes is a reflection of the atua.

To Kāi Tahu, the<sup>1091</sup> ~~The~~ whakapapa of *mana whenua* and water are also integrally connected. There is a close kinship relationship, and *mana whenua* and the wai cannot be separated. The tūpuna relationship with *water*, and the different uses made of the *water*, provide a daily reminder of greater powers – of both the atua and tūpuna. This relationship continues into the present and future and is central to the identity of Kāi Tahu. The mana of wai is sourced from the time of creation and the work of kā Atua, invoking a reciprocal relationship with *mana whenua* based in kawa, tikaka and respect for *water's* life-giving powers and its sanctity.

The kinship connection engenders a range of rights and responsibilities for *mana whenua*, including rakatirataka rights and the responsibility of *kaitiakitaka*. *Kaitiakitaka* encompasses a high duty to uphold and maintain the mauri (life-force)<sup>1092</sup> of the wai. If the mauri is degraded it has an impact not only on the mana of the wai but also on the kinship relationship and on *mana whenua*. The mauri expresses mana and connection, which can only be defined by *mana whenua*. Recognising rakatirataka enables *mana whenua* to enjoy their rights over *water bodies* and fulfil their responsibilities to care for the wai and the communities it sustains.

The condition of *water* is seen as a reflection of the condition of the people - when the wai is healthy, so are the people. Kawa and tikaka have been developed over the generations, based on customs and values associated with the Māori world view that span the generations, ~~recognising and honouring~~ Giving effect to *Te Mana o te Wai* and upholds upholding the mauri of the wai and is consistent with this value base.<sup>1093</sup>

<sup>1086</sup> 00223.081 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>1087</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1088</sup> 00226.024 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>1089</sup> 00226.024 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>1090</sup> 00226.165 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1091</sup> 00226.165 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1092</sup> 00239.192 Federated Farmers; 00236.111 Horticulture NZ; 00140.003 Waitaki DC

<sup>1093</sup> 00235.082 OWRUG

To Kāi Tahu, ~~Each~~ each<sup>1094</sup> *water body* is unique. This is a reflection of its unique whakapapa and characteristics, and it means that each *water body* has different needs. Management and use must recognise and reflect this.

The concept of *Te Mana o te Wai* aligns closely with the Kāi Tahu approach to *freshwater* management, but it is not confined to Kāi Tahu.<sup>1095</sup> *Water* is valued by the community.<sup>1096</sup> The life-giving qualities of *freshwater* support the health and well-being of the whole community and all people have a shared responsibility to respect and care for the health and well-being of *freshwater bodies*.<sup>1097</sup> Access to *water*, within *limits* (in relation to *water*),<sup>1098</sup> is an important contributor achieving social, cultural and economic well-being within Otago.<sup>1099</sup>

## Principal reasons

### LF-WAI-PR1 – Principal reasons

In accordance with the NPSFM, councils are required to implement a framework for managing *freshwater* that gives effect to *Te Mana o te Wai*. This places the mauri (life-force) of the *water* at the forefront of decision making, recognising that<sup>1100</sup> *te hauora o te wai* (the health of the *water*) is the first priority, and supports *te hauora o te taiao* (the health of the environment) and *te hauora o te takata* (the health of the people). It is only after the health of the *water* and the health of the people<sup>1101</sup> is sustained that *water* can be used for economic purposes. When *water* is available for use, different uses may be prioritised in different FMUs or rohe depending on the values identified by communities and the environmental outcomes seeking to be achieved.<sup>1102</sup> Giving effect to *Te Mana o te Wai*<sup>1103</sup> requires actively involving *mana takata-whenua* in *freshwater* planning and management.

The NZCPS also recognises the interconnectedness of *land* and *water*. It notes inland activities can have a significant impact on *coastal water* quality which, in many areas around New Zealand, is in decline. This is a consequence of point and diffuse sources of contamination which can have environmental, social, cultural and economic implications. For example, poor *water* quality adversely effects aquatic life and opportunities for mahika kai gathering and recreational uses such as swimming and kayaking.

## Anticipated environmental results

**LF-WAI-AER2** The mauri of Otago’s *water bodies* and the health and well-being of *water bodies* and *freshwater* ecosystems is protected, and restored where degraded.<sup>1104</sup> ~~The mauri of Otago’s *water bodies* and their health and well-being is protected.~~

**LF-WAI-AER1** Kāi Tahu are actively involved in the management of *fresh water* and able to effectively exercise their rakatirataka, manaakitaka and *kaitiakitaka*.

<sup>1094</sup> 00226.165 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1095</sup> 00226.165 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1096</sup> 00235.082 OWRUG

<sup>1097</sup> 00226.165 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1098</sup> 00231.009 Fish and Game

<sup>1099</sup> 00235.082 OWRUG

<sup>1100</sup> FPI030.017 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI027.017 Contact

<sup>1101</sup> 00235.082 OWRUG, FPI027.017 Contact

<sup>1102</sup> FPI001.007 Dunedin City Council, FPI033.001 Fulton Hogan

<sup>1103</sup> FPI030.017 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI032.016 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, FPI027.017 Contact

<sup>1104</sup> FPI026.021 Federated Farmers, FPI043.058 OWRUG, FPI024.018 DairyNZ, FPI019.005 Fonterra

## LF-VM – Visions and management LF-FW – Fresh water

**Note to readers:** This chapter combines the LF-VM and LF-FW provisions as notified. The numbering in this section reflects the notified numbering of the provisions so that it is clear that the provision has been moved rather than introduced as ‘new’. The numbering will be corrected when the RPS is made operative.

### Objectives

#### LF-FW-O1A – Visions set for each FMU and rohe

In each FMU and rohe in Otago and within the timeframes specified in the *freshwater* visions in LF-VM-O2 to LF-VM-O6:

- (1) healthy freshwater and estuarine ecosystems support healthy populations of indigenous species (including non-diadromous galaxiids and Canterbury mudfish) and mahika kai that are safe for consumption,
- (2) the interconnection of land, freshwater (including springs, groundwater, ephemeral water bodies, wetlands, rivers, and lakes) and coastal water is recognised,
- (3) fish passage within and between catchments is provided for except where it is desirable to prevent the passage of some fish species in order to protect desired fish species, their life stages, or their habitats,
- (4) the form, function and character of water bodies reflects their natural characteristics and natural behaviours to the extent reasonably practicable,
- (5) the ongoing relationship of Kāi Tahu with wāhi tūpuna, including access to and use of water bodies, is sustained,
- (6) the health of the water supports the health of people and their connections with water bodies,
- (7) sustainable land and water management practices:
  - (a) support food and fibre production and the continued social, economic, and cultural well-being of Otago’s people and communities, and
  - (b) improve the resilience of communities to the effects of climate change, and
  - (c) ensure communities are appropriately serviced by community water supplies, and other three waters infrastructure,
- (8) direct discharges of wastewater to water bodies are phased out to the extent reasonably practicable, and
- (9) freshwater is managed as part of New Zealand’s integrated response to climate change and renewable electricity generation activities are provided for.<sup>1105</sup>

#### LF-VM-O2 – Clutha Mata-au FMU vision

In the Clutha Mata-au FMU, and in addition to the matters in LF-FW-O1A,<sup>1106</sup>

- (1) management of the FMU recognises that:

<sup>1105</sup> FPI044.007 DOC, FPI037.014 Fish and Game, FPI030.019 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI045.008 Forest and Bird

<sup>1106</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-O1A

- (a) the Clutha Mata-au is a single connected system ki uta ki tai, and
- (b) the source of the wai is pure, coming directly from Tāwhirimātea<sup>1107</sup> ~~Tāwhirimātea~~ to the top of the mauka and into the awa,

(1A) sustainable abstraction occurs from lakes, river main stems or groundwater in preference to tributaries, to the extent reasonably practicable,<sup>1108</sup>

- ~~(2) fresh water is managed in accordance with the LF-WAI objectives and policies,~~<sup>1109</sup>
- ~~(3) the ongoing relationship of Kāi Tahu with wāhi tūpuna is sustained,~~<sup>1110</sup>
- ~~(4) water bodies support thriving mahika kai and Kāi Tahu whānui have access to mahika kai,~~<sup>1111</sup>
- ~~(5) indigenous species migrate easily and as naturally as possible along and within the river system,~~<sup>1112</sup>
- (6) the national significance of the ongoing operation, maintenance and upgrading of the<sup>1113</sup> Clutha hydro-electricity generation scheme, including its generation capacity, storage and operational flexibility and its contribution to climate change mitigation,<sup>1114</sup> is recognised and protected, and potential further development is provided for within this modified catchment,<sup>1115</sup>
- (6A) water bodies support a range of outdoor recreation opportunities,<sup>1116</sup>

(7) ~~in addition to (1) to (6) above:~~<sup>1117</sup>

(a) ~~in the Upper Lakes rohe, the high quality waters of the lakes and their tributaries are protected, and if degraded are improved~~<sup>1118</sup> recognising the significance of the purity of these waters to Kāi Tahu and to the wider community,

(b) ~~in the Dunstan, Manuherekiā and Roxburgh rohe:~~<sup>1119</sup>

~~(i) flows in water bodies sustain and, wherever possible, restore the natural form and function of main stems and tributaries to support Kāi Tahu values and practices, and~~<sup>1120</sup>

~~(ii) innovative and sustainable land and water management practices support food production in the area and reduce discharges of nutrients and other contaminants to water bodies so that they are safe for human contact, and~~<sup>1121</sup>

~~(iii) sustainable abstraction occurs from main stems or groundwater in preference to tributaries,~~<sup>1122</sup>

(e7A) in the Lower Clutha rohe:

<sup>1107</sup> FPI027.019 Contact

<sup>1108</sup> FPI030.020 Kāi Tahu

<sup>1109</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

<sup>1110</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

<sup>1111</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

<sup>1112</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

<sup>1113</sup> FPI027.019 Contact

<sup>1114</sup> FPI027.010 Contact

<sup>1115</sup> FPI027.019 Contact

<sup>1116</sup> FPI038.008 NZSki, FPI039.010 Realnz

<sup>1117</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

<sup>1118</sup> FPI027.019 Contact

<sup>1119</sup> FPI030.020 Kāi Tahu

<sup>1120</sup> FPI030.020 Kāi Tahu

<sup>1121</sup> FPI030.020 Kāi Tahu

<sup>1122</sup> FPI030.020 Kāi Tahu

- ~~(i) there is no further modification of the shape and behaviour of the *water bodies* and possible opportunities to restore the natural form and function of *water bodies* are promoted wherever possible, practicable, and~~<sup>1123</sup>
- ~~(ii) the ecosystem connections between *freshwater, wetlands* and the coastal environment are preserved and, wherever possible, restored,~~<sup>1124</sup>
- ~~(iii) *land* management practices reduce discharges of nutrients and other *contaminants* to *water bodies* so that they are safe for human contact, and~~<sup>1125</sup>
- ~~(iv) there are no direct *discharges of wastewater* to *water bodies*, and~~<sup>1126</sup>

(8) the outcomes sought in ~~(7)~~<sup>1127</sup> are to be achieved within the following timeframes:

- (b) by 2030 in the Upper Lakes rohe,
- (c) by 2045 in the Dunstan, and Roxburgh and Lower Clutha<sup>1128</sup> rohe, and
- (d) by 2050 in the Manuherehia and Lower Clutha<sup>1129</sup> rohe.

### LF-VM-03 – North Otago FMU vision

By 2050 in the North Otago FMU, and in addition to the matters in LF-FW-O1A.<sup>1130</sup>

(1) the Waitaki River is managed holistically, ki uta ki tai, despite its catchments spanning the Canterbury and Otago regions, *fresh water* is managed in accordance with the LF-WAI objectives and policies, while recognising that the Waitaki River is influenced in part by catchment areas within the Canterbury region,<sup>1131</sup>

~~(1A) the national significance of the Waitaki hydroelectricity generation scheme is recognised,~~<sup>1132</sup>

~~(2) the ongoing relationship of Kāi Tahu with *wāhi tūpuna* is sustained and Kāi Tahu maintain their connection with and use of the *water bodies*,~~<sup>1133</sup>

(3) healthy riparian margins, *wetlands*, estuaries and lagoons support thriving mahika kai, indigenous habitats and<sup>1134</sup> the health of<sup>1135</sup> downstream coastal ecosystems,

~~(4) indigenous species can migrate easily and as naturally as possible to and from the coastal environment,~~<sup>1136</sup>

~~(5) *land* management practices reduce *discharges* of nutrients and other *contaminants* to *water bodies* so that they are safe for human contact, and~~<sup>1137</sup>

<sup>1123</sup> FPI027.019 Contact

<sup>1124</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

<sup>1125</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

<sup>1126</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

<sup>1127</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1128</sup> FPI024.019 DairyNZ

<sup>1129</sup> FPI024.019 DairyNZ

<sup>1130</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-O1A

<sup>1131</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI033.001 Fulton Hogan

<sup>1132</sup> FPI016.013 Meridian,

<sup>1133</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

<sup>1134</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

<sup>1135</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1136</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

<sup>1137</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

(6) ~~innovative and sustainable *land and water* management practices support food production in the area and improve resilience to the effects of climate change.~~<sup>1138</sup>

#### LF-VM-04 – Taiari Taiari FMU vision

By 2050 in the Taiari<sup>1139</sup> Taiari FMU, and in addition to the matters in LF-FW-01A:<sup>1140</sup>

~~(1) — *fresh water* is managed in accordance with the LF-WAI objectives and policies,~~<sup>1141</sup>

~~(2) — the ongoing relationship of Kāi Tahu with *wāhi tūpuna* is sustained,~~<sup>1142</sup>

(3) healthy *wetlands* are restored in<sup>1143</sup> the upper and lower catchment *wetland* complexes, including the Waipōuri/Waihola wetland complex,<sup>1144</sup> the Waipori/Waihola Wetlands, Upper Taiari wetland complex,<sup>1145</sup> Tunaheketaka/Lake Taiari, scroll plain, and connected<sup>1146</sup> tussock areas are protected, restored or enhanced where they have been degraded or lost,<sup>1147</sup>

(4) the gravel *bed* of the lower Taiari<sup>1148</sup> Taiari is restored and sedimentation of the Waipōuri/Waihola Waipori/Waihola wetland<sup>1149</sup> complex is reduced,

(4A) the national significance of the Waipōuri hydro-electricity generation scheme, and the regional significance of the Deep Stream and Paerau/Patearoa hydro-electricity generation schemes, is recognised and their operation, maintenance and upgrading is provided for, while potential further development of these schemes is provided for, and<sup>1150</sup>

(5) creative ecological approaches contribute to reduced occurrence of didymo,

~~(6) — *water bodies* support healthy populations of *galaxiid* species,~~

~~(7) — there are no direct *discharges of wastewater* to *water bodies*, and~~<sup>1151</sup>

~~(8) — innovative and sustainable *land and water* management practices support food production in the area and improve resilience to the effects of climate change.~~<sup>1152</sup>

#### LF-VM-05 – Dunedin & Coast FMU vision

By 2040 in the Dunedin & Coast FMU, and in addition to the matters in LF-FW-01A:<sup>1153</sup>

~~(1) — *fresh water* is managed in accordance with the LF-WAI objectives and policies,~~<sup>1154</sup>

~~(2) — the ongoing relationship of Kāi Tahu with *wāhi tūpuna* is sustained,~~<sup>1155</sup>

<sup>1138</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

<sup>1139</sup> FPI030.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1140</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-01A

<sup>1141</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC

<sup>1142</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC

<sup>1143</sup> FPI025.020 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

<sup>1144</sup> FPI030.022 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1145</sup> FPI044.011 DOC

<sup>1146</sup> FPI022.005 Manawa Energy

<sup>1147</sup> FPI025.020 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

<sup>1148</sup> FPI030.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1149</sup> FPI030.022 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1150</sup> FPI022.005 Manawa Energy,

<sup>1151</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

<sup>1152</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC

<sup>1153</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-01A

<sup>1154</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-01A

<sup>1155</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC

- (3) ~~healthy riparian margins, wetlands,<sup>1156</sup> estuaries, and lagoons and coastal waters<sup>1157</sup> support the health of<sup>1158</sup> thriving mahika kai and downstream coastal ecosystems, and indigenous species can migrate easily and as naturally as possible to and from these areas,<sup>1159</sup>~~
- (4) ~~there is no further modification of the shape and behaviour of the water bodies and opportunities to restore the natural form and function of water bodies are promoted wherever practicable possible., and<sup>1160</sup>~~
- (5) ~~discharges of contaminants from urban environments are reduced so that water bodies are safe for human contact.<sup>1161</sup>~~

### **LF-VM-06 – Catlins FMU vision**

By ~~2035~~2030<sup>1162</sup> in the Catlins FMU, and in addition to the matters in LF-FW-01A<sup>1163</sup>:

- (1) ~~fresh water is managed in accordance with the LF WAI objectives and policies,<sup>1164</sup>~~
- (2) ~~the ongoing relationship of Kāi Tahu with wāhi tūpuna is sustained,<sup>1165</sup>~~
- (3) ~~water bodies support thriving mahika kai and access of Kāi Tahu whānui to mahika kai,<sup>1166</sup>~~
- (4) the high degree of naturalness of the water bodies<sup>1167</sup> and ecosystem connections between the forests, freshwater and coastal environment are preserved, and
- (5) ~~water bodies and their catchment areas support the health and well-being of coastal water, ecosystems and indigenous species, including downstream kaimoana, and<sup>1168</sup>~~
- (6) healthy, clear and clean water supports opportunities for recreation and sustainable food production for future generations.<sup>1169</sup>

### **LF-VM-07 – Integrated management**

~~Land and water management apply the ethic of ki uta ki tai and are managed as integrated natural resources, recognising the connections and interactions between fresh water, land and the coastal environment, and between surface water, groundwater and coastal water.<sup>1170</sup>~~

### **LF-FW-08 – Fresh water**

In Otago's water bodies and their catchments:

- (1) ~~the health of the wai supports the health of the people and thriving mahika kai,~~
- (2) ~~water flow is continuous throughout the whole system,~~

<sup>1156</sup> FPI044.012 Director General of Conservation

<sup>1157</sup> FPI001.012 DCC

<sup>1158</sup> FPI044.012 Director General of Conservation

<sup>1159</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

<sup>1160</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-01A

<sup>1161</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

<sup>1162</sup> FPI029.001 Otago Regional Council, FPI024.023 DairyNZ

<sup>1163</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-01A

<sup>1164</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-01A

<sup>1165</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-01A

<sup>1166</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-01A

<sup>1167</sup> FPI030.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1168</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI044.007 DOC and others

<sup>1169</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(ii), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from introducing LF-FW-01A

<sup>1170</sup> 00121.056 Ravensdown

~~(3) the interconnection of fresh water (including groundwater) and coastal waters is recognised,~~

~~(4) native fish can migrate easily and as naturally as possible and taoka species and their habitats are protected, and~~

(5) ~~€~~The significant and outstanding values of Otago's *outstanding water bodies* are identified and protected.<sup>1171</sup>

#### LF-FW-09 – ~~Natural~~ Wetlands

Otago's ~~natural~~ wetlands are protected from inappropriate subdivision, use and development and, where degraded, or restored restoration is promoted so that:

(1) mahika kai and other *mana whenua* values are sustained and enhanced now and for future generations,

(2) there is no net<sup>1172</sup> decrease, and preferably an increase,<sup>1173</sup> in the extent ~~range~~<sup>1174</sup> and diversity of wetland<sup>1175</sup> indigenous ecosystem types and habitats, and ~~in natural wetlands~~

(3) there is no reduction and, where degraded, there is an improvement<sup>1176</sup> in ~~their~~ wetland<sup>1177</sup> ecosystem health, hydrological functioning, *amenity values*, extent or *water* quality, and ~~if degraded they are improved, and~~<sup>1178</sup>

(4) their flood attenuation and water storage<sup>1179</sup> capacity is maintained or improved.<sup>1180</sup>

#### LF-FW-010 – Natural character

The natural character of *wetlands*, *lakes* and *rivers* and their margins is preserved and protected from inappropriate subdivision, use and development.

## Policies

#### LF-VM-P5 – Freshwater Management Units (FMUs) and rohe

Otago's *fresh water* resources are managed through the following *freshwater management units* or rohe which:

(1) have coastal boundaries that follow either mean high water springs or, where this crosses a water body, the inner limit of the territorial sea, and<sup>1181</sup>

(2) are shown on MAP1:

Table 3 – Freshwater Management Units and rohe

<sup>1171</sup> FPI025.026 BLNZ + DINZ

<sup>1172</sup> FPI033.003 Fulton Hogan

<sup>1173</sup> FPI035.012 Wise Response

<sup>1174</sup> FPI030.029 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI021.004 Ballance, FPI025.027 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

<sup>1175</sup> FPI033.003 Fulton Hogan

<sup>1176</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI033.003 Fulton Hogan

<sup>1177</sup> FPI033.003 Fulton Hogan

<sup>1178</sup> FPI033.003 Fulton Hogan

<sup>1179</sup> FPI030.029 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1180</sup> FPI035.012 Wise Response

<sup>1181</sup> FPI030.025 Kāi Tahu ki Otago



<b>Freshwater Management Unit</b>	<b>Rohe</b>
Clutha Mata-au	Upper Lakes Dunstan Manuherekia Roxburgh Lower Clutha
Taieri-Taiari <sup>1182</sup>	n/a
North Otago	n/a
Dunedin & Coast	n/a
Catlins	n/a

### LF-VM-P6 – Relationship between FMUs and rohe

Where rohe have been defined within FMUs:

- (1) *environmental outcomes* must be developed for the FMU within which the rohe is located,
- (2) any<sup>1183</sup> if additional rohe-specific<sup>1184</sup> environmental outcomes; are included for rohe, those  
environmental outcomes:<sup>1185</sup>
  - (a) must<sup>1186</sup> set target *attribute* states that are no less stringent than the parent FMU *environmental outcomes* if the same *attributes* are adopted in both the rohe and the FMU, and
  - (b) may include additional *attributes* and target *attribute* states provided that any additional *environmental outcomes* give effect to the *environmental outcomes* for the FMU,
- (3) *limits* and action plans to achieve *environmental outcomes*, including by achieving target attribute states,<sup>1187</sup> may be developed for the FMU or the rohe or a combination of both,
- (4) any *limit* or action plan developed to apply within a rohe:
  - (a) prevails over any *limit* or action plan developed for the FMU for the same *attribute*, unless explicitly stated to the contrary, and
  - (b) must be no less stringent than any *limit* or *action plan*<sup>1188</sup> set for the parent FMU for the same *attribute*, and
  - (c) must not conflict with any *limit* set or *action plan* developed<sup>1189</sup> for the parent<sup>1190</sup> underlying<sup>1191</sup> FMU for *attributes* that are not the same, and
- (5) the term “no less stringent” in this policy applies to *attribute states* (numeric and narrative) and any other metrics and timeframes (if applicable).

<sup>1182</sup> FPI030.049 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1183</sup> FPI021.004 Ballance

<sup>1184</sup> FPI021.004 Ballance

<sup>1185</sup> FPI021.004 Ballance

<sup>1186</sup> FPI030.026 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1187</sup> FPI021.004 Ballance

<sup>1188</sup> FPI021.004 Ballance

<sup>1189</sup> FPI021.004 Ballance

<sup>1190</sup> FPI021.004 Ballance

<sup>1191</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

## LF-FW-P6A – Transitions over time

Provide for ambitious and reasonable transitions in the use of *land* and *water* to achieve the long-term visions by:

- (1) recognising that changes to practices and activities will need to occur overtime; and
- (2) managing the adverse impacts of implementing these changes on people and communities, including by phasing implementation of new requirements and building on actions undertaken by catchment and other community groups, and
- (3) enabling innovation and the development of new practices.<sup>1192</sup>

## LF-FW-P7 – Fresh water

*Environmental outcomes, attribute states* (including target *attribute states*), environmental flows and levels,<sup>1193</sup> and limits ensure that:

- (1) the health and well-being of *water bodies* and *freshwater ecosystems*<sup>1194</sup> is maintained or, if *degraded*, improved,
- (2) the habitats of indigenous species with life stages dependent on *water bodies* associated with *water bodies*<sup>1195</sup> are protected and sustained, including by providing for fish passage,<sup>1196</sup>
- (2A) the habitats of trout and salmon are protected insofar as this is consistent with (2),<sup>1197</sup>
- (2B) fish passage is provided for, except where it is desirable to prevent the passage of some fish species in order to protect desired fish species, their life stages, or their habitats,<sup>1198</sup>
- (3) *specified rivers and lakes* are suitable for primary contact within the following timeframes:
  - (a) by 2030, 90% of *rivers* and 98% of *lakes*, and
  - (b) by 2040, 95% of *rivers* and 100% of *lakes*, and
- (4) resources harvested from *water bodies* including<sup>1199</sup> *mahika kai* and *drinking water* are safe for human consumption.
- (5) ~~existing over allocation is phased out and future over allocation is avoided, and~~<sup>1200</sup>
- (6) ~~fresh water is allocated within environmental limits and used efficiently.~~<sup>1201</sup>

<sup>1192</sup> FPI043.003 OWRUG

<sup>1193</sup> FPI030.030 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI017.010 Ravensdown, FPI021.005 Ballance, FPI027.026 Contact

<sup>1194</sup> FPI037.019 Fish and Game

<sup>1195</sup> FPI027.026 Contact, FPI021.005 Ballance

<sup>1196</sup> FPI030.030 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI027.026 Contact

<sup>1197</sup> FPI037.019 Fish and Game, FPI027.026 Contact

<sup>1198</sup> FPI022.006 Manawa

<sup>1199</sup> FPI037.018 Fish and Game

<sup>1200</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from including LF-FW-P7A

<sup>1201</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from including LF-FW-P7A

## **LF-FW-P7A – Water allocation and use<sup>1202</sup>**

Within *limits* and in accordance with any relevant environmental flows and levels, the benefits of using *fresh water* are recognised and *over-allocation* is either phased out or avoided by:<sup>1203</sup>

- (1) managing over-allocation as set out in LF-FW-M6,<sup>1204</sup>
- (2) allocating *fresh water* efficiently to support the social, economic, and cultural well-being of people and communities to the extent possible within *limits*, including for:<sup>1205</sup>
  - (a) community drinking water supplies,<sup>1206</sup>
  - (b) maintaining generation output and capacity from existing *renewable electricity generation schemes*,<sup>1207</sup>
  - (c) *mana whenua* customary or cultural needs and activities, and<sup>1208</sup>
  - (d) primary production,
- (3) ensuring that no more *fresh water* is abstracted than is necessary for its intended use,<sup>1209</sup>
- (4) ensuring that the efficiency of *fresh water* abstraction, storage and conveyancing *infrastructure* is improved,
- (5) providing for the harvesting and storage of *fresh water* to meet increasing demand for *water*, to manage *water* scarcity conditions and to provide resilience to the *effects* of *climate change*, and
- (6) providing for spatial and temporal sharing of allocated *fresh water* between uses and users where feasible.<sup>1210</sup>

## **LF-FW-P8 – Identifying ~~natural~~ wetlands**

By 3 September 2030<sup>1211</sup>, identify and map: ~~natural wetlands~~ that are:

- (1) any wetland at risk of loss of extent or values,
- (2) any wetland identified in a farm environment plan, or that may be affected by any application for, or a review of, a resource consent, and
- (3) all other natural inland wetlands that are:<sup>1212</sup>
  - (i) 0.05 hectares or greater in extent, or
  - (ii) of a type that is naturally less than 0.05 hectares in extent (such as an ephemeral *wetland*) and known to contain threatened species.

<sup>1202</sup> FPI025.028 Beef + Lamb and DINZ, FPI045.016 Forest and Bird, FPI043.065 OWRUG, FPI009.008 COWA, FPI047.023 Horticulture NZ, FPI022.006 Manawa Energy, FPI027.026 Contact, FPI023.010 Moutere Station

<sup>1203</sup> FPI025.028 BLNZ + DINZ

<sup>1204</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1205</sup> FPI047.023 Hort NZ

<sup>1206</sup> FPI027.026 Contact

<sup>1207</sup> FPI022.006 Manawa

<sup>1208</sup> FPI030.019 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1209</sup> FPI021.005 Ballance

<sup>1210</sup> FPI043.065 OWRUG, FPI009.008 COWA, FPI047.023 Horticulture NZ, FPI027.026 Contact, FPI022.006 Manawa Energy

<sup>1211</sup> 00230.088 Forest and Bird

<sup>1212</sup> NZ 00237.024 Beef and Lamb NZ and Deer Industry

## ~~LF-FW-P9~~ — ~~Protecting natural wetlands~~

Protect *natural wetlands* by:

~~(1) — avoiding a reduction in their values or extent unless:~~

~~(a) — the *loss of values* or extent arises from:~~

- ~~(i) — the customary harvest of food or resources undertaken in accordance with tikaka Māori,~~
- ~~(ii) — restoration activities,~~
- ~~(iii) — scientific research,~~
- ~~(iv) — the sustainable harvest of sphagnum moss,~~
- ~~(v) — the construction or maintenance of *wetland utility structures*,~~
- ~~(vi) — the maintenance of operation of *specific infrastructure*, or *other infrastructure*,~~
- ~~(vii) — *natural hazard works*, or~~

~~(b) — the Regional Council is satisfied that:~~

- ~~(i) — the activity is necessary for the construction or upgrade of *specified infrastructure*,~~
- ~~(ii) — the *specified infrastructure* will provide significant national or regional benefits,~~
- ~~(iii) — there is a *functional need* for the *specified infrastructure* in that location,~~
- ~~(iv) — the *effects* of the activity on indigenous *biodiversity* are managed by applying either ECO-P3 or ECO-P6 (whichever is applicable), and~~
- ~~(v) — the other *effects* of the activity (excluding those managed under (1)(b)(iv)) are managed by applying the *effects management hierarchy*, and~~

~~(2) — not granting resource consents for activities under (1)(b) unless the Regional Council is satisfied that:~~

~~(a) — the application demonstrates how each step of the *effects management hierarchies* in (1)(b)(iv) and (1)(b)(v) will be applied to the *loss of values* or extent of the *natural wetland*, and~~

- ~~(i) — any consent is granted subject to conditions that apply the *effects management hierarchies* in (1)(b)(iv) and (1)(b)(v).~~

## ~~LF-FW-P10~~ — ~~Restoring natural wetlands~~

Improve the ecosystem health, hydrological functioning, *water* quality and extent of *natural wetlands* that have been degraded or lost by requiring, where possible:

- ~~(1) — an increase in the extent and quality of habitat for indigenous species,~~
- ~~(2) — the restoration of hydrological processes,~~
- ~~(3) — control of pest species and vegetation clearance, and~~
- ~~(4) — the exclusion of stock.~~

## **LF-FW-P10A – Managing wetlands**

Otago's *wetlands* are managed:

- (1) in the coastal environment, in accordance with the NZCPS in addition to (2) and (3) below,<sup>1213</sup>
- (2) by applying clause 3.22(1) to (3) of the NPSFM to all wetlands, and
- (3) to improve the ecosystem health, hydrological functioning and extent of wetlands that have been degraded or lost by promoting:<sup>1214</sup>
  - (a) an increase in the extent and condition of habitat for indigenous species,<sup>1215</sup>
  - (b) the restoration of hydrological processes,<sup>1216</sup>
  - (c) control of pest species and vegetation clearance, and<sup>1217</sup>
  - (d) the exclusion of stock, except where stock grazing is used to enhance wetland values.<sup>1218</sup>

## **LF-FW-P11 – Identifying Otago's outstanding water bodies**<sup>1219</sup>

Otago's *outstanding water bodies* are:

- (1) the Kawarau River and tributaries described in the Water Conservation (Kawarau) Order 1997,
- (2) Lake Wanaka and the outflow and tributaries described in the Lake Wanaka Preservation Act 1973, and
- ~~(3) any *water bodies* identified as being wholly or partly within an outstanding natural feature or landscape in accordance with NFL-P1, and~~<sup>1220</sup>
- (4) any other *water bodies* identified in accordance with APP1.

## **LF-FW-P12 – Protecting Identifying and managing**<sup>1221</sup> **outstanding water bodies**

Identify *outstanding water bodies* and their significant and outstanding values in the relevant *regional plans* and *district plans* and protect those values.<sup>1222</sup>

~~The significant and outstanding values of *outstanding water bodies* are:~~

- ~~(1) identified in the relevant *regional* and *district plans*, and~~
- ~~(2) protected by avoiding adverse *effects* on those values.~~<sup>1223</sup>

---

<sup>1213</sup> FPI034.007 Fuel Companies,

<sup>1214</sup> FPI024.030 DairyNZ

<sup>1215</sup> FPI024.030 DairyNZ

<sup>1216</sup> FPI024.030 DairyNZ, FPI020.017 Silver Fern Farms

<sup>1217</sup> FPI024.030 DairyNZ

<sup>1218</sup> FPI026.032 Federated Farmers, FPI007.065 John Highton, FPI020.017 Silver Fern Farms

<sup>1219</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1220</sup> 00237.037 Beef + Lamb and DINZ, 00239.087 Federated Farmers

<sup>1221</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1222</sup> 00235.095 OWRUG, 00315.032 Aurora Energy, 00305.023 Waka Kotahi

<sup>1223</sup> 00230.091 Forest and Bird

## LF-FW-P13 – Preserving natural character and instream values<sup>1224</sup>

Preserve the natural character and instream values<sup>1225</sup> of *lakes* and *rivers* and the natural character of<sup>1226</sup> their *beds* and margins by:

- (1) avoiding the *loss of values* or extent of a *river*, unless:
  - (a) there is a *functional need* for the activity in that location, and
  - (b) the *effects* of the activity are managed by applying:
    - (i) ~~for effects on indigenous biodiversity, either ECO P3 or ECO P6 (whichever is applicable), and~~
    - (ii) for other effects, the effects management hierarchy (in relation to natural inland wetlands and rivers),<sup>1227</sup>
- (2) not granting resource consent for activities in (1) unless the consent authority Otago Regional Council<sup>1228</sup> is satisfied that:
  - (a) the application demonstrates how each step of the effects management hierarchy (in relation to natural inland wetlands and rivers) ~~effects management hierarchies in (1)(b)~~ will be applied to the *loss of values* or extent of the *river*, and
  - (b) any consent is granted subject to conditions that apply the effects management hierarchy (in relation to natural inland wetlands and rivers) in respect of any *loss of values* or extent of the *river*,<sup>1229</sup> ~~effects management hierarchies in (1)(b),~~
  - (c) if aquatic offsetting or aquatic compensation is applied, the applicant has complied with principles 1 to 6 in Appendix 6 and 7 of the NPSFM, and has had to regard to the remaining principles in Appendix 6 and 7 of the NPSFM, as appropriate, and
  - (d) if aquatic offsetting or aquatic compensation is applied, any consent granted is subject to conditions that will ensure that the offspring or compensation will be maintained and managed over time to achieve the conservation outcomes,<sup>1230</sup>
- (3) establishing environmental flow and level regimes and *water* quality standards that support the health and well-being of the *water body*,
- (4) ~~to the extent practicable, wherever possible,~~<sup>1231</sup> sustaining the form and function of a *water body* that reflects its natural behaviours,
- (5) recognising and implementing the restrictions in Water Conservation Orders,
- (6) preventing the impounding or control of the level of Lake Wanaka,
- (7) preventing modification that would permanently<sup>1232</sup> reduce the braided character of a *river*, ~~and~~

<sup>1224</sup> 00231.058 Fish and Game

<sup>1225</sup> 00231.058 Fish and Game

<sup>1226</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA - consequential amendment arising from 00231.058 Fish and Game

<sup>1227</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00315.014 Aurora Energy, 00235.125 OWRUG, 00511.012 PowerNet, 00320.012 Network Waitaki

<sup>1228</sup> 00137.074 DOC

<sup>1229</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00119.010 Blackthorn, 00206.031 Trojan, 00411.043 Wayfare

<sup>1230</sup> 00230.005 Forest and Bird

<sup>1231</sup> 00318.015 Contact

<sup>1232</sup> 00206.034 Trojan, 00411.046 Wayfare, 00119.012 Blackthorn Lodge

- (8) controlling the use of *water* and *land* that would adversely affect the natural character of the *water body*, and
- (9) maintaining or enhancing the values of riparian margins to support habitat and biodiversity, reduce contaminant loss to<sup>1233</sup> *water bodies* and support natural flow behaviour.<sup>1234</sup>

#### **LF–FW–P14 – Restoring natural character and instream values**<sup>1235</sup>

Where the natural character or instream values<sup>1236</sup> of *lakes* and *ivers* ~~and~~ or the natural character of<sup>f1237</sup> their margins has been reduced or lost, promote actions that, where practicable:

- (1) restore a form and function that reflect the natural behaviours of the *water body*,
- (2) improve *water* quality or quantity where it is *degraded*,
- (3) increase the presence, *resilience* and abundance of indigenous flora and fauna, including by providing for fish passage within *river* systems, and where necessary and appropriate, creating fish barriers to prevent incursions from undesirable species,<sup>1238</sup>
- (4) improve *water body* margins by naturalising bank contours and establishing indigenous vegetation and habitat, and
- (5) restore ~~water pathways and~~<sup>1239</sup> natural connectivity between and within<sup>1240</sup> *water* systems.

#### **LF–FW–P15 – ~~Stormwater and wastewater~~<sup>1241</sup> discharges**

Minimise the adverse *effects* of direct and indirect *discharges* of *stormwater* ~~and wastewater~~<sup>1242</sup> to *fresh water* by:

- (1) ~~except as required by LF–VM–O2 and LF–VM–O4, preferring *discharges* of *wastewater* to *land* over *discharges* to *water*, unless adverse *effects* associated with a *discharge* to *land* are greater than a *discharge* to *water*, and~~<sup>1243</sup>
- (2) requiring:
  - (a) ~~all sewage, industrial or trade waste to be *discharged* into a reticulated *wastewater* system, where one is available,~~<sup>1244</sup>
  - (ab) integrated catchment management plans for management of *stormwater* in *urban areas*,<sup>1245</sup>
  - (b) all *stormwater* to be *discharged* into a reticulated system, where one is made available by the operator of the reticulated system, unless alternative treatment and disposal methods

<sup>1233</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1234</sup> 00226.187 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1235</sup> 00230.093 Forest and Bird, 00231.059 Fish and Game

<sup>1236</sup> 00230.093 Forest and Bird, 00231.059 Fish and Game

<sup>1237</sup> Clause 19(1)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA - consequential amendment arising from 00230.093 Forest and Bird, 00231.059 Fish and Game

<sup>1238</sup> 00223.088 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>1239</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1240</sup> 00509.080 Wise Response

<sup>1241</sup> FPI044.019 DOC

<sup>1242</sup> FPI044.019 DOC

<sup>1243</sup> FPI001.021 DCC, FPI017.022 Ravensdown

<sup>1244</sup> FPI001.021 DCC, FPI017.022 Ravensdown, FPI030.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1245</sup> FPI030.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

will result in the same or<sup>1246</sup> improved outcomes for fresh water,<sup>1247</sup>

(c) implementation of methods to progressively reduce unintentional stormwater inflows to the frequency and volume of wet weather overflows and minimise the likelihood of dry weather overflows occurring for reticulated stormwater and wastewater systems<sup>1248</sup>,

(d) on-site wastewater systems to be designed and operated in accordance with best practice standards,<sup>1249</sup>

(e) that any stormwater and wastewater discharges do not prevent water bodies from<sup>1250</sup> to meeting any applicable water quality standards set for FMUs and/or rohe, and

(f) the use of water sensitive urban<sup>1251</sup> design techniques to avoid or mitigate the potential adverse effects of contaminants on receiving water bodies from the subdivision, use or development of land,<sup>1252</sup> wherever practicable, and

(3) promoting the reticulation of stormwater and wastewater<sup>1253</sup> in urban areas where appropriate, and<sup>1254</sup>

(4) promoting source control as a method for reducing contaminants in discharges and the use of good practice guidelines for managing stormwater.<sup>1255</sup>

#### **LF-FW-P16 – Discharges containing animal effluent, sewage, greywater and industrial and trade waste**<sup>1256</sup>

Minimise the adverse effects of direct and indirect discharges containing animal effluent, sewage, greywater and industrial and trade waste to fresh water by:<sup>1257</sup>

(1) phasing out existing discharges containing sewage or industrial and trade waste directly to water to the extent practicable,<sup>1258</sup>

(2) requiring:

(a) new discharges containing sewage or industrial and trade waste to be to land,<sup>1259</sup>

(b) discharges of animal effluent from land-based primary production to be to land,<sup>1260</sup>

(c) that all discharges containing sewage or industrial and trade waste are discharged into a reticulated wastewater system, where one is made available<sup>1261</sup> by its owner, unless alternative treatment and disposal methods will result in improved outcomes for fresh

<sup>1246</sup> FPI013.003 Transpower

<sup>1247</sup> FPI001.021 DCC, FPI017.022 Ravensdown

<sup>1248</sup> FPI001.024 DCC

<sup>1249</sup> FPI019.009 Fonterra, FPI017.022 Ravensdown

<sup>1250</sup> FPI001.021 DCC, FPI017.022 Ravensdown

<sup>1251</sup> FPI017.022 Ravensdown

<sup>1252</sup> Out of scope recommendation in accordance with clause 49(2)(a)

<sup>1253</sup> FPI019.009 Fonterra, FPI017.022 Ravensdown

<sup>1254</sup> FPI046.013 QLDC

<sup>1255</sup> FPI001.021 DCC, FPI017.022 Ravensdown, FPI030.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1256</sup> FPI019.009 Fonterra, FPI017.011 Ravensdown, FPI030.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1257</sup> FPI030.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1258</sup> FPI032.025 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>1259</sup> FPI032.025 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>1260</sup> FPI001.021 DCC

<sup>1261</sup> FPI013.003 Transpower



water,<sup>1262</sup>

- (d) implementation of methods to progressively reduce the frequency and volume of wet weather overflows and minimise the likelihood of dry weather overflows occurring from reticulated wastewater systems<sup>1263</sup>,
- (e) on-site wastewater systems and animal effluent systems to be designed and operated in accordance with best practice standards,<sup>1264</sup>
- (f) that any discharges do not prevent water bodies from meeting any applicable water quality standards set for FMUs and/or rohe,<sup>1265</sup>

(3) to the greatest extent practicable, requiring the reticulation of wastewater in urban areas,<sup>1266</sup> and

(4) promoting source control as a method for reducing contaminants in discharges.<sup>1267</sup>

## Methods

### LF-VM-M3 – Community involvement

Otago Regional Council must work with Kāi Tahu and<sup>1268</sup> communities to achieve the objectives and policies in this chapter, including by:

- (1) engaging with Kāi Tahu,<sup>1269</sup> communities and stakeholders<sup>1270</sup> to identify values and<sup>1271</sup> environmental outcomes for Otago's FMUs and rohe and the methods to achieve those outcomes,
- (2) encouraging community stewardship of water resources and programmes to address freshwater issues at a local catchment level, including through catchment groups,<sup>1272</sup>
- (3) supporting community initiatives, industry-led guidelines, codes of practice and environmental accords<sup>1273</sup> that contribute to maintaining or improving the health and well-being of water bodies, and
- ~~(4) supporting industry-led guidelines, codes of practice and environmental accords where these would contribute to achieving the objectives of this RPS.~~<sup>1274</sup>
- (4A) education, advocacy and co-ordination to encourage efficient use of freshwater, including water harvesting, use of storage and consideration of alternative water supply.<sup>1275</sup>

<sup>1262</sup> FPI001.022 DCC, FPI017.003 Ravensdown

<sup>1263</sup> FPI013.003 Transpower

<sup>1264</sup> FPI013.003 Transpower, FPI030.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI019.009 Fonterra

<sup>1265</sup> FPI001.026 DCC

<sup>1266</sup> FPI017.003 Ravensdown, FPI019.009 Fonterra

<sup>1267</sup> FPI017.003 Ravensdown

<sup>1268</sup> 00226.175 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1269</sup> 00226.175 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1270</sup> 00139.096 DCC

<sup>1271</sup> 00237.031 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

<sup>1272</sup> 00014.052 John Highton, 00235.089 OWRUG

<sup>1273</sup> 00231.051 Fish and Game

<sup>1274</sup> 00231.051 Fish and Game

<sup>1275</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from freshwater provisions LF-FW-P7A and LF-FW-M6

## LF-VM-M4 – Other methods

In addition to method LF-VM-M3, the methods in the LF-WAI, LF-FW, and LF-LS sections are also applicable.

## LF-FW-M5 – Outstanding water bodies

No later than 31 December 2023,<sup>1276</sup> Otago Regional Council must:

- (1) ~~in partnership with Kāi Tahu,~~<sup>1277</sup> undertake a review based on existing information and develop a list of *water bodies* likely to contain outstanding values, including those *water bodies* listed in LF-FW-P11, LF-VM-P6,<sup>1278</sup>
- (2) identify the outstanding values of those *water bodies* (if any) in accordance with APP1,
- (3) consult with the public and relevant local authorities<sup>1279</sup> during the identification process,
- (4) map *outstanding water bodies* and identify their outstanding and significant values in the relevant *regional plan(s)*, and
- (5) include provisions in *regional plans* ~~that protect to avoid the adverse effects of activities on~~<sup>1280</sup> the significant and outstanding values of *outstanding water bodies*.

## LF-FW-M6 – Regional plans

Otago Regional Council must publicly notify a Land and Water *Regional Plan* ~~no later than 31 December 2023~~<sup>1281</sup> and, after it is made operative, maintain that *regional plan* to:

(1A) implement the required steps in the NOF process in accordance with the NPSFM,<sup>1282</sup>

~~(1) identify the compulsory and, if relevant, other values for each *Freshwater Management Unit*,~~<sup>1283</sup>

~~(2) state *environmental outcomes* as objectives in accordance with clause 3.9 of the NPSFM,~~<sup>1284</sup>

(3) identify *water bodies* that are *over-allocated* and the methods and timeframes for phasing out that *over-allocation* (including through environmental flows and levels and *limits*) within the timeframes required to achieve the relevant *freshwater vision*,<sup>1285</sup> in terms of either their *water quality* or *quantity*,<sup>1286</sup>

~~(4) include environmental flow and level regimes for *water bodies* (including *groundwater*) that give effect to *Te Mana o te Wai* and provide for:~~

~~(a) the behaviours of the *water body* including a base flow or level that provides for variability,~~

~~(b) healthy and resilient mahika kai,~~

<sup>1276</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1277</sup> 00226.326 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1278</sup> 00013.012 ECan, 00213.020 Waitaki Irrigators

<sup>1279</sup> 00013.012 ECan

<sup>1280</sup> 00230.091 Forest and Bird, 00119.011 Blackthorn Lodge, 00206.033 Trojan, 00411.045 Wayfare

<sup>1281</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1282</sup> FPI025.030 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

<sup>1283</sup> FPI025.030 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

<sup>1284</sup> FPI025.030 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

<sup>1285</sup> FPI012.007 Minister for the Environment

<sup>1286</sup> FPI001.028 DCC

~~(c) the needs of indigenous fauna, including taoka species, and aquatic species associated with the water body,~~

~~(d) the hydrological connection with other water bodies, estuaries and coastal margins,~~

~~(e) the traditional and contemporary relationship of Kāi Tahu to the water body, and~~

~~(f) community drinking water supplies, and<sup>1287</sup>~~

~~(5A) provide for the allocation and use of fresh water in accordance with LF-FW-P7A, including by providing for off-stream water storage,<sup>1288</sup>~~

~~(5) include limits on resource use that:~~

~~(a) differentiate between types of uses, including drinking water, and social, cultural and economic uses, in order to provide long term certainty in relation to those uses of available water,~~

~~(b) for water bodies that have been identified as over-allocated, provide methods and timeframes for phasing out that over-allocation,~~

~~(c) control the effects of existing and potential future development on the ability of the water body to meet, or continue to meet, environmental outcomes,~~

~~(d) manage the adverse effects on water bodies that can arise from the use and development of land, and<sup>1289</sup>~~

~~(6) provide for the off-stream storage of surface water where storage will:~~

~~(a) support Te Mana o te Wai,~~

~~(b) give effect to the objectives and policies of the LF chapter of this RPS, and~~

~~(c) not prevent a surface water body from achieving identified environmental outcomes and remaining within any limits on resource use, and<sup>1290</sup>~~

~~(7) identify and manage natural<sup>1291</sup> wetlands in accordance with LF-FW-P7, LF-FW-P8 and<sup>1292</sup> LF-FW-P9 and LF-FW-P10<sup>1293</sup> while recognising that some activities in and around natural<sup>1294</sup> wetlands are managed under the NESF and the NESCF<sup>1295</sup>, and~~

~~(8) manage the adverse effects of stormwater and wastewater discharges containing animal effluent, sewage, or industrial and trade waste<sup>1296</sup> in accordance with LF-FW-P15 and LF-FW-P16, and<sup>1297</sup>~~

<sup>1287</sup> FPI025.030 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

<sup>1288</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from including LF-FW-P7A

<sup>1289</sup> FPI025.030 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

<sup>1290</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from including new clause (5A) and new policy LF-FW-P7A

<sup>1291</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from deletion of ‘natural wetlands’ definition

<sup>1292</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1293</sup> FPI035.017 Wise Response

<sup>1294</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from deletion of ‘natural wetlands’ definition

<sup>1295</sup> FPI014.003 Rayonier Matariki

<sup>1296</sup> FPI001.034 DCC

<sup>1297</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from FPI019.009 Fonterra, FPI017.011 Ravensdown, FPI030.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

- (9) recognise and respond to Kāi Tahu cultural and spiritual concerns about mixing of water between different catchments.<sup>1298</sup>

### LF-FW-M7 – District plans

Territorial authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* ~~no later than 31 December 2026~~<sup>1299</sup> to:

- (1) map *outstanding water bodies* and identify their outstanding and significant values using the information gathered by Otago Regional Council in LF-FW-M5, and
- (2) include provisions to ~~avoid the adverse effects of activities on~~ protect<sup>1300</sup> the significant and outstanding values of *outstanding water bodies*,
- (1A) include provisions to preserve the natural character of lakes and rivers and their margins from the adverse effects of land use and development and activities on the surface of water.<sup>1301</sup>
- (3) require, wherever practicable, the adoption of water sensitive ~~urban~~<sup>1302</sup> design techniques when managing the *subdivision*, use or development of *land*, and
- (4) reduce the adverse *effects* of *stormwater discharges* by managing the *subdivision*, use and development of *land* to:
  - (a) minimise the peak volume of *stormwater* needing off-site disposal and the load of *contaminants* carried by it,
  - (b) minimise adverse *effects* on *fresh water* and *coastal water* as the ultimate receiving environments, and the capacity of the *stormwater* network,
  - (c) encourage on-site storage of rainfall to detain peak *stormwater* flows, and
  - (d) promote the use of permeable surfaces.

### LF-FW-M8 – Action plans

Otago Regional Council:

- (1) must prepare an action plan for achieving any target *attribute* states for *attributes* described in Appendix 2B of the NPSFM,
- (2) may prepare an action plan for achieving any target *attribute* states for *attributes* described in Appendix 2A of the NPSFM, and
- (2A) may prepare an action plan for any other purpose set out in the NPSFM, and<sup>1303</sup>
- (3) must prepare any action plan in accordance with clause 3.15 of the NPSFM.

<sup>1298</sup> FPI030.034 Kāi Tahu

<sup>1299</sup> FPI001.002 DCC

<sup>1300</sup> FPI047.026 Horticulture NZ

<sup>1301</sup> FPI030.035 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, FPI044.021 DOC

<sup>1302</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1303</sup> FPI034.007 The Fuel Companies

## LF-FW-M8A – Identifying and managing species interactions between trout and salmon and indigenous species

- (1) When making decisions that might affect the interactions between trout and salmon and indigenous species, local authorities will have particular regard to the recommendations of the Department of Conservation, the Fish and Game Council for the relevant areas, Kāi Tahu, and the matters set out in LF-FW-M8A(2)(a) to (c), and
- (2) Otago Regional Council will work with the Department of Conservation, the relevant Fish and Game Council and Kāi Tahu to:
  - (a) describe the habitats required to provide for the protection of indigenous species for the purposes of (2)(a), (b) and (c),
  - (b) identify areas where the protection of the habitat of trout and salmon, including fish passage, will be consistent with the protection of the habitat of indigenous species and areas where it will not be consistent,
  - (c) for areas identified in (b) develop provisions for any relevant action plan(s) prepared under the NPSFM, including for fish passage, that will at minimum:
    - (i) determine information needs to manage the species,
    - (ii) set short, medium and long term objectives for the species involved,
    - (iii) identify appropriate management actions that will achieve the objectives determined in (ii), including measures to manage the adverse effects of trout and salmon on indigenous species where appropriate, and
    - (iv) consider the use of a range of tools, including those in the Conservation Act 1987 and the Freshwater Fisheries Regulations 1983, as appropriate.<sup>1304</sup>

## LF-FW-M8AA – Integrated catchment management

Otago Regional Council may:

- (1) develop and implement an integrated catchment management programme for the region,
- (2) work in partnership with mana whenua and in collaboration with communities to develop catchment action plans that:
  - (a) collate and build on existing work in the catchments,
  - (b) incorporate science and mātauraka Māori, and
  - (c) identify and target effective environmental management actions, and
- (3) encourage and support community initiatives, at varying catchment levels, that help to deliver catchment action plans.<sup>1305</sup>

## **LF-FW-M9 – Monitoring**

Otago Regional Council, for every *FMU*, must:

- (1) establish a long-term monitoring programme that incorporates cultural health monitoring,

<sup>1304</sup> FPI037.021 Fish and Game

<sup>1305</sup> FPI043.061 Federated Farmers, FPI043.061 OWRUG

- (2) record information (including monitoring data) about the state of *water bodies* and *freshwater ecosystems* and the challenges to their health and well-being, ~~and~~<sup>1306</sup>
- (3) regularly prepare reports on the matters in (1) and (2) and publish those reports in accordance with clause 3.30 of the NPSFM, and<sup>1307</sup>
- (4) where the results of monitoring show the objectives of this regional policy statement are not being met, take the necessary action to achieve the objectives.<sup>1308</sup>

### LF–FW–M10 – Other methods

In addition to methods LF–FW–M5 to LF–FW–M9, the methods in the LF–WAI, LF–VM and LF–LS sections are also applicable.

## Explanation

### LF–VM–E2 – Explanation

This section of the LF chapter outlines how the Council will manage *fresh water* within the region. To give effect to *Te Mana o te Wai*, the *freshwater* visions, and the policies set out the actions required in the development of *regional plan* provisions to implement the NPSFM. [Note to reader: originally LF-FW-E3 para 1]

Implementing the NPSFM requires Council to identify *Freshwater Management Units (FMUs)* that include all *freshwater bodies* within the region. Policy LF-VM-P5 identifies Otago’s five *FMUs*: Clutha Mata-au *FMU*, *Taiari Taieri*<sup>1309</sup> *FMU*, North Otago *FMU*, Dunedin & Coast *FMU* and Catlins *FMU*. The Clutha Mata-au *FMU* is divided into five sub-*FMUs* known as ‘rohe’. Policy LF-VM-P6 sets out the relationship between *FMUs* and rohe which, broadly, requires rohe provisions to be no less stringent than the parent *FMU* provisions. This is to avoid any potential for rohe to set lower standards than others which would affect the ability of the *FMU* to achieve its stated outcomes.

The outcomes sought for ~~natural~~<sup>1310</sup> *wetlands* are implemented by requiring identification, protection and restoration. The first two policies reflect the requirements of the NPSFM for identification and protection but apply that direction to all ~~natural~~<sup>1311</sup> *wetlands*, rather than only inland natural wetlands (those outside the *coastal marine area*) as the NPSFM directs. This reflects the views of ~~takata mana~~<sup>1312</sup> *whenua* and the community that *fresh* and *coastal water*, including *wetlands*, should be managed holistically and in a consistent way. While the NPSFM requires promotion of the restoration of natural inland wetlands, the policies in this section take a stronger stance, requiring improvement where ~~natural~~<sup>1313</sup> *wetlands* have been *degraded* or lost. This is because of the importance of restoration to Kāi Tahu and in recognition of the

<sup>1306</sup> Clause 16(2) Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1307</sup> Clause 16(2) Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1308</sup> 00226.194 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1309</sup> 00234.005 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>1310</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from deletion of ‘natural wetlands’ definition

<sup>1311</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from deletion of ‘natural wetlands’ definition

<sup>1312</sup> 00226.196 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1313</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from deletion of ‘natural wetlands’ definition

historic loss of *wetlands* in Otago and the indigenous biodiversity and hydrological values of wetland systems.<sup>1314</sup> [Note to reader: originally LF-FW-E3 para 2]

The policies respond to the NPSFM by identifying a number of *outstanding water bodies* in Otago that have previously been identified for their significance through other processes. Additional *water bodies* can be identified if they are wholly or partly within an outstanding natural feature or landscape or if they meet the criteria in APP1 which lists the types of values which may be considered outstanding: cultural and spiritual, ecology, landscape, natural character, recreation and physical. The significant values of *outstanding water bodies* are to be identified and protected from adverse *effects*. [Note to reader: originally LF-FW-E3 para 3]

Preserving the natural character of *lakes* and *rivers*, and their *beds* and margins, is a matter of national importance under section 6 of the RMA 1991. The policies in this section set out how this is to occur in Otago, reflecting the relevant direction from the NPSFM but also a range of additional matters that are important in Otago, such as recognising existing Water Conservation Orders, the Lake Wanaka Act 1973 and the particular character of braided *rivers*. Natural character has been reduced or lost in some *lakes* or *rivers*, so the policies require promoting actions that will restore or otherwise improve natural character. [Note to reader: originally LF-FW-E3 para 4]

The impact of *discharges* of *stormwater* and *wastewater* on *freshwater bodies* is a significant issue for *mana whenua* and has contributed to *water* quality issues in some *water bodies*. The policies set out a range of actions to be implemented in order to improve the quality of these *discharges* and reduce their adverse *effects* on receiving environments.

## Principal reasons

### LF-VM-PR2 – Principal reasons

To support the implementation of the NPSFM, the Council is required to develop long-term visions for *fresh water* across the Otago region. *Fresh water* visions for each *FMU* and *rohe* have been developed through engagement with Kāi Tahu and communities. They set out the long-term goals for the *water bodies* (including *groundwater*) and *fresh water* ecosystems in the region that reflect the history of, and environmental pressures on, the *FMU* or *rohe*. They also establish ambitious but reasonable timeframes for achieving these goals. The Council must assess whether each *FMU* or *rohe* can provide for its long-term vision, or whether improvement to the health and well-being of *water bodies* (including *groundwater*) and *fresh water* ecosystems is required to achieve the visions. The result of that assessment will then inform the development of *regional plan* provisions in the *FMU*, including *environmental outcomes*, *attribute states*, *target attribute states* and *limits (in relation to freshwater)*.<sup>1315</sup>

Otago's *water bodies* are significant features of the region and play an important role in Kāi Tahu beliefs and traditions. They support people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural well-being.<sup>1316</sup> A growing population combined with increased *land* use intensification has heightened demand for *water* and increasing nutrient and sediment contamination impacts *water* quality. The legacy of Otago's historical mining privileges, coupled with contemporary urban and rural<sup>1317</sup> *land* uses, contribute

<sup>1314</sup> 00226.196 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1315</sup> 00231.009 Fish and Game

<sup>1316</sup> FPI009.010 COWA

<sup>1317</sup> FPI030.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

to ongoing *water quality* and quantity issues in some *water bodies*, with significant cultural effects. [Note to reader: originally LF-FW-PR3 para 1]

This section of the LF chapter contains more specific direction on managing *fresh water* to give effect to *Te Mana o te Wai* and contributes to achieving the long term *freshwater* visions for each *FMU* and *rohe*. It also<sup>1318</sup> reflects key direction in the NPSFM for managing the health and well-being of *fresh water*, including *wetlands* and *rivers* in particular, and matters of national importance under section 6 of the RMA 1991. The provisions in this section will underpin the development of the Council's *regional plans* and provide a foundation for implementing the requirements of the NPSFM, including the development of *environmental outcomes*, *attribute states*, *target attribute states* and *limits*. [Note to reader: originally LF-FW-PR3 para 2]

## Anticipated environmental resultoutcomes<sup>1319</sup>

**LF-VM-AER3** The *fresh water* visions in this section implement *Te Mana o Te Wai* according to the particular characteristics of *FMUs* and *rohe* underpin Otago's planning framework<sup>1320</sup> and the outcomes they seek are achieved within the timeframes specified.

## Explanation

### LF-FW-E3—Explanation

This section of the LF chapter outlines how the Council will manage *fresh water* within the region. To give effect to *Te Mana o te Wai*, the *freshwater* visions, and the policies set out the actions required in the development of *regional plan* provisions to implement the NPSFM. [Note to reader: originally LF-FW-E3 para 1]

The outcomes sought for *natural wetlands* are implemented by requiring identification, protection and restoration. The first two policies reflect the requirements of the NPSFM for identification and protection but apply that direction to all *natural wetlands*, rather than only inland natural wetlands (those outside the *coastal marine area*) as the NPSFM directs. This reflects the views of *mana whenua* and the community that *fresh* and *coastal water*, including *wetlands*, should be managed holistically and in a consistent way. While the NPSFM requires promotion of the restoration of natural inland wetlands, the policies in this section take a stronger stance, requiring improvement where *natural wetlands* have been *degraded* or *lost*. This is because of the importance of restoration to Kāi Tahu and in recognition of the historic loss of *wetlands* in Otago.

The policies respond to the NPSFM by identifying a number of *outstanding water bodies* in Otago that have previously been identified for their significance through other processes. Additional *water bodies* can be identified if they are wholly or partly within an outstanding natural feature or landscape or if they meet the criteria in APP1 which lists the types of values which may be considered outstanding: cultural and spiritual, ecology, landscape, natural character, recreation and physical. The significant values of *outstanding water bodies* are to be identified and protected from adverse effects.

Preserving the natural character of *lakes* and *rivers*, and their *beds* and margins, is a matter of national importance under section 6 of the RMA 1991. The policies in this section set out how this is to occur in

<sup>1318</sup> FPI030.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1319</sup> Clause 16(2) Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1320</sup> 00223.087 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku



Otago, reflecting the relevant direction from the NPSFM but also a range of additional matters that are important in Otago, such as recognising existing Water Conservation Orders, the Lake Wanaka Act 1973 and the particular character of braided *rivers*. Natural character has been reduced or lost in some *lakes* or *rivers*, so the policies require promoting actions that will restore or otherwise improve natural character.

The impact of *discharges* of *stormwater* and *wastewater* on *freshwater bodies* is a significant issue for *mana whenua* and has contributed to *water* quality issues in some *water bodies*. The policies set out a range of actions to be implemented in order to improve the quality of these *discharges* and reduce their adverse *effects* on receiving environments.

## Principal reasons

### LF-FW-PR3 – Principal reasons

Otago's *water bodies* are significant features of the region and play an important role in Kāi Tahu beliefs and traditions. They support people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural; well-being.<sup>1321</sup> A growing population combined with increased *land* use intensification has heightened demand for *water*, and increasing nutrient and sediment contamination impacts *water* quality. The legacy of Otago's historical mining privileges, coupled with contemporary urban and rural<sup>1322</sup> *land* uses, contribute to ongoing *water* quality and quantity issues in some *water bodies*, with significant cultural effects. [Note to reader: originally LF-FW-PR3 para 1]

This section of the LF chapter contains more specific direction on managing *fresh water* to give effect to *Te Mana o te Wai* and contributes to achieving the long-term *freshwater* visions for each *FMU* and *rohe*. It also reflects key direction in the NPSFM for managing the health and well-being of *fresh water*, including *wetlands* and *rivers* in particular, and matters of national importance under section 6 of the RMA 1991. The provisions in this section will underpin the development of the Council's *regional plans* and provide a foundation for implementing the requirements of the NPSFM, including the development of *environmental outcomes*, *attribute states*, target *attribute states* and limits.

## Anticipated environmental results

- LF-FW-AER4**      *Fresh water* is allocated within limits that contribute to achieving specified *environmental outcomes* for *water bodies* within timeframes set out in *regional plans* that are no less stringent than the timeframes in the LF-VM section of this chapter.
- LF-FW-AER5**      *Specified rivers* and *lakes* are suitable for primary contact within the timeframes set out in LF-FW-P7.
- LF-FW-AER6**      *Degraded water* quality is improved so that it meets specified *environmental outcomes* within timeframes set out in *regional plans* that are no less stringent than the timeframes in the objectives in the LF-FW<sup>1323</sup> LF-VM section of this chapter.
- LF-FW-AER7**      *Water* in Otago's aquifers is suitable for human consumption, unless that *water*

---

<sup>1321</sup> FPI009.010 COWA

<sup>1322</sup> FPI030.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1323</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

is naturally unsuitable for consumption.

**LF-FW-AER8**

Where *water* is not *degraded*, there is no reduction in *water* quality.

**LF-FW-AER9**

Direct *discharges* of *wastewater* to *water* are phased out to the greatest extent practicable and the<sup>1324</sup> frequency of *wastewater* overflows is reduced.

**LF-FW-AER10**

The quality of *stormwater discharges* from existing *urban areas* is improved.

**LF-FW-AER11**

There is an improvement<sup>1325</sup> ~~no reduction~~ in the extent and condition<sup>1326</sup> or quality of Otago's ~~natural~~ wetlands.

**LF-FW-AER11A**

The economic, social, and cultural well-being of communities is sustained.<sup>1327</sup>

## ~~LF-FW – Fresh water~~

**Note to readers:** As a result of the Hearing Panel's recommendations, the provisions of this chapter have been moved into the previous chapter (notified LF-VM)

## LF-LS – Land and soil

**Note to readers:** As a result of reporting officer recommendations, the following provisions have been moved to the LF-LS chapter:

- (a) UFD-O4 – Development in rural areas
- (b) UFD-P7 – Rural areas
- (c) UFD-P8 – Rural lifestyle and residential zones
- (d) UFD-M2(8) and (9)
- (e) UFD-E1 – Explanation (third paragraph)
- (f) UFD-PR1 – Principal reasons (sixth paragraph)

The notified numbering of UFD-O4 and UFD-P7 has been retained in the LF-LS chapter as an interim measure so that it is easier to link submission points to provisions. The numbering of both chapters will be updated and made chronological following a final decision by Council.

## Objectives

### LF-LS-O11 – Land and soil

~~The life-supporting capacity of Otago's soil resources is safeguarded and~~<sup>1328</sup> The availability and productive capacity of highly productive land for primary production is protected maintained<sup>1329</sup> now and for future generations.

<sup>1324</sup> FPI032.026 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, FPI030.040 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1325</sup> FPI035.021 Wise Response

<sup>1326</sup> FPI046.023 QLDC

<sup>1327</sup> FPI043.054 OWRUG

<sup>1328</sup> 00322.021 Fulton Hogan

<sup>1329</sup> 00114.025 Mt Cardrona Station

## LF-LS-O12 – Use, development, and protection of land

The use, development, and protection of land and soil:

- (1) safeguards the life-supporting capacity of soil,
- (2) contributes to achieving *environmental outcomes* for fresh water, and
- (3) recognises the role of these resources in providing for the social, economic, and cultural well-being of Otago’s people and communities.<sup>1330</sup>

~~The use of land in Otago maintains soil quality and contributes to achieving *environmental outcomes* for fresh water.~~

## UFD-O4 – Development in rural areas

Development in Otago’s rural areas occurs in a way that:

- ~~(1) avoids impacts on significant values and features identified in this RPS,<sup>1331</sup>~~
  - ~~(2) avoids as the first priority, land and soils identified as highly productive by LF-LS-P19 unless there is an *operational need* for the development to be located in rural areas,<sup>1332</sup>~~
  - ~~(3) only provides for urban expansion, rural lifestyle and rural residential development and the establishment of *sensitive activities*, in locations identified through strategic planning or zoned within *district plans* as suitable for such development; and<sup>1333</sup>~~
  - ~~(4) provides for the ongoing use of rural areas for *primary production* and *rural industry*, and<sup>1334</sup> outside of areas identified in (3),<sup>1335</sup> maintains and enhances the *natural and physical resources* that support the<sup>1336</sup> productive capacity,<sup>1337</sup> rural character,<sup>1338</sup> and long term viability of the rural sector<sup>1339</sup> and rural communities.~~
- (4A) does not compromise the long term viability of *primary production* and rural communities.<sup>1340</sup>

## Policies

### LF-LS-P16A – Managing pests<sup>1341</sup>

Reduce the impact of pests, including *wilding conifers*, by:

<sup>1330</sup> 00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00239.197 Federated Farmers, 00115.034 Oceana Gold

<sup>1331</sup> 00137.154 DOC, 00226.310 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1332</sup> 00139.001, 00139.253 DCC

<sup>1333</sup> 00211.045, 00211.048 & 00211.049 LAC, 00210.045, 00210.048 & 00210.049 Lane Hocking, 00209.045, 00209.048 & 00209.049 Universal Developments, 00118.066 Maryhill Ltd, 00014.066 Mt Cardrona Station, 00139.001, 00139.253 DCC

<sup>1334</sup> 00322.038 Fulton Hogan

<sup>1335</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00139.001, 00139.253 DCC

<sup>1336</sup> 00236.099 Horticulture NZ

<sup>1337</sup> 00236.005 Horticulture NZ

<sup>1338</sup> 00139.262 DCC, 00211.050 LAC, 00210.050 Lane Hocking, 00118.066 Maryhill Limited, 00014.066 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.050 Universal Developments

<sup>1339</sup> 00322.038 Fulton Hogan, 00230.144 Forest and Bird

<sup>1340</sup> 00137.154 Director General of Conservation, 00226.310 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00139.001, 00139.253 & 00139.262 Dunedin City Council, 00211.045, 00211.048, 00211.049 & 00211.050 LAC Properties, 00210.045, 00210.048, 00210.049 & 00210.050 Lane Hocking, 00209.045, 00209.048, 00209.049 & 00209.050 Universal Developments Hawea Limited, 00118.066 Maryhill Ltd, 00014.066 Mt Cardrona Station, 00322.038 Fulton Hogan, 00410.007 Rural Contractors NZ, 00236.099 Horticulture NZ, 00118.066 Maryhill Limited, 00014.066 Mt Cardrona Station, 00322.038 Fulton Hogan, 00230.144 Royal Forest and Bird Protection Society of New Zealand Incorporated.

<sup>1341</sup> 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC

- (1) avoiding *afforestation* and *replanting* of *plantation forests* with *wilding conifer* species listed in APP5 within:
  - (a) areas identified as outstanding natural features, outstanding natural landscapes, or *significant natural areas*, and
  - (b) buffer zones adjacent to the areas listed in (a) where it is necessary to protect those areas,
- (2) outside *plantation forests*, avoiding the planting of *wilding conifer* species listed in APP5 and any other *pests* in a way that is consistent with the Otago Regional Pest Management Plan 2019-2029,
- (3) enabling the control of *pests* on *land*, and
- (4) supporting initiatives to control *pests* and limit their further spread.

#### LF-LS-P16 – Maintaining soil quality<sup>1342</sup> ~~Integrated management~~

Maintain ~~Recognise that maintaining~~<sup>1343</sup> soil quality by managing both ~~requires the integrated management of~~<sup>1344</sup> *land* and *freshwater* resources, including the interconnections between soil health, vegetative cover and *water* quality and quantity.

#### LF-LS-P17 – Soil values

Maintain the ~~mauri~~, health and productive potential of soils, to the extent reasonably practicable by managing the use and development of *land* in a way that is suited to the ~~natural~~ soil characteristics and that sustains mauri through healthy:

- (1) soil biological activity and *biodiversity*,
- (2) soil structure, and
- (3) soil fertility.

#### LF-LS-P18 – Soil erosion

Minimise soil erosion, and the associated risk of sedimentation in water bodies, resulting from *land* use activities by:

- (2) maintaining vegetative cover on erosion-prone *land*, to the extent practicable<sup>1345</sup>, ~~and~~
- (1) implementing effective<sup>1346</sup> management practices to ~~retain topsoil in situ and~~<sup>1347</sup> minimise the potential for soil to be *discharged* to *water bodies*, including by controlling the timing, duration, scale and location of soil exposure, and
- (3) promoting activities that enhance soil retention.

<sup>1342</sup> 00226.201 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00121.0062 Ravensdown

<sup>1343</sup> 00226.201 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00121.0062 Ravensdown

<sup>1344</sup> 00226.201 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00121.0062 Ravensdown

<sup>1345</sup> FPI017.013 Ravensdown Ltd

<sup>1346</sup> FPI024.035 Dairy NZ

<sup>1347</sup> FPI027.036 Contact

### LF-LS-P20 – Land use change

Promote changes in *land* use or *land* management practices that support and<sup>1348</sup> improve:

- (1) the sustainability and efficiency of *water* use,
- (2) resilience to the impacts of *climate change*, or
- (3) the health and quality of soil, or
- (4) water quality<sup>1349</sup>

### LF-LS-P21 – Land use and fresh water

The health and well-being of *water bodies* and freshwater ecosystems is maintained<sup>1350</sup> ~~Achieve the improvement or maintenance of fresh water quantity or quality~~ to meet *environmental outcomes* set for *Freshwater Management Units* and/or rohe by:

- (1) reducing or otherwise maintaining the adverse effects of<sup>1351</sup> direct and indirect *discharges* of *contaminants* to *water* from the use and development of *land*, ~~and~~
- (2) managing *land* uses that may have adverse *effects* on the flow of *water* in surface *water bodies* or the recharge of *groundwater*, ~~and~~
- (3) recognising the drylands nature of some of Otago and the resulting low water availability, and<sup>1352</sup>
- (4) maintaining or, where degraded, enhancing the habitat and biodiversity values of riparian margins.<sup>1353</sup>

### LF-LS-P19 – Highly productive land

Maintain the availability and productive capacity of highly productive *land* by:

- (1) identifying highly productive *land* based on the following criteria:
  - (a) ~~the capability and versatility of the land to support primary production based on the Land-Use Capability classification system,~~
  - (b) ~~the suitability of the climate for primary production, particularly crop production, and~~
  - (c) ~~the size and cohesiveness of the area of land for use for primary production, and~~
  - (d) land must be identified as highly productive land if:
    - (i) it is in a general rural zone or rural production zone, and
    - (ii) it is predominantly LUC 1, 2, or 3 land, and
    - (iii) it forms a large and geographically cohesive area,
  - (e) land may be identified as highly productive land if;

<sup>1348</sup> 00223.096 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>1349</sup> 00409.015 Ballance

<sup>1350</sup> 00121.066 Ravensdown

<sup>1351</sup> FPI029.037 Contact, FPI017.014 Ravensdown, FPI021.006 Ballance

<sup>1352</sup> FPI044.009 Director General of Conservation

<sup>1353</sup> FPI029.037 Contact, FPI017.014 Ravensdown, FPI044.022 DOC

- (i) it is in a general rural zone or rural production zone, and
- (ii) it is not LUC 1, 2, or 3 land, and
- (iii) it is or has potential to be highly productive for land-based primary production in Otago, having regard to the soil type, the physical characteristics of the land and soil, and the climate, and
- (f) land must not be identified as highly productive land if it was identified for future urban development on or before 17 October 2022, and
- (2) prioritising the use of highly productive land for land-based primary production in accordance with the NPSHPL ahead of other land uses, and
- ~~(3) managing urban development in rural areas, including rural lifestyle and rural residential areas, in accordance with UFD-P4, UFD-P7 and UFD-P8.<sup>1354</sup>~~

### UFD-P7 –Rural Areas

The management of development in<sup>1355</sup> *rural areas*:

- ~~(1) provides for the maintenance and, wherever possible, enhancement of important features and values identified by this RPS,<sup>1356</sup>~~
- (2) outside areas identified in (1),<sup>1357</sup> maintains the productive capacity, amenity and character of rural areas, as places where people live, work and recreate and where a range of activities and services are required to support these rural functions, and provide for social and economic wellbeing within rural communities and the wider region.<sup>1359</sup>
- (3) prioritises<sup>1360</sup> land-based<sup>1361</sup> primary production particularly on land or soils identified as<sup>1362</sup> on highly productive land<sup>1363</sup> in accordance with the NPS-HPL LF-LS-P19<sup>1364</sup>, except as provided for in (5) below,
- ~~(4) facilitates rural industry and supporting activities,~~
- (5) enables the use by Kāi Tahu of Native Reserves and Māori Land, for papakāika, kāika, nohoaka, marae and marae related activities in accordance with MW-P4, directs rural residential and rural lifestyle development to areas zoned for that purpose in accordance with UFD-P8<sup>1365</sup>,

<sup>1354</sup> 00139.120 Dunedin City Council

<sup>1355</sup> 00240.033 New Zealand Pork Industry Board, 00239.172 Federated Farmers, 00236.096 Horticulture New Zealand

<sup>1356</sup> 00226.318 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00139.262 DCC, 00411.135 Wayfare, 00206.072 Trojan

<sup>1357</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.318 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00139.262 DCC, 00411.135 Wayfare, 00206.072 Trojan

<sup>1358</sup> 00139.262 Dunedin City Council, 00211.050 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.050 Lane Hocking, 00118.066 Maryhill Limited, 00014.066 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.05 Universal Development Limited

<sup>1359</sup> 00235.152 OWRUG, 00015.032 Oceana Gold

<sup>1360</sup> 00226.318 Horticulture NZ, Kai Tahu ki Otago, 00015.032 Oceana Gold, 00235.152 OWRUG, 00410.009 Rural Contractors NZ, 00016.024 Alluvium and Stoney Creek

<sup>1361</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00021.002 Matakanui Gold Limited, 00016.009 Alluvium Limited and Stoney Creek Mining, 00017.007 Danny Walker and others, 00226.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00223.094 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>1362</sup> 00236.102 Horticulture NZ, 00226.318 Kai Tahu ki Otago, 00015.032 Oceana Gold, 00235.152 OWRUG, 00410.009 Rural Contractors NZ, 00016.024 Alluvium and Stoney Creek

<sup>1363</sup> 00236.102 Horticulture NZ, 00226.318 Kai Tahu ki Otago, 00015.032 Oceana Gold, 00235.152 OWRUG, 00410.009 Rural Contractors NZ, 00016.024 Alluvium and Stoney Creek

<sup>1364</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.318 Kai Tahu ki Otago, 00235.153 OWRUG

<sup>1365</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00025.004 Boxer Hills Trust, 00023.005 Waterfall Park Developments Limited

- (6) restricts the establishment of non-rural residential activities, sensitive activities, and non-rural businesses<sup>1366</sup> which could adversely affect, including by way of reverse sensitivity or fragmentation, the productive capacity of highly productive *land*, or existing or anticipated<sup>1367</sup> *primary production* and *rural industry* activities, ~~unless those activities are undertaken in accordance with MW-P4~~ except as provided for in (5)<sup>1368</sup> or the NPS-HPL.<sup>1369</sup> and
- (7) ~~otherwise limits the establishment of residential activities, sensitive activities, and non-rural businesses to those that can demonstrate an operational need to be located in rural areas.~~<sup>1370</sup>

#### **UFD-P8 – Rural lifestyle and rural residential zones**<sup>1371</sup> development<sup>1372</sup>

The establishment, development or expansion of rural lifestyle and rural residential<sup>1373</sup> zones development only occurs where:<sup>1374</sup>

- (1) ~~the land is adjacent to existing or planned urban areas and ready access to employment and services is available,~~<sup>1375</sup>
- (2) ~~despite the direction in (1), also it~~<sup>1376</sup> avoids *land* identified for future urban development in a relevant plan or *land* reasonably likely to be required for its future urban development potential, where the rural lifestyle or rural residential development would foreclose or reduce efficient realisation of that urban development potential,
- (3) it<sup>1377</sup> minimises impacts on existing or anticipates primary production, rural industry and other rural activities<sup>1378</sup> and the potential for reverse sensitivity *effects*. ~~rural production potential, amenity values~~<sup>1379</sup>
- (4) it<sup>1380</sup> avoids, ~~as the first priority,~~ *highly productive land* identified in accordance with LF-LS-P16 except as provided for in the NPS-HPL,<sup>1381</sup>
- (5) the suitability of the area to accommodate the proposed development is demonstrated, including
  - (a) capacity for servicing by existing or planned *development infrastructure* (including self-servicing requirements),

<sup>1366</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00213.009 Fonterra Co-operative Group Limited  
<sup>1367</sup> 0015.032 Oceana Gold

<sup>1368</sup> 00139.264 Dunedin City Council

<sup>1369</sup> 00014.031 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.01 Universal Developments, 00210.012 Lane Hocking, 00211.01 LAC Properties.

<sup>1370</sup> 00208.011 AgResearch Ltd, 00414.005 Infinity Investment Group Holdings Ltd, 00413.007 NZ Cherry Corp, 00410.009 Rural Contractors NZ.

<sup>1371</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00221.016 Silver Fern Farms, 00236.103 Horticulture NZ.

<sup>1372</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00025.004 Boxer Hills Trust, 00023.005 Waterfall Park Developments Limited

<sup>1373</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00221.016 Silver Fern Farms, 00236.103 Horticulture NZ.

<sup>1374</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00025.004 Boxer Hills Trust, 00023.005 Waterfall Park Developments Limited

<sup>1375</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00025.004 Boxer Hills Trust, 00023.005 Waterfall Park Developments Limited

<sup>1376</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from Boxer Hills Trust, 00023.005 Waterfall Park Developments Limited

<sup>1377</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1378</sup> 00236.103 Horticulture NZ, 00208.012 AgResearch, 00235.153 OWRUG, 00410.010 Rural Contractors NZ

<sup>1379</sup> 00211.050 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.050 Lane Hocking, 00118.066 Maryhill Limited, 00014.066 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.05 Universal Development Limited

<sup>1380</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1381</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00014.031 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.01 Universal Developments, 00210.012 Lane Hocking, 00211.01 LAC Properties.

- (b) particular regard is given to the individual and cumulative impacts of ~~domestic~~<sup>1382</sup> water supply, *wastewater* disposal, and *stormwater* management including self-servicing, on the receiving or supplying environment and impacts on capacity of *development infrastructure*, if provided, to meet other planned urban area demand, and
- (c) likely future demands or implications for publicly funded services including emergency services<sup>1383</sup> and *additional infrastructure*, ~~and~~  
~~(6) provides for the maintenance and wherever possible, enhancement, of important features and values identified by this RPS.~~<sup>1384</sup>

## LF-LS-P22 – Public access

Provide for public access to and along *lakes* and *rivers* by:

- (1) maintaining existing public access,
- (2) seeking opportunities to enhance public access, including access<sup>1385</sup> by *mana whenua* in their role as kaitiaki and for gathering of *mahika kai mahika kai*,<sup>1386</sup> and
- (3) encouraging landowners to ~~only~~ avoid restricting access unless ~~where~~<sup>1387</sup> it is necessary to protect:<sup>1388</sup>
  - (a) ~~public~~<sup>1389</sup> health and safety,
  - (b) *significant natural areas*,
  - (c) areas of outstanding natural character,
  - (d) outstanding natural features and landscapes,
  - (e) places or areas with special or outstanding *historic heritage* values, or
  - (f) places or areas of significance to Kāi Tahu, ~~mana whenua~~, including wāhi taoka<sup>1390</sup>, wāhi tapu and wāhi tūpuna,
  - (g) establishing vegetation, or<sup>1391</sup>
  - (h) a level of security consistent with the operational requirements of a lawfully established activity.<sup>1392</sup>

## Methods

### LF-LS-M11A – Identification of *highly productive land*<sup>1393</sup>

- (1) In collaboration with territorial authorities and in consultation with mana whenua, Otago Regional

<sup>1382</sup> 00219.019 FENZ

<sup>1383</sup> 00219.018 FENZ

<sup>1384</sup> 00226.319 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00411.087 Wayfare

<sup>1385</sup> 00226.206 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1386</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1387</sup> 00231.065 Fish and Game

<sup>1388</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendments arising from 00314.028 Transpower

<sup>1389</sup> 00239.094 Federated Farmers

<sup>1390</sup> 00226.207 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1391</sup> 00206.041 Trojan, 00411.053 Wayfare

<sup>1392</sup> 00237.047 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

<sup>1393</sup> 00201.018 CODC, 00201.019 CODC, 00206.040 Trojan, 00235.110 OWRUG



Council must identify *highly productive land* in Otago in accordance with LS-LS-P19(1), and

- (2) Otago Regional Council must include maps of the *highly productive land* identified in accordance with (1) in the Regional Policy Statement by the date specified in the National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land.

### LF-LS-M11 – Regional plans

Otago Regional Council must publicly notify a Land and Water *Regional Plan* no later than 31 December 2023<sup>1394</sup> and then, when it is made operative, maintain that *regional plan* to:

- (1) manage *land* uses that may affect the ability of *environmental outcomes* for water quality to be achieved by requiring:
  - (a) the development and implementation of *certified freshwater farm plans* as required by the RMA and any regulations,<sup>1395</sup>
  - (b) the adoption of practices that reduce the *risk* of sediment and nutrient loss to *water*, including by minimising the area and duration of exposed soil, using buffers, and actively managing critical source areas,
  - (c) effective management of effluent storage and applications systems, and
  - (d) *earthworks* activities to implement effective sediment and erosion control practices and setbacks from *water bodies* to reduce the *risk* of sediment loss to *water*, and
- (2) provide for changes in *land* use that improve the sustainable and efficient allocation and use of *fresh water* and that reduce water demand where there is existing over-allocation<sup>1396</sup>, and
- (2A) enable the *discharge* of *contaminants to land* for *pest control*, and<sup>1397</sup>
- (3) implement policies LF-LS-P16 to LF-LS<sup>1398</sup>-P22.

### LF-LS-M12 – District plans

Territorial authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* no later than 31 December 2026 to:

- (1) manage *land* use change by:
  - (aa) avoiding the planting of *pest plants* in accordance with LF-LS-P16A,<sup>1399</sup>
  - (a) controlling the establishment of new or any spatial extension of existing *land use activities* ~~plantation forestry activities~~<sup>1400</sup> where necessary to give effect to an objective developed under the NPSFM, and
  - (b) minimising the removal of montane<sup>1401</sup> tall tussock grasslands, to recognise their ability to capture and hold precipitation,<sup>1402</sup> and

<sup>1394</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1395</sup> FPI037.022 Fish & Game, FPI030.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1396</sup> FPI030.043 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1397</sup> FPI044.023 DOC

<sup>1398</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1399</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

<sup>1400</sup> 00509.092 Wise Response

<sup>1401</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1402</sup> 00509.092 Wise Response

- (2) provide for and promote ~~encourage~~<sup>1403</sup> the creation and enhancement of vegetated riparian margins and constructed *wetlands*, and maintain these where they already exist, ~~and~~
- (3) facilitate public access to and along<sup>1404</sup> *lakes* and *rivers* by:
  - (a) requiring the establishment of *esplanade reserves* and *esplanade strips*, and
  - (b) promoting the use of legal *roads*, including paper *roads*, and any other means of public access rights<sup>1405</sup> that connect with *esplanade reserves* and *esplanade strips*, and
- (4) maintain the availability and productive capacity<sup>1406</sup> of highly productive land identified and mapped under LF-LS-M11A<sup>1407</sup> in accordance with LF-LS-P19, and<sup>1408</sup>
- (8) manage development in *rural areas* in accordance with UFD-P7,
- (9) manage ~~rural residential~~ and rural lifestyle activities development<sup>1409</sup> in ~~rural areas~~<sup>1410</sup> in accordance with UFD-P8.<sup>1411</sup>

### LF-LS-M13 – Management of *beds* and riparian margins

*Local authorities* must prepare or amend and maintain their *regional plans*<sup>1412</sup> and *district plans* to manage the condition of the *bed* and banks of *water bodies*, riparian margins and associated *lands*, including vegetative cover, to:

- (1) maintain or enhance<sup>1413</sup> existing indigenous<sup>1414</sup> *biodiversity* values,
- (2) increase the presence, resilience and abundance of indigenous flora and fauna, particularly taoka species, including by providing for wetlands and<sup>1415</sup> *biodiversity* corridors within *river* systems, and requiring riparian buffers that are sufficient to maintain indigenous *biodiversity*,
- (3) support improvement in the functioning of catchment processes where these have been adversely affected by changes in margins and connected *lands* over time, and
- (4) reduce unnatural sedimentation of *water bodies*.

### LF-LS-M14 – Other methods

In addition to methods LF-LS-M11 to LF-LS-M13, the methods in the LF-WAI, ~~LF-VM~~<sup>1416</sup> and LF-FW sections are also applicable.

<sup>1403</sup> 00509.092 Wise Response

<sup>1404</sup> 00206.042 Trojan, 00411.054 Wayfare, 00231.097 Fish and Game

<sup>1405</sup> 00206.042 Trojan, 00411.054 Wayfare, 00231.067 Fish and Game

<sup>1406</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00014.031 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.01 Universal Developments, 00210.012 Lane Hocking, 00211.01 LAC

<sup>1407</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1408</sup> 00140.023 Waitaki DC

<sup>1409</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00221.016 Silver Fern Farms, 00236.103 Horticulture NZ

<sup>1410</sup> 00206.074 Trojan, 00411.136 Wayfare

<sup>1411</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

<sup>1412</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1413</sup> 00509.093 Wise Response

<sup>1414</sup> 00137.079 DOC

<sup>1415</sup> 00509.093 Wise Response

<sup>1416</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

## Explanation

### LF-LS-E4 – Explanation

The policies in this section of the LF chapter seek to maintain the health of Otago’s soils, reduce the impact of pests<sup>1417</sup> and manage *land* uses as part of an integrated approach to sustaining soil and *water* health and maintaining the productive capacity of rural land. The connections and interactions between these resources require a holistic approach to management.

~~Managing soil resources, in particular, cannot be undertaken in isolation.~~ The policies require managing the use and development of *land* and *fresh water* to maintain soil values, recognising that soil can be valued for more than its productive use and those values should be maintained. Soil erosion is problematic ~~for~~ and has adverse impacts on both soil and *water* health. The policies provide direction ~~on~~ for managing erosion resulting from *land* use activities to, ~~primarily, retain~~ ensure soil is retained and to prevent its discharge to water.<sup>1418</sup>

In addition, this chapter seeks to manage development in Otago’s rural areas, maintain the character and amenity values of Otago’s rural areas, including by facilitating the use of the natural and physical resources that to<sup>1419</sup> support the viability of the rural sector. ~~Otago’s rural and urban areas also contain significant natural, cultural and historic values as identified by other parts of this RPS. In all cases while facilitating urban development and managing rural productive activities these values must also be identified, maintained and, wherever possible, enhanced.~~<sup>1420</sup> This approach includes direction on the different types of development within *rural areas*, ~~managing the expansion and location of urban areas, and including~~<sup>1421</sup> rural lifestyle and rural residential<sup>1422</sup> development, ~~and directing that growth be enabled in urban areas to minimise the need for development to occur within rural areas,~~<sup>1423</sup> other than what is needed to facilitate rural community and rural productive activities.<sup>1424</sup> These provisions work closely with those in the UFD chapter, which include direction on managing the impacts of urban growth on rural areas.<sup>1425</sup>

*Highly productive land* is *land* used for land-based primary production ~~primary production~~<sup>1426</sup> that provides economic and employment benefits. Providing for and managing such *land* types is essential to ensure its sustainability. The policies seek to identify and prioritise *land* used for productive purposes managing urban encroachment into rural environments where appropriate.

Responding to *climate change* and achieving *freshwater* visions is likely to require changes in *land* uses

---

<sup>1417</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

<sup>1418</sup> 00226.212 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1419</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendments arising from 00240.033 New Zealand Pork Industry Board, 00239.172 Federated Farmers, 00236.096 Horticulture New Zealand, 00211.050 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.050 Lane Hocking, 00118.066 Maryhill Limited, 00014.066 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.05 Universal Development Limited

<sup>1420</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00137.151 Director General of Conservation, 00226.307 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1421</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

<sup>1422</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00221.016 Silver Fern Farms, 00236.103 Horticulture NZ

<sup>1423</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

<sup>1424</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

<sup>1425</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

<sup>1426</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00021.002 Matakanui Gold Limited, 00016.009 Alluvium Limited and Stoney Creek Mining, 00017.007 Danny Walker and others, 00226.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00223.094 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

and land management practices in parts of Otago. This is recognised in the policies which seek to promote changes in *land* use or management that improve efficient and sustainable<sup>1427</sup> use of *water*, *resilience to climate change*, and the health and quality of soil, and water quality.<sup>1428</sup> The policies also require reducing *discharges to water* from the use and development of *land* and managing *land* uses that are unsupportive of *environmental outcomes for fresh water* as identified by each *FMU*.

Maintaining public access to and along *lakes* and *rivers* is a matter of national importance under section 6 of the RMA 1991.<sup>1429</sup> The policies in this section seek to maintain existing public access opportunities<sup>1430</sup> and where appropriate promote enhanced<sup>1431</sup> public access to and along *lakes* and *rivers*. Circumstances which restrict public access are set out where, for example, public<sup>1432</sup> health and safety is at *risk* or valued parts of the *environment* may be compromised.

## Principal reasons

### LF–LS – PR4 – Principal reasons

*Pests, including wilding conifers, pose a range of threats to Otago’s environment. While the regional pest management plan is the primary tool for controlling pests under the Biosecurity Act 1993, it is important that the management of land works alongside that tool to reduce the impacts of pests.*<sup>1433</sup>

Population growth and *land* use intensification in urban and rural environments has increased demand for *land* and soil resources. It has also impacted on the quality of our *water*, increasing contamination such as by nutrients and sediment and harming ecosystems. In Otago, historical and contemporary *land* uses have *degraded* some *water bodies*, both in terms of their quantity and quality, leading to adverse effects on the mauri of *water* and the diversity and abundance of *mahika kai mahika kai*<sup>1434</sup> resources.

Soil health is vital to wider ecological health, human health, and economic *resilience*. Otago has a rich and long history of varied forms of *land-based primary production* ~~primary production~~<sup>1435</sup> on a wide range of soil types and in variable climatic conditions. Otago’s highest quality soils (in terms of suitability for *land-based primary production* ~~primary production~~<sup>1436</sup>) are mainly on the *Taiari Taieri*<sup>1437</sup> Plain, North Otago downlands, South Otago lowlands, parts of Central Otago and the Strath Taieri, and along some *river* margins. Their extent is limited and use of these soils can be constrained by external factors such as economics, erosion, natural and human induced hazards, animal, and plant pests.

Managing *land* uses is a critical component of implementing the NPSFM due to the effects of *land* use on the health and well-being of *water*. This chapter assists the Council to recognise and provide for the connections and interactions between Otago’s *land* and *fresh water*, while managing the use and

---

<sup>1427</sup> 00226.212 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1428</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00409.015 Ballance

<sup>1429</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1430</sup> 00226.212 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1431</sup> 00226.212 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1432</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00239.094 Federated Farmers

<sup>1433</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

<sup>1434</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1435</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00021.002 Matakanui Gold Limited, 00016.009 Alluvium Limited and Stoney Creek Mining, 00017.007 Danny Walker and others, 00226.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00223.094 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>1436</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00021.002 Matakanui Gold Limited, 00016.009 Alluvium Limited and Stoney Creek Mining, 00017.007 Danny Walker and others, 00226.033 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00223.094 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>1437</sup> 00234.005 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

development of this *land*, and its effects on *fresh water*.

Rural areas are attractive as residential living areas, and for other non-rural activities. However, they contain areas, activities and resources critical for rural production. There is pressure from non-rural activities and rural lifestyle development to locate within the rural area, but these activities that can be impacted by sensitive to *primary production or rural industry* and can adversely affect rural production activities.<sup>1438</sup> ~~Non-urban areas also contain a wide range of other values that can be negatively impacted by the impacts of rural residential and other activities, that do not have a functional need to be in rural areas.~~<sup>1439</sup> The provisions in this chapter focus on managing where rural living opportunities and other non-rural activities are provided for, so that<sup>1440</sup> the potential effects of development on the rural character,<sup>1441</sup> productive potential and the wide range of environmental values, features and resources that *rural areas* also contain are appropriately managed.<sup>1442</sup> The supply of rural lifestyle opportunities to meet demand should be directed to suitably located and zoned areas to minimise impacts on values in *rural areas*. In designing and planning for rural residential and rural<sup>1443</sup> lifestyle development, local authorities will need to be aware of the potential future constraints on future urban expansion and development, including the cumulative impacts of infrastructure servicing irrespective of whether this is onsite, community or through connections to urban reticulated schemes.

Riparian areas, in particular, play a key role in supporting the *water* quality and ecosystem values of *water bodies*, and it is important that this role is maintained.<sup>1444</sup>

## Anticipated environmental results

<b>LF-LS-AER12A</b>	The area of <i>land</i> vegetated by <i>wilding conifers</i> is reduced. <sup>1445</sup>
<b>LF-LS-AER12B</b>	The extent and distribution of <i>pests</i> does not increase. <sup>1446</sup>
<b>LF-LS-AER12</b>	The life-supporting capacity of soil is maintained or improved throughout Otago.
<b>LF-LS-AER13</b>	The availability and capability of Otago's highly productive land is maintained.
<b>LF-LS-AER14</b>	The use of <i>land</i> supports the achievement of <i>environmental outcomes</i> and objectives in Otago's <i>FMUs</i> and rohe.
<b>UFD-AER11</b>	All <del>new rural residential or rural</del> <sup>1447</sup> lifestyle development occurs within areas zoned <u>appropriate</u> for this use. <sup>1448</sup>

<sup>1438</sup> 00236.106 Horticulture NZ

<sup>1439</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from changes recommended to UFD-P7 and UFD-P8.

<sup>1440</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from changes recommended to UFD-P7 and UFD-P8

<sup>1441</sup> 00211.050 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.050 Lane Hocking, 00118.066 Maryhill Limited, 00014.066 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.05 Universal Development Limited

<sup>1442</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from changes recommended to UFD-P7 and UFD-P8

<sup>1443</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00221.016 Silver Fern Farms, 00236.103 Horticulture NZ

<sup>1444</sup> 00226.213 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1445</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

<sup>1446</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

<sup>1447</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00221.016 Silver Fern Farms, 00236.103 Horticulture NZ

<sup>1448</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00025.004 Boxer Hills Trust, 00023.005 Waterfall Park Developments Limited

**LF-LS-AER15**

The establishment of activities within *rural areas* does not result in adverse effects on activities functionally dependent on rural resources and rural surroundings.<sup>1449</sup>

---

<sup>1449</sup> Consequential amendment due to restructure of the UFD chapter

# TOPICS

## ECO – Ecosystems and indigenous *biodiversity*

### Objectives

#### ECO–01 – Indigenous *biodiversity*

Otago's *indigenous biodiversity* is healthy and thriving and any overall<sup>1450</sup> decline in condition,<sup>1451</sup> ~~quality-~~ quantity and diversity is halted.

#### ECO–02 – Restoring ~~or~~ and<sup>1452</sup> enhancing

Restoration and<sup>1453</sup> enhancement activities result in an A<sup>1454</sup> ~~net overall~~<sup>1455</sup> increase in the extent and occupancy<sup>1456</sup> of Otago's *indigenous biodiversity* ~~results from restoration or enhancement.~~<sup>1457</sup>

#### ECO–03 – ~~Kaitiakiaka~~ Kaitiakitaka<sup>1458</sup> and stewardship

Mana whenua exercise their role ~~are recognised~~<sup>1459</sup> as kaitiaki of Otago's *indigenous biodiversity*, and Otago's communities are recognised as stewards, who are responsible for:

- (1) te hauora o te koiora (the health of ~~indigenous~~ *indigenous biodiversity*), te hauora o te taoka (the health of species and ecosystems that are taoka), and te hauora o te taiao (the health of the wider *environment*), while
- (2) providing for te hauora o te takata (the health of the people).

### Policies

#### ECO–P1 – Kaitiakitaka

~~Recognise the role of~~ Enable<sup>1460</sup> Kāi Tahu to exercise their role<sup>1461</sup> as kaitiaki of Otago's *indigenous biodiversity* by:

- (1) ~~involving~~ partnering with<sup>1462</sup> Kāi Tahu in the management of ~~indigenous~~ *indigenous biodiversity* to

---

<sup>1450</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1451</sup> 00306.042 Meridian

<sup>1452</sup> 00226.215 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1453</sup> 00226.215 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1454</sup> 00322.026 Fulton Hogan Limited

<sup>1455</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment from 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1456</sup> 00223.099 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku, 00226.215 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1457</sup> 00322.026 Fulton Hogan

<sup>1458</sup> 00234.031 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>1459</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1460</sup> 00226.217 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1461</sup> 00226.217 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1462</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

the extent desired by *mana whenua*,<sup>1463</sup>

- (1A) working with Kāi Tahu to identify and the identification of<sup>1464</sup> *indigenous species* and ecosystems that are taoka,
- (2) incorporating the use of mātauraka Māori in the management and monitoring of ~~indigenous~~ *indigenous biodiversity*, and
- (3) ~~providing for~~ facilitating<sup>1465</sup> access to and use of ~~indigenous~~ *indigenous biodiversity* by Kāi Tahu, including mahika kai, according to tikaka.

### **ECO-P2 – Identifying *significant natural areas* and taoka**

Identify and map:<sup>1466</sup>

- (1) the areas of *significant indigenous vegetation* or *significant habitat* of indigenous fauna that qualify as *significant natural areas* using the assessment criteria in APP2 and in accordance with ECO-M2,<sup>1467</sup> ~~and values of *significant natural areas* in accordance with APP2,~~ and
- (2) where appropriate,<sup>1468</sup> *indigenous species and ecosystems that are taoka, including those identified by *mana whenua* as requiring protection,*<sup>1469</sup> in accordance with ECO-M3.

### **ECO-P3 – Protecting *significant natural areas* and taoka**

Outside the coastal environment, and E~~except~~<sup>1470</sup> as provided for by ECO-P4 and ~~ECO-P5~~ ECO-P5A, protect *significant natural areas* and indigenous species and ecosystems that are taoka by:

- (1) first<sup>1471</sup> avoiding adverse *effects* that result in:
  - (a) ~~any reduction of the area or values (even if those values are not themselves significant) identified under ECO-P2(1), or~~<sup>1472</sup>
  - (aa) loss of ecosystem representation and extent,
  - (ab) disruption to sequences, mosaics, or *ecosystem function*,
  - (ac) fragmentation of *significant natural areas* or the loss of buffers or connections within an SNA,
  - (ad) a reduction in the function of the *significant natural area* as a buffer or connection to other important habitats or ecosystems, or
  - (ae) a reduction in the population size or occupancy of *Threatened or At Risk (declining) species* that use an *significant natural area* for any part of their life cycle,<sup>1473</sup>

<sup>1463</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1464</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1465</sup> 00239.099 Federated Farmers

<sup>1466</sup> 00020.018 Rayonier Matariki

<sup>1467</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1468</sup> 00226.218 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1469</sup> 00239.100 Federated Farmers

<sup>1470</sup> Clause (10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00301.028 Port Otago

<sup>1471</sup> 00223.100 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>1472</sup> 00230.102 Forest and Bird

<sup>1473</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ



- (b) any loss of Kāi Tahu taoka<sup>1474</sup> values identified by *mana whenua* as requiring protection<sup>1475</sup> under ECO-P2(2),<sup>1476</sup> and
- (2) after (1), applying the *biodiversity effects management hierarchy (in relation to indigenous biodiversity)* in ECO-P6, to areas and values other than those covered by ECO-P3(1),<sup>1477</sup> and
- (3) prior to *significant natural areas* and indigenous species and ecosystems that are taoka being identified and mapped<sup>1478</sup> in accordance with ECO-P2, adopt a precautionary approach towards activities in accordance with ~~IM-P15~~ IM-P6(2).<sup>1479</sup>

#### ECO-P4 – Provision for new activities

Outside of the coastal environment, maintain<sup>1480</sup> Otago’s indigenous *biodiversity* by following the sequential steps in the *effects management hierarchy (in relation to indigenous biodiversity)* ~~effects management hierarchy set out in ECO-P6~~ when making decisions on plans, applications for resource consent or notices of requirement for the following activities in *significant natural areas*, or where they may adversely affect indigenous species and ecosystems that are taoka that have been identified by *mana whenua* as requiring protection:

- (1) the development, operation, maintenance<sup>1481</sup> or upgrade of *specified infrastructure*<sup>1482</sup> ~~*nationally significant infrastructure and regionally significant infrastructure*~~<sup>1483</sup> that provides significant national or regional public benefit<sup>1484</sup> that has a *functional need*<sup>1485</sup> or *operational need* to locate within the relevant *significant natural area(s)* or where they may adversely affect indigenous species or ecosystems that are taoka, and there are no practicable alternative locations,<sup>1486</sup>
- (1A) the development, operation and maintenance of *mineral* extraction activities that provide a significant national public benefit that could not otherwise be achieved within New Zealand and that have a *functional need* or *operational need* to locate within the relevant *significant natural area(s)* or where they may adversely affect *indigenous species* or ecosystems that are taoka,<sup>1487</sup> and there are no practicable alternative locations,<sup>1488</sup>
- (1B) the development, operation and maintenance of aggregate extraction activities that provide a significant national or regional benefit that could not otherwise be achieved within New Zealand and that have a *functional need* or *operational need* to locate within the relevant *significant natural area(s)* or where they may adversely affect *indigenous species* or ecosystems that are taoka,<sup>1489</sup>
- (1C) the operation or expansion of any coal mine that was lawfully established before August 2023 that has a *functional need* or *operational need* to locate within the relevant *significant natural area(s)* or where they may adversely affect *indigenous species* or ecosystems that are taoka, and there are no practicable alternative locations; except that, after 31 December 2030, this exception applies

<sup>1474</sup> 00139.129 DCC

<sup>1475</sup> Consequential change to 00239.100 Federated Farmers

<sup>1476</sup> 00138.033 QLDC

<sup>1477</sup> Consequential change to 00239.100 Federated Farmers

<sup>1478</sup> 00020.018 Rayonier Matariki

<sup>1479</sup> 00139.040 DCC, 00121.027 Ravensdown

<sup>1480</sup> Clause (10)(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00301.028 Port Otago

<sup>1481</sup> 00311.022 Trustpower Limited

<sup>1482</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1483</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1484</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1485</sup> 00315.046 Aurora Energy, 00138.116 QLDC

<sup>1486</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1487</sup> 00115.022 Oceana Gold (New Zealand) Ltd

<sup>1488</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1489</sup> 00115.022 Oceana Gold (New Zealand) Ltd

only to such coal mines that extract coking coal,<sup>1490</sup>

- (2) the development of *papakāika*, marae and ancillary facilities associated with customary activities on Native reserves and Māori land,<sup>1491</sup>
- (2A) the sustainable use of *mahika kai*<sup>1492</sup> and kaimoana (seafood) by *mana whenua*,<sup>1493</sup>
- (3) the use of Native reserves and Māori land in a way that will make a significant contribution<sup>1494</sup> to enable *mana whenua* to maintain their connection to their whenua and enhancing the<sup>1495</sup> social, cultural or economic well-being<sub>z</sub> of *mana whenua*,<sup>1496</sup>
- (4) activities that are for the purpose of protecting, maintaining,<sup>1497</sup> restoring or enhancing a *significant natural area* or *indigenous species* or ecosystems that are taoka, ~~or~~<sup>1498</sup>
- (5) activities that are for the purpose of addressing a severe ~~and~~ or<sup>1499</sup> immediate risk to public health or safety<sub>z</sub>,
- (6) activities that are for the purpose of a developing a single residential dwelling on an allotment that was created before 4 August 2023, and can demonstrate there is no practicable location within the allotment where a single residential dwelling and essential associated on-site infrastructure can be constructed, or<sup>1500</sup>
- (7) activities that are for the purpose of harvesting indigenous tree species from an *significant natural area* carried out in accordance with a forest management plan or permit under Part 3A of the Forests Act 1949.<sup>1501</sup>

#### **ECO-P5 – Existing activities in significant natural areas**

Except as provided for by ECO-P4, provide for existing activities within *significant natural areas* and that may adversely affect indigenous species and ecosystems that are taoka, if:

- (1) ~~the continuation of an existing activity will not lead to the loss (including through cumulative loss) of extent or *degradation* of the ecological integrity of any *significant natural area* or indigenous species or ecosystems that are taoka, and~~
- (2) ~~the adverse *effects* of an existing activity are no greater in character, spatial extent, intensity or scale than they were before this RPS became operative.~~

#### **ECO-P5A – Managing adverse effects of established activities on significant natural areas**

Outside of the coastal environment, enable the maintenance, operation, and upgrade of established activities (excluding activities managed under ECO-P3 and ECO-P4), where the *effects* of the activity, including cumulative *effects*, on a *significant natural area*:

<sup>1490</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1491</sup> 00234.009 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, 00226.053 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00010.002 Cain whanau

<sup>1492</sup> 00226.0038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1493</sup> 00226.220 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1494</sup> 00234.032 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>1495</sup> 00234.032 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>1496</sup> 00234.032 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>1497</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1498</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1499</sup> 00139.130 DCC

<sup>1500</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1501</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

- (1) are no greater in intensity, scale, or character over time than at 4 August 2023, and
- (2) do not result in the loss of extent or degradation of *ecological integrity* of a *significant natural area*.<sup>1502</sup>

### **ECO-P6 – Maintaining indigenous *biodiversity***

Outside the coastal environment and excluding areas managed protected<sup>1503</sup> under ECO-P3, Maintain<sup>1504</sup> manage<sup>1505</sup> Otago's *indigenous biodiversity* (excluding the coastal environment and<sup>1506</sup> areas managed under ECO-P3) by:<sup>1507</sup>

- (1) applying the following *biodiversity effects management hierarchy* (in relation to *indigenous biodiversity*)<sup>1508</sup> to manage significant adverse effects on *indigenous biodiversity*), and<sup>1509</sup>
- (2) requiring the *maintenance of indigenous biodiversity* for all other adverse effects of any activity, and<sup>1510</sup>
- (3) notwithstanding (1) and (2) above, for *regionally significant infrastructure* and *nationally significant infrastructure* that is either *renewable electricity generation* or the *National Grid* avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects to the extent practicable.<sup>1511</sup>

in decision making on applications for *resource consent*, and notices of requirement:

- (1) ~~avoid adverse effects as the first priority,~~
- (2) ~~where adverse effects demonstrably cannot be completely avoided, they are remedied,~~
- (3) ~~where adverse effects demonstrably cannot be completely avoided or remedied, they are mitigated,~~
- (4) ~~where there are residual adverse effects after avoidance, remediation, and mitigation, then the residual adverse effects are offset in accordance with APP3, and~~
- (5) ~~if *biodiversity* offsetting of residual adverse effects is not possible, then:~~
  - (a) ~~the residual adverse effects are compensated for in accordance with APP4, and~~
  - (b) ~~if the residual adverse effects cannot be compensated for in accordance with APP4, the activity is avoided.~~

### **ECO-P7 – Coastal indigenous *biodiversity***

~~Coastal indigenous *Indigenous biodiversity* in the coastal environment is managed by CE-P5, in addition to all objectives and policies of the ECO chapter except ECO-P3, ECO-P4, ECO-P5A and ECO-P6 and implementation of CE-P5 also contributes to achieving ECO-O1.~~

<sup>1502</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1503</sup> 00230.105 Forest and Bird

<sup>1504</sup> Clause (10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00301.028 Port Otago

<sup>1505</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1506</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) - Consequential amendment arising from 00226.223 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1507</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1508</sup> 00016.013 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 0017.011 Danny Walker and Others, 00321.022 Te Waihanga

<sup>1509</sup> 00016.013 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 0017.011 Danny Walker and Others, 00321.022 Te Waihanga

<sup>1510</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1511</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

## ECO-P8 – Restoration and eEnhancement<sup>1512</sup>

The extent, occupancy<sup>1513</sup> and condition of Otago’s indigenous *biodiversity* is increased by:

- (1) restoring and enhancing habitat for indigenous species, including taoka and mahika kai species,
- (2) improving the health and *resilience* of *indigenous biodiversity*, including ecosystems, species, ~~important~~<sup>1514</sup> ecosystem function, and *intrinsic values*, and
- (3) buffering or linking ecosystems, habitats and ecological corridors-, ki uta ki tai<sup>1515</sup> and<sup>1516</sup>
- (4) prioritising all the following for restoration:
  - (a) significant natural areas whose ecological integrity is degraded,
  - (b) threatened and rare ecosystems representative of naturally occurring and formerly present ecosystems,
  - (c) areas that provide important connectivity or buffering functions,
  - (d) areas of indigenous biodiversity on native reserves and Māori land where restoration is advanced by the Māori landowners,
  - (e) any other priorities specified in regional biodiversity strategies or any national priorities for indigenous biodiversity restoration.<sup>1517</sup>

## ECO-P9 – ~~Wilding conifers~~

Reduce the impact of ~~wilding conifers~~ on indigenous *biodiversity* by:

- (1) ~~avoiding afforestation and replanting of plantation forests with wilding conifer species listed in APP5 within:~~
  - (a) ~~areas identified as significant natural areas, and~~
  - (b) ~~buffer zones adjacent to significant natural areas where it is necessary to protect the significant natural area, and~~
- (2) ~~supporting initiatives to control existing wilding conifers and limit their further spread.~~

## ECO-P10 – Integrated approach management<sup>1518</sup>

Manage indigenous biodiversity and the effects on it from subdivision, use and development in an integrated way, which means: ~~Implement an integrated and co-ordinated approach to managing Otago’s ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity that:~~<sup>1519</sup>

- (1) ~~ensuring~~<sup>1520</sup> any permitted or controlled activity in a *regional plan*<sup>1521</sup> or *district plan* rule does not compromise the achievement of ECO-O1,

<sup>1512</sup> 00226.224 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1513</sup> 00223.099 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku, 00226.215 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1514</sup> 00137.091 DOC

<sup>1515</sup> 00138.037 QLDC

<sup>1516</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1517</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1518</sup> 00226.226 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1519</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1520</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1521</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

- (2) recognises<sup>1522</sup> the interactions ki uta ki tai (from the mountains to the sea) between the terrestrial *environment*, *fresh water*, and the *coastal marine area*, including:
  - (a) the migration of fish species between *fresh* and *coastal waters*, and<sup>1523</sup>
  - (b) the effects of land-use activities on coastal biodiversity and ecosystems,<sup>1524</sup>
- (2A) acknowledging that *climate change* will affect *indigenous biodiversity* and managing activities which may exacerbate the *effects of climate change*,<sup>1525</sup>
- (3) providing for the coordinated management and control of subdivision, use and development, as it affects *indigenous biodiversity* across administrative boundaries, ~~promotes collaboration between individuals and agencies with *biodiversity* responsibilities,~~<sup>1526</sup>
- (4) working towards aligning strategies and other planning tools required or provided for in legislation that are relevant to *indigenous biodiversity*, ~~supports the various statutory and non-statutory approaches adopted to manage *indigenous biodiversity*,~~<sup>1527</sup>
- (5) recognises<sup>1528</sup> the critical role of people and communities in actively managing the remaining *indigenous biodiversity* occurring on private *land*, and
- (6) adopts<sup>1529</sup> regulatory and non-regulatory regional *pest* management programmes.

#### **ECO-P11 – Resilience to *climate change***<sup>1530</sup>

Promote the resilience of *indigenous biodiversity* to *climate change*, including at least by:

- (1) allowing and supporting the natural adjustment of *habitats* and ecosystems to the changing climate, and
- (2) considering the *effects of climate change* when making decisions on:
  - (a) *restoration proposals*, and
  - (b) managing and reducing new and existing biosecurity risks, and
- (3) maintaining and promoting the enhancement of the connectivity between ecosystems, and between existing and potential *habitats*, to enable migrations so that species can continue to find viable niches as the climate changes, and
- (4) recognising the role of *indigenous biodiversity* in mitigating the *effects of climate change*.<sup>1531</sup>

#### **ECO-P12 – Plantation forestry activities**<sup>1532</sup>

Manage:

- (1) the adverse *effects of plantation forestry* activities in any existing *plantation forest* on any *significant natural area* in a manner that:

<sup>1522</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1523</sup> 00226.226 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1524</sup> 00226.226 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1525</sup> 00234.033 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>1526</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1527</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1528</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1529</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1530</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1531</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1532</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

- (a) maintains *indigenous biodiversity* in the *significant natural area* as far as practicable, while
- (b) provides for *plantation forestry* activities to continue, and
- (2) over the course of consecutive rotations of production, any part of a *significant natural area* that is within an area of an existing *plantation forest* that is planted, or is intended to be, replanted in trees for harvest in the manner necessary to maintain the long-term populations of any *Threatened or At Risk (declining) species* present in the area.<sup>1533</sup>

## Methods

### ECO–M1 – Statement of responsibilities

In accordance with section 62(1)(i)(iii) of the RMA 1991, the *local authorities* responsible for the control of *land* use to maintain indigenous *biological diversity* are:

- (1) the Regional Council and *territorial authorities* are responsible for specifying objectives, policies and methods in *regional* and *district plans* for managing the margins of *wetlands, rivers* and *lakes*,
- (2) the Regional Council is responsible for specifying objectives, policies and methods in *regional plans*:
  - (a) in the *coastal marine area*,
  - (b) in *wetlands, lakes* and *rivers*, and
  - (c) in, on or under the *beds* of *rivers* and *lakes*,
- (3) in addition to (1), *territorial authorities* are responsible for specifying objectives, policies and methods in *district plans* outside of the areas listed in (2) above if they are not managed by the Regional Council under (4), and
- (4) the Regional Council may be responsible for specifying objectives, policies and methods in *regional plans* outside of the areas listed (1) above if:
  - (a) the Regional Council reaches agreement with the relevant *territorial authority* or *territorial authorities*, and
  - (b) if applicable, a transfer of powers in accordance with section 33 of the RMA 1991 occurs from the relevant *territorial authority* or *territorial authorities* to the Regional Council.

### ECO–M2 – Identification of *significant natural areas*

*Local authorities* must:

- (1) in accordance with the statement of responsibilities in ECO–M1, identify the areas and *indigenous biodiversity*<sup>1534</sup> values of *significant natural areas* as required by ECO–P2, and
- (2) map and verify<sup>1535</sup> the areas and include the *indigenous biodiversity*<sup>1536</sup> values identified under (1) in the relevant *regional plans*<sup>1537</sup> and *district plans*; no later than 31 December 2030,<sup>1538</sup>

<sup>1533</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1534</sup> 00226.228 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1535</sup> 00020.018 Rayonier Matariki

<sup>1536</sup> 00226.228 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1537</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1538</sup> 00139.036 DCC

- (3A) identify areas and values of *indigenous biodiversity* within their jurisdictions in accordance with CE-P5, map the areas and describe their values in the relevant *regional plans*<sup>1539</sup> and *district plans*, and<sup>1540</sup>
- (3) recognise that indigenous *biodiversity* spans jurisdictional boundaries by:
- (a) working collaboratively to ensure the areas identified by different *local authorities* are not artificially fragmented when identifying *significant natural areas* that span jurisdictional boundaries, and
- (b) ensuring that indigenous *biodiversity* is managed in accordance with this RPS,
- (4) until *significant natural areas* are identified and mapped in accordance with (1) and (2),<sup>1541</sup> require ecological assessments to be provided with applications for resource consent, *plan changes*<sup>1542</sup> and notices of requirement that identify whether affected areas are *significant natural areas* in accordance with APP2, and<sup>1543</sup>
- (5) in the following areas, prioritise identification under (1) ~~no later than 31 December 2025:~~<sup>1544</sup>
- (a) intermontane basins that contain indigenous vegetation and habitats,
- (b) areas of dryland shrubs,
- (c) braided *rivers*, including the Makarore, ~~Makarora~~ Mātakitaki<sup>1545</sup> Mātukituki and Lower Waitaki Rivers,
- (d) areas of montane tall tussock grasslands, and
- (e) limestone habitats.
- (6) When identifying *significant natural areas*, ensuring that:
- (a) if the values or extent of a proposed *significant natural area* are disputed by the landowner, the local authority:
- (i) conducts a physical inspection of the area,
- (ii) or, if a physical inspection is not practicable, uses the best information available to it at the time, and
- (b) if requested by a *territorial authority*, the *regional council* will assist the *territorial authority* in undertaking its district-wide assessment, and
- (c) where a *territorial authority* has identified a *significant natural area* prior to 4 August 2023, and prior to 4 August 2027, a suitably qualified ecologist is engaged by the *territorial authority* to confirm that the methodology originally used to identify the area as a *significant natural area*, and its application, is consistent with the assessment approach in APP2, and
- (d) if a *territorial authority* becomes aware (as a result of a resource consent application, notice of requirement or any other means) that an area may be an area of significant *indigenous*

<sup>1539</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1540</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), schedule 1, RMA – CE-M2(3) moved to ECO-M2(3A) as a consequential amendment arising from moving coastal biodiversity provisions from CE to ECO in response to 00301.028 Port Otago

<sup>1541</sup> 00311.014 Queenstown Airport

<sup>1542</sup> Consequential change to 00138.036 Queenstown Lakes District Council

<sup>1543</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1544</sup> 00139.002 DCC

<sup>1545</sup> 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

vegetation or significant habitat of indigenous fauna that qualifies as a significant natural area, the territorial authority:

- (i) conducts an assessment of the area in accordance with APP2 as soon as practicable, and
  - (ii) if a new significant natural area is identified as a result, includes it in the next appropriate plan or plan change notified by the territorial authority, and
  - (e) when a territorial authority does its 10-yearly plan review, it assesses its district in accordance with ECO-P2 and APP2 to determine whether changes are needed, and
- (7) allow an area of Crown-owned land to qualify as a significant natural area without the need for the assessment required by ECO-P2, using APP2, if:
- (a) the land is managed by the Department of Conservation under the Conservation Act 1987 or any other Act specified in Schedule 1 of that Act, and
  - (b) the territorial authority is reasonably satisfied, after consultation with the Department of Conservation, that all or most of the area would qualify as a significant natural area under APP2, and
  - (c) the area is:
    - (i) a large and more-or-less contiguous area managed under a single protection classification (such as a national park), or
    - (ii) a large, compact, and more-or-less contiguous area under more than one classification (such as adjoining reserves and a conservation park), or
    - (iii) a well-defined landscape or geographical feature (such as an island or mountain range), or
    - (iv) a scientific, scenic or nature reserve under the Reserves Act 1977, a sanctuary area, ecological area, or wildlife management area under the Conservation Act 1987, or an isolated part of a national park.<sup>1546</sup>

### **ECO-M3 – Identification of taoka**

Local authorities must:

- (1) work together with *mana whenua* to agree a process for:
  - (a) identifying indigenous species and ecosystems that are taoka, including those identified by *mana whenua* as requiring protection, and how they are values with reference to mātauraka Māori,<sup>1547</sup>
  - (b) describing the taoka identified in (1)(a),
  - (c) mapping or describing the location of the taoka identified in (1)(a), and
  - (d) describing the values of each taoka identified in (1)(a), and
- (2) notwithstanding (1), recognise that *mana whenua* have the right to choose not to identify taoka and to choose the level of detail at which identified taoka, or their location or values, are

<sup>1546</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1547</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00239.100 Federated Farmers



described, and

- (3) to the extent agreed by *mana whenua*, amend their *regional* and *district plans* to include matters (1)(b) to (1)(d) above, and
- (4) recognise that the possible adverse effects on identified taoka include effects on:
  - (a) the mauri of the taoka,
  - (b) the values of the taoka as identified by mana whenua
  - (c) the historical, cultural, and spiritual relationship of the tangata whenua with the taoka, as identified by mana whenua, and
- (5) notify the relevant landowner of the present of the taoka prior to identifying acknowledged taoka in a proposed district plan.<sup>1548</sup>

### **ECO–M4 – Regional plans**

Otago Regional Council must prepare or amend and maintain its *regional plans* to:

- (1) if the requirements of ECO–P3 and to<sup>1549</sup> ECO–P6 can be met, provide for the use of *lakes* and *rivers* and their *beds*, including:
  - (a) activities undertaken for the purposes of pest control or maintaining or enhancing the habitats of indigenous fauna, and
  - (b) the maintenance and use of existing *structures* that are lawfully established<sup>1550</sup> (including *infrastructure*), and
  - (c) *infrastructure* that has a *functional need*<sup>1551</sup> or *operational need* to be sited or operated in a particular location,
- (1A) manage the clearance or modification of indigenous vegetation, while allowing for mahika kai<sup>1552</sup> and kaimoana (seafood) activities<sup>1553</sup> (including through the development, in partnership with mana whenua, of provisions for mahika kai and kaimoana activities that may provide an alternative approach to effects management than the policies in this ECO chapter,<sup>1554</sup>
- (2) require:
  - (a) resource consent applications to include information that demonstrates that the sequential steps in the effects management hierarchy (in relation to indigenous biodiversity)<sup>1555</sup> ~~in~~ ECO–P6<sup>1556</sup> have been followed, and
  - (b) that consents are not granted if the sequential steps in the effects management hierarchy (in relation to indigenous biodiversity)<sup>1557</sup> in ECO–P6 have not been followed, and

<sup>1548</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1549</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1550</sup> 00230.113 Forest and Bird

<sup>1551</sup> 00315.046 Aurora Energy, 00138.116 QLDC

<sup>1552</sup> 00226.0038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1553</sup> 00226.230 Kāi Tahu ki Otago / Aukaha

<sup>1554</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1555</sup> 00016.013 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 0017.011 Danny Walker and Others, 00321.022 Te Waihanga, 00137.009 DOC

<sup>1556</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1557</sup> 00016.013 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 0017.011 Danny Walker and Others, 00321.022 Te Waihanga, 00137.009 DOC

- (3) provide for activities undertaken for the purpose of restoring or enhancing the habitats of indigenous fauna.

### **ECO – M4A – Increasing indigenous vegetation cover**<sup>1558</sup>

Otago Regional Council must:

- (1) assess the percentage of indigenous vegetation cover in
  - (a) each of its urban environments; and
  - (b) its non-urban environments
- (2) the assessment may be done by a desktop analysis, by ground truthing, or both, and must be done in collaboration with relevant territorial authorities, and *mana whenua* (to the extent they wish to be involved),
- (3) set a target of at least 10% indigenous vegetation cover for any urban or non-urban environment that has less than 10% cover of indigenous vegetation, and
  - (a) consider, in consultation with mana whenua and territorial authorities, setting higher targets for urban and non-urban environments that already have at least 10% coverage of indigenous vegetation, and
  - (b) include any indigenous vegetation cover targets in their regional policy statements.

Local authorities must:

- (4) promote the increase of indigenous vegetation cover in their regions and districts through objectives, policies, and methods in their policy statements and plans:
  - (a) having regard to any targets set under ECO-M4A(3); and
  - (b) giving priority to all the following:
    - i. areas referred to in ECO-P8(4):
    - ii. ensuring *indigenous species* richness appropriate to the ecosystem:
    - iii. *restoration* at a landscape scale across the region; and
    - iv. using species, and seed from species, that are local to the area.<sup>1559</sup>

### **ECO – M4B – Specified highly mobile fauna**

Local authorities must:

- (1) include objectives, policies, or methods in their policy statements and plans for managing the adverse effects of new subdivision, use, and development on highly mobile fauna areas, in order to maintain viable populations of specified highly mobile fauna across their natural range.
- (2) provide information to their communities about:
  - (a) highly mobile fauna and their *habitats*; and
  - (b) best practice techniques for managing adverse effects on any specified highly mobile fauna and their *habitats* in their regions and districts.<sup>1560</sup>

<sup>1558</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1559</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1560</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

## **ECO – M4C – Maintenance of improved pasture for farming**<sup>1561</sup>

Local authorities must:

- (1) allow the maintenance of improved pasture to continue if:
  - (a) there is adequate evidence to demonstrate that the maintenance of improved pasture is part of a regular cycle of periodic maintenance of that pasture; and
  - (b) any adverse effects of the maintenance of improved pasture on a significant natural area are no greater in intensity, scale, or character than the effects of activities previously undertaken as part of the regular cycle of periodic maintenance of that pasture; and
  - (c) the improved pasture has not itself become an significant natural area; and
  - (d) the land is not an uncultivated Depositional landform; and
  - (e) the maintenance of improved pasture will not adversely affect a Threatened or At Risk (declining) species.<sup>1562</sup>

## **ECO – M4D – Native reserves and Māori land**<sup>1563</sup>

Local authorities must:

- (1) work in partnership (which includes acting in good faith) with mana whenua and owners of native reserves and Māori land to develop, and include in district plans and regional plans objectives, policies, and methods that may include providing an alternative approach to effects management for indigenous biodiversity than the policies in this ECO chapter (excluding CE-P5). These objectives, policies and methods will seek, to the extent practicable to,:
  - (a) maintain and restore indigenous biodiversity on native reserves and Māori land, and
  - (b) protect SIGNIFICANT NATURAL AREAs and identified taoka on native reserves and Māori land, and
- (2) ensure that objectives, policies, and methods developed under (6):
  - (a) enable new occupation, use, and development of nature reserves and Māori land to support the social, cultural, and economic wellbeing of mana whenua, and
  - (b) enable the provision of new papakāika, marae and ancillary community facilities, dwellings, and associated infrastructure, and
  - (c) enable alternative approaches to, or locations for, new occupation, use and development that avoid, minimise, or remedy adverse effects on significant natural areas and identified taoka on native reserves and Māori land, and enable options for offsetting and compensation, and
  - (d) recognise and be responsible to the fact there may be no or limited alternative location for mana whenua to occupy, use, and develop their lands, and

---

<sup>1561</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1562</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1563</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

- (e) recognise that there are circumstances where development will prevail over *indigenous biodiversity*, and
- (f) recognise and be responsive to any recognised historical barriers *mana whenua* have faced in occupying, using, and developing their ancestral lands.<sup>1564</sup>

### ECO–M5 – District plans

Territorial authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* to:

- (1) if the requirements of ECO–P3 ~~and to~~<sup>1565</sup> ECO–P6 are met, provide for the use of *land* and the surface of *water bodies* including:
  - (a) activities undertaken for the purposes of pest control or maintaining or enhancing the habitats of indigenous fauna, and
  - (b) the maintenance and use of existing *structures* (including *infrastructure*), and
  - (c) *infrastructure* that has a *functional* or *operational need* to be sited or operated in a particular location,
- (2) manage control<sup>1566</sup> the clearance or modification of indigenous vegetation, while allowing for *mahika kai*<sup>1567</sup> activities<sup>1568</sup> (including through the development, in partnership with *mana whenua*, of provisions for *mahika kai* activities that may provide an alternative approach to effects management than the policies in this ECO chapter),<sup>1569</sup>
- (3) promote the establishment of *esplanade reserves* and *esplanade strips*, particularly where they would support ecological corridors, buffering or connectivity between *significant natural areas*, or access to *mahika kai*,<sup>1570</sup>
- (4) require:
  - (a) resource consent applications to include information that demonstrates that the sequential steps in the effects management hierarchy (*in relation to indigenous biodiversity*)<sup>1571</sup> ~~in ECO–P6~~<sup>1572</sup> have been followed, and
  - (b) that consents are not granted if the sequential steps in the effects management hierarchy (*in relation to indigenous biodiversity*)<sup>1573</sup> ~~in ECO–P6~~<sup>1574</sup> have not been followed, and
- (5) provide for activities undertaken for the purpose of restoring or enhancing the habitats of indigenous fauna, and
- (6) ~~prohibit the planting of *wilding conifer* species listed in APP5 within areas identified as *significant natural areas*.~~<sup>1575</sup>

<sup>1564</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1565</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1566</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1567</sup> 00226.0038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1568</sup> 00226.231 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1569</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1570</sup> 00226.231 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00226.0038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1571</sup> 00016.013 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 0017.011 Danny Walker and Others, 00321.022 Te Waihangā, 00137.009 DOC

<sup>1572</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1573</sup> 00016.013 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 0017.011 Danny Walker and Others, 00321.022 Te Waihangā, 00137.009 DOC

<sup>1574</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1575</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

- (7) require buffer zones adjacent to *significant natural areas* where it is necessary to protect the *significant natural area*.<sup>1576</sup>

### **ECO–M6 – Engagement**

*Local authorities*, when implementing the policies in this chapter, will:

- (1) work collaboratively with other *local authorities* to adopt an integrated approach to managing Otago’s *biodiversity* across administrative boundaries,
- (2) engage with individuals (including landowners and *land* occupiers), community groups, government agencies and other organisations with a role or an interest in *biodiversity* management, and
- (3) consult directly with landowners and *land* occupiers whose properties potentially contain or are part of *significant natural areas*.

### **ECO – M7A – Kāi Tahu kaitiakitaka**<sup>1577</sup>

*Local authorities* must partner with Kāi Tahu in the management of *indigenous biodiversity* to the extent desired by *mana whenua*, including by:

- (1) ensuring that engagement with *mana whenua* is early, meaningful, and in accordance with tikanga Māori,<sup>1578</sup>
- (2) actively supporting the role of *mana whenua* as kaitiaki,
- (3) facilitating opportunities for *mana whenua* to be involved in resource management (including decision-making),
- (4) enabling the *mahika kai* practices of *mana whenua* in accordance with tikaka, including the customary use of identified taoka,<sup>1579</sup>
- (5) supporting *mana whenua* initiatives that contribute to restoring or enhancing te hauora o te kaiora (the health of *indigenous biodiversity*),
- (6) where appropriate, incorporating Kāi Tahu mātauraka and tikaka in *indigenous biodiversity* management and monitoring, and
- (7) providing relevant information to *mana whenua* for the purposes of *indigenous biodiversity* management and monitoring.

### **ECO – M7B – Information requirements**<sup>1580</sup>

Local authorities must:

- (1) require that, in relation to an application for a resource consent for an activity that would have more than minor adverse effects on *indigenous biodiversity*, the application is not considered unless it includes a report that:

---

<sup>1576</sup> 00140.026 Waitaki DC

<sup>1577</sup> 00226.232 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1578</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1579</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1580</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

- (a) is prepared by a suitably qualified ecologist and, as required, any other person with suitable expertise, such as someone with expertise in mātauraka Māori; and
  - (b) complies with subclause (2); and
  - (c) is commensurate with the scale and significance (to *indigenous biodiversity*) of the proposal.
- (2) the report required within ECO-M2(4A) above must:
- (a) include a description of the existing ecological features and values of the site; and
  - (b) include a description of the adverse effects of the proposal on *indigenous biodiversity* and how those effects will be managed; and
  - (c) identify any effects on identified taoka; and
  - (d) identify the ecosystem services associated with *indigenous biodiversity* at the site; and
  - (e) include an assessment of the ecological integrity and connectivity within and beyond the site; and
  - (f) include mātauraka Māori and tikaka Māori assessment methodology, where relevant; and
  - (g) if *biodiversity offsetting* is proposed, set out:
    - (i) a detailed plan of what is proposed, including a quantified loss and gain calculation, the currency used in the calculation, and the data that informs the calculation and plan; and
    - (ii) a description of how the relevant principles in APP3 have been addressed; and
    - (iii) an assessment of the likely success of the plan in achieving a net gain in biodiversity values; and
  - (h) if *biodiversity compensation* is proposed, set out:
    - (i) a detailed plan of what is proposed; and
    - (ii) a description of how the relevant principles in APP4 have been addressed; and
    - (iii) an assessment of the likely success of the plan in achieving its outcomes.<sup>1581</sup>

## ECO-M7 – Monitoring

Local authorities will:

- (1) establish long-term monitoring programmes for areas identified under ECO-P2 ~~ECO-P1~~<sup>1582</sup> that measure the net loss and gain of indigenous *biodiversity*,
- (2) record information (including data) over time<sup>1583</sup> about the state of species, vegetation types and ecosystems, including *mahika kai*<sup>1584</sup> species and ecosystems,<sup>1585</sup>

<sup>1581</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1582</sup> 00137.095 DOC, 00226.233 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1583</sup> 00226.233 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1584</sup> 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1585</sup> 00226.233 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

- (3) to the extent possible, use mātauraka Māori and tikaka Māori monitoring methods, as well as scientific monitoring methods, and
- (4) regularly report on matters in (1) and (2) and publish these reports.

### ECO–M8 – Other incentives and mechanisms

*Local authorities* are encouraged to consider the use of other mechanisms or incentives to assist in achieving Policies ECO–P1 to ECO–P10, including:

- (1) providing information and guidance on the maintenance, restoration and enhancement of indigenous ecosystems ~~and~~<sup>1586</sup> habitats, taoka and mahika kai<sup>1587</sup> species and ecosystems,<sup>1588</sup>
- (2) funding assistance for restoration projects (for example, through Otago Regional Council’s ECO Fund),
- (3) supporting the control of pest plants and animals, including through the provision of advice and education and implementing regulatory programmes such as the Regional Pest Management Plan,
- (4) financial incentives,
- (5) covenants to protect areas of indigenous biodiversity land<sup>1589</sup>, including through the QEII National Trust,
- (6) advocating for a collaborative approach between central and local government to fund indigenous *biodiversity* maintenance and enhancement, and
- (7) gathering information on indigenous ecosystems, ~~and~~<sup>1590</sup> habitats, and taoka and mahika kai<sup>1591</sup> species and ecosystems,<sup>1592</sup> including outside *significant natural areas*.<sup>1593</sup>

### ECO – M9 – Regional Biodiversity Strategy

The Regional Council must initiate preparation of a regional biodiversity strategy that complies with Appendix 5 of the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity 2023.<sup>1594</sup>

## Explanation

### ECO–E1 – Explanation

The first policy in this chapter outlines how the kaitiaki role of Kāi Tahu will be recognised in Otago. The policies which follow then set out a management regime for identifying *significant natural areas* and indigenous species and ecosystems that are taoka and protecting them by avoiding particular adverse effects on them. The policies recognise that these restrictions may be unduly restrictive for some activities within *significant natural areas*, including existing activities already established. To maintain ecosystems and indigenous *biodiversity*, the policies set out mandatory and sequential steps in an effects

<sup>1586</sup> 00226.234 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1587</sup> 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1588</sup> 00226.234 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1589</sup> 00230.117 Forest and Bird

<sup>1590</sup> 00226.234 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1591</sup> 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1592</sup> 00226.234 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1593</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

<sup>1594</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

management hierarchy to be implemented through decision making, including providing for *biodiversity* offsetting and compensation if certain criteria are met.

Although the objectives of this chapter apply within the coastal environment, the specific management approach for *biodiversity* is contained in the CE – Coastal environment chapter. Given the *biodiversity* loss that has occurred in Otago historically, restoration or enhancement will play a part in achieving the objectives of this chapter and these activities are promoted.

~~Wilding conifers are a particular issue for *biodiversity* in Otago. Although *plantation forestry* is managed under the NESPF, the NESPF allows plan rules to be more stringent if they recognise and provide for the protection of *significant natural areas*. The policies adopt this direction by requiring *district* and *regional plans* to prevent *afforestation* within *significant natural areas* and establish buffer zones where they are necessary to protect *significant natural areas*.<sup>1595</sup>~~

The policies recognise that managing ecosystems and indigenous *biodiversity* requires co-ordination across different areas and types of resources, as well as across organisations, communities and individual landowners. This articulates the stewardship role of all people and communities in Otago in respect of indigenous *biodiversity*.

## Principal reasons

### ECO-PR1 – Principal reasons

The health of New Zealand's *indigenous biodiversity* has declined significantly since the arrival of humans and remains under significant pressure. ~~*Mahika kai*~~ *Mahika kai* and taoka species, including their abundance, have been damaged or lost through resource use, *land* use change and development in Otago. The provisions in this chapter seek to address this loss and pressure through providing direction on how ~~indigenous~~ *indigenous biodiversity* is to be managed.

The provisions in this chapter assist in maintaining, protecting and restoring ~~indigenous~~ *indigenous biodiversity* by:

- stating the outcomes sought for ecosystems and ~~indigenous~~ *indigenous biodiversity* in Otago,
- requiring identification and protection of *significant natural areas* and indigenous species and ecosystems that are taoka, and
- directing how ~~indigenous~~ *indigenous biodiversity* is to be maintained.

This chapter will assist with achieving the outcomes sought by *Te Mana o te Taiao – Aotearoa New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy 2020*. Implementation of the provisions in this chapter will occur primarily through *regional plan*<sup>1596</sup> and *district plan* provisions, however *local authorities* may also choose to adopt additional non-regulatory methods to support the achievement of the objectives.

## Anticipated environmental results

ECO-AER1                      There is no further decline in the condition ~~quality~~,<sup>1597</sup> quantity or diversity

---

<sup>1595</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

<sup>1596</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1597</sup> *Consequential amendment to 00306.042 Meridian*



of Otago's indigenous *biodiversity*.

**ECO-AER2** The condition ~~quality~~,<sup>1598</sup> quantity and diversity of indigenous *biodiversity* within Otago improves over the life of this Regional Policy Statement.

**ECO-AER3** Kāi Tahu are involved in the management of indigenous *biodiversity* and able to effectively exercise their *kaitiakitaka*.

~~**ECO-AER4** Within *significant natural areas*, the area of *land* vegetated by *wilding conifers* is reduced.~~

---

<sup>1598</sup> Consequential amendment to 00306.042 Meridian

# EIT – Energy, infrastructure and transport

Note to reader: This Chapter of the PORPS has been re-ordered compared to the Notified version under clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA.

## EIT-INF – Infrastructure<sup>1599</sup>

### Objectives

#### **EIT-INF-04 – Provision of *infrastructure***

Effective, efficient, safe<sup>1600</sup> and resilient *infrastructure*, *nationally significant infrastructure* and *regionally significant infrastructure*<sup>1601</sup> enables the people and communities of Otago<sup>1602</sup> to provide for their social and cultural well-being, their health and safety, and supports sustainable economic development and growth in ~~within~~ the region,<sup>1603</sup> ~~within environmental limits.~~<sup>1604</sup>

#### **EIT-INF-05 – Integration**

Development of ~~*nationally significant infrastructure*~~ and ~~*regionally significant*~~<sup>1605</sup> *infrastructure*, as well as *land* use change, occurs in a co-ordinated manner to minimise adverse *effects* on the *environment* and increase efficiency in the delivery, operation and use of the *infrastructure*.

#### **~~EIT-INF-06 – Long term planning for the electricity transmission infrastructure~~**

~~Long term investment in, and planning for, electricity transmission *infrastructure*, and its integration with *land* use, is sustained.~~<sup>1606</sup>

### Policies

#### **EIT-INF-P10 – Recognising resource requirements**

Decision making on the allocation or use of *natural and physical resources* must take into account the *functional needs* and *operational*<sup>1607</sup> *needs* of *nationally significant infrastructure*<sup>1608</sup> and *regionally significant infrastructure*.

#### **~~EIT-INF-P11 – Operation and maintenance~~**

~~Except as provided for by ECO-P4, allow for the operation and maintenance of existing *nationally* and *regionally significant infrastructure* while:~~

<sup>1599</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1600</sup> 00307.015 Christchurch International Airport Limited (CIAL)

<sup>1601</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00313.020 Queenstown Airport

<sup>1602</sup> 00314.033 Transpower

<sup>1603</sup> 00239.124 Federated Farmers

<sup>1604</sup> 00231.009 Fish and Game, 00315.043 Aurora Energy

<sup>1605</sup> 00239.125 Federated Farmers, 00235.114 OWRUG

<sup>1606</sup> Moved to EIT-EN – clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1607</sup> 00315.046 Aurora Energy Energy, 00138.116 QLDC

<sup>1608</sup> 00314.001 Transpower

- (1) ~~avoiding, as the first priority, significant adverse effects on the environment, and~~  
 (2) ~~if avoidance is not practicable, and for other adverse effects, minimising adverse effects.~~

### EIT-INF-P12 – Upgrades and development

Provide for upgrades to existing, and development of new<sup>1609</sup>, nationally significant infrastructure<sup>1610</sup> or regionally significant infrastructure while ensuring that:

- (1) ~~infrastructure it~~<sup>1611</sup> is designed and located, as far as practicable, to maintain functionality during and after *natural hazard events*,  
 (2) it is, as far as practicable, co-ordinated with long-term *land use* planning, and  
 (3) ~~increases efficiency in the its~~<sup>1612</sup> delivery, operation or use ~~of the infrastructure is efficient.~~<sup>1613</sup>

### EIT-INF-P13 – Locating and managing effects of infrastructure, nationally significant infrastructure and regionally significant infrastructure<sup>1614</sup> outside the coastal environment<sup>1615</sup>

When providing for new *infrastructure, nationally significant infrastructure and regionally significant infrastructure*<sup>1616</sup> outside the coastal environment:

- (1) avoid, as the first priority, locating *infrastructure* in all of the following:
- (a) *significant natural areas*,
  - (b) outstanding natural features and landscapes,
  - (c) ~~natural~~<sup>1617</sup> *wetlands*,
  - (d) *outstanding water bodies*,
  - (e) ~~areas of high or outstanding natural character,~~<sup>1618</sup>
  - (f) areas or places of significant or outstanding *historic heritage*, and
  - (g) wāhi tupuna, wāhi tapu, wāhi taoka, and areas with protected customary rights,<sup>1619</sup> and
  - (h) ~~areas of high recreational and high amenity value, and~~<sup>1620</sup>
- (2) if it is not reasonably practicable possible<sup>1621</sup> to avoid locating in the areas listed in (1) above because of the functional needs<sup>1622</sup> or operational needs of the *infrastructure, nationally significant*

<sup>1609</sup> 00139.164 DCC

<sup>1610</sup> 00314.001 Transpower

<sup>1611</sup> 00315.048 Aurora Energy

<sup>1612</sup> 00315.048 Aurora Energy

<sup>1613</sup> 00315.048 Aurora Energy

<sup>1614</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00313.020 Queenstown Airport

<sup>1615</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00137.107 DOC, 00301.042 Port Otago, 00226.241 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00223.108 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku, 00301.040 Port Otago

<sup>1616</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00313.020 Queenstown Airport

<sup>1617</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from deletion of ‘natural wetlands’ definition

<sup>1618</sup> 00311.047 Trustpower

<sup>1619</sup> 00226.241 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1620</sup> 00313.020 Queenstown Airport Corporation

<sup>1621</sup> 00321.057 New Zealand Infrastructure Commission

<sup>1622</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

infrastructure and regionally significant infrastructure<sup>1623</sup> manage adverse effects as follows:

- (a) for nationally or regionally significant infrastructure:
- (i) in significant natural areas, in accordance with ECO-P4, and ECO-P6,
  - (ii) in ~~natural~~<sup>1624</sup> wetlands, in accordance with the relevant provisions in the NESF,
  - (iii) in outstanding water bodies, in accordance with LF-FW-<sup>1625</sup>P12,
  - (iiia) in relation to wāhi tūpuna, in accordance with HCV-WT-P2,<sup>1626</sup>
  - (iv) in other areas listed in EIT-INF-P13 (1) above, minimise the adverse effects of the infrastructure on the values that contribute to the area's importance, and shall be:
    - (I) remedied or mitigated to the extent practicable,
    - (II) where they cannot be practicably remedied or mitigated, regard shall be had to offsetting and/or compensation of more than minor residual adverse effects.<sup>1627</sup>
- (b) for all infrastructure that is not nationally significant infrastructure<sup>1628</sup> or regionally significant infrastructure,<sup>1629</sup> avoid adverse effects on the values that contribute to the area's outstanding nature or significance except in relation to historic heritage which is not significant or outstanding, then HCV-HH-P5(3) will apply.<sup>1630</sup>

### **EIT-INF-P13A – Managing the effects of infrastructure, nationally significant infrastructure and regionally significant infrastructure within the coastal environment**

When managing the effects of infrastructure, nationally significant infrastructure and regionally significant infrastructure within the coastal environment the provisions of the CE – Coastal environment chapter apply.<sup>1631</sup>

### **EIT-INF-P14 – Decision making considerations**

When considering proposals to develop or upgrade infrastructure:

- (1) require consideration of alternative sites, methods and designs if adverse effects are potentially significant or irreversible, and
- (2) utilise the opportunity of substantial upgrades of infrastructure to reduce adverse effects that result from the existing infrastructure, including on sensitive activities, where appropriate.<sup>1632</sup>

<sup>1623</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00313.020 Queenstown Airport

<sup>1624</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from deletion of 'natural wetlands' definition

<sup>1625</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1626</sup> 00226.241 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1627</sup> 00311.037 Manawa Energy

<sup>1628</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1629</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1630</sup> 00239.159 Federated Farmers of New Zealand, 00310.013 Chorus, New Zealand Limited, Spark New Zealand Trading Limited and Vodafone New Zealand, 00313.028 Queenstown Airport Corporation

<sup>1631</sup> 00137.107 DOC, 00301.042 Port of Otago Ltd, 00226.241 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00223.108 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku, 00301.040 Port of Otago

<sup>1632</sup> 00321.0581 Te Waihangā

## **EIT-INF-P15 – Protecting nationally significant infrastructure<sup>1633</sup> ~~and or~~<sup>1634</sup> regionally significant infrastructure**

Protect the efficient and effective operation of nationally significant infrastructure and regionally significant infrastructure by:

- (1) avoiding activities, to the extent reasonably practicable,<sup>1635</sup> that may give rise to an adverse effect on the functional needs or operational needs of nationally significant infrastructure or regionally significant infrastructure,
- (2) avoiding activities, to the extent reasonably practicable,<sup>1636</sup> that may result in reverse sensitivity effects on nationally significant infrastructure or regionally significant infrastructure, and
- (3) avoid or minimise the effects of activities and development so that the opportunity to adapt, upgrade or extend existing nationally significant infrastructure or regionally significant infrastructure to meet future demand is not compromised.<sup>1637</sup>

Seek to avoid the establishment of activities that may result in reverse sensitivity effects on nationally or regionally significant infrastructure, and/or where they may compromise the functional or operational needs of nationally or regionally significant infrastructure.<sup>1638</sup>

## **EIT-INF-P16 – Providing for electricity transmission and the National Grid**

Maintain a secure and sustainable electricity supply in Otago by:

- (1) ~~providing for development of, and upgrades to, the electricity transmission network and requiring, as far as practicable, its integration with land use,~~
- (2) ~~considering the requirements of and constraints associated with the functional and operational needs of the electricity transmission network,~~
- (3) ~~providing for the efficient and effective development, operation, maintenance, and upgrading of the National Grid,~~
- (4) ~~enabling the reasonable operation, maintenance and minor upgrade requirements of established electricity transmission assets, and~~
- (5) ~~minimising the adverse effects of the electricity transmission network on urban amenity, and avoiding adverse effects on town centres, areas of high amenity or recreational value and existing sensitive activities.~~<sup>1639</sup>

## **EIT-INF-P17 – Urban growth and infrastructure**

Provide for development infrastructure and additional infrastructure required to service existing, planned and expected urban growth demands in the short, medium and long term, taking in account UFD-P1 to UFD-P10.

## **Methods**

---

<sup>1633</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1634</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1635</sup> 00236.079 Horticulture NZ

<sup>1636</sup> 00236.079 Horticulture NZ

<sup>1637</sup> 00313.022 Queenstown Airport

<sup>1638</sup> 00313.022 Queenstown Airport

<sup>1639</sup> Moved to EIT-EN – Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

## EIT-INF-M4 – Regional plans

Otago Regional Council must prepare or amend and maintain its *regional plans* to:

- (1) manage the adverse *effects* of *infrastructure* activities, including, where appropriate, identifying activities that qualify as minor upgrades,<sup>1640</sup> that:
  - (a) are in the *beds* of *lakes* and *rivers*, or
  - (b) are in the *coastal marine area*, or
  - (c) involve the taking, use, damming or diversion of *water* or,
  - (d) involve the *discharge* of *water* or *contaminants*, and
- ~~(2) require the prioritisation of sites for *infrastructure* where adverse *effects* on highly valued *natural and physical resources* and *mana whenua* values can be avoided or, at the very least, minimised.~~<sup>1641</sup>

## EIT-INF-M5 – District plans

Territorial authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* to:

- (1) require a strategic approach to the integration of *land* use and *infrastructure*,<sup>1642</sup> *nationally significant infrastructure*<sup>1643</sup> or *regionally significant infrastructure*,
- ~~(2) enable planning for the electricity transmission network and *National Grid* to achieve efficient distribution of electricity,~~<sup>1644</sup>
- ~~(3) map the electricity transmission network, and in relation to the *National Grid*, identify a buffer corridor within which *sensitive activities* shall generally not be allowed, and~~<sup>1645</sup>
- (4) manage the *subdivision*, use and development of *land* to ensure *infrastructure*<sup>1646</sup>, *nationally significant infrastructure*<sup>1647</sup> or *regionally significant infrastructure* can develop to meet increased demand,
- (5) manage the adverse *effects* of developing, operating, maintaining, or upgrading *infrastructure*,<sup>1648</sup> *nationally significant infrastructure*<sup>1649</sup> or *regionally significant infrastructure*, including, where appropriate, identifying activities that qualify as minor upgrades,<sup>1650</sup> that are on:
  - (a) the surface of *rivers* and *lakes* and on *land* outside the *coastal marine area*, and
  - (b) the *beds* of *lakes* and *rivers*,
- (6) ensure that development is ~~avoided where:~~
  - (c) ~~it cannot be~~ adequately served with *infrastructure*,
  - ~~(d) it utilises *infrastructure* capacity for other planned development, or~~

<sup>1640</sup> 00139.164 DCC, 00305.043 Waka Kotahi

<sup>1641</sup> 00206.050 Trojan Holdings Limited

<sup>1642</sup> Consequential amendment from 00239.125 Federated Farmers, 00235.114 OWRUG

<sup>1643</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1644</sup> Moved to EIT-EN-M2(6) – Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1645</sup> Moved to EIT-EN-M2(7) – Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1646</sup> Consequential amendment from 00239.125 Federated Farmers, 00235.114 OWRUG

<sup>1647</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1648</sup> Consequential amendment from 00239.125 Federated Farmers, 00235.114 OWRUG

<sup>1649</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1650</sup> 00139.164 DCC, 00305.043 Waka Kotahi

- ~~(e) — the required upgrading of *infrastructure* is not funded, and~~
- ~~(7) — require the prioritisation of sites where adverse *effects* on highly valued *natural and physical resources* and *mana whenua* values can be avoided or, at the very least, minimised.<sup>1651</sup>~~

## EIT-INF-M6 – Advocacy

Local authorities ~~should~~ must:<sup>1652</sup>

- ~~(1) — advocate for the upgrading or replacement of existing *nationally or regionally significant infrastructure* if the operation of *infrastructure* results in significant adverse *effects*, and<sup>1653</sup>~~
- ~~(2) — work proactively with *infrastructure* providers to co-ordinate the upgrading or development of *nationally significant infrastructure*<sup>1654</sup> or *regionally significant infrastructure* to support co-location or concurrent construction to reduce adverse *effects*.~~

## Explanation

### EIT-INF-E2 – Explanation

The policies in this section recognise the critical importance of *infrastructure* to communities and provide for the continued operation of existing *infrastructure* and the development of upgraded or new *infrastructure* where adverse *effects* are managed. As many assets rely on particular resource requirements or specific locations, decisions on allocating *natural and physical resources* shall make provision for the *functional needs*<sup>1655</sup> or *operational needs* of *nationally significant infrastructure*<sup>1656</sup> and *regionally significant infrastructure*. For *infrastructure* in the coastal environment, the provisions of the CE – Coastal environment chapter are also applicable to ensure the NZCPS is given effect.

Given the potential magnitude of adverse *effects* associated with this *infrastructure*, consideration is required of the ability to remedy or mitigate unavoidable adverse *effects*, alternative options and offsetting or compensation.

To ensure *infrastructure* is planned for, and used efficiently, the provisions require that the benefits of existing *nationally significant infrastructure*<sup>1657</sup> and *regionally significant infrastructure* are maximised, and *infrastructure* provision is undertaken in a co-ordinated manner. The policies also seek to manage the potential adverse *effects* of other activities on *nationally significant infrastructure*<sup>1658</sup> and *regionally significant infrastructure* to ensure the ability to operate these assets is not compromised.

## Principal reasons

### EIT-INF-PR2 – Principal reasons

*Infrastructure* is fundamental to the health and safety of communities, and their social and economic well-being and functioning. The nature of *infrastructure* means there are typically operational and functional

---

<sup>1651</sup> 00411.064 Wayfare Group Ltd

<sup>1652</sup> 00139.172 DCC

<sup>1653</sup> 00311.051 Trustpower, 00305.054 Waka Kotahi

<sup>1654</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1655</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1656</sup> 00314.001 Transpower

<sup>1657</sup> 00314.001 Transpower

<sup>1658</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

constraints which dictate where and how these activities operate to properly serve local communities. These types of assets also tend to require significant investment, although some have at times been subject to under-investment.

The scale and type of activities involved in the development, operation, maintenance, and upgrading of *infrastructure* are such that adverse *effects* on the *environment* are likely and, at times, significant. Efforts are required to reduce impacts from *infrastructure*, by avoiding its location in areas that are important to Otago, where this is practicable<sup>1659</sup>, particularly where alternatives are available. If it is necessary to locate in those areas, then it is necessary that the values that make those areas important are protected. There are instances however, when residual *effects* cannot be avoided, in which case *effects* should be remedied or mitigated and offsetting or compensation may be necessary if it meets any criteria set. Given the potential for adverse *effects*, it is important that *local authorities* monitor and enforce the standards set in plans and on *resource consents* and designations.

The policies in this chapter give effect to the NPSREG, NPSET, NPSFM and NPSUD and recognise *infrastructure* that has benefits for the wider Otago region and nationally. Implementation of the provisions will occur through the *regional* and *district plan* provisions.

## Anticipated environmental results

EIT-INF-AER5	<i>Infrastructure</i> provides safe, effective and efficient services to the Otago community <u>and beyond</u> . <sup>1660</sup>
EIT-INF-AER6	The provision of <i>infrastructure</i> is co-ordinated and integrated to service growth efficiently.
EIT-INF-AER7	<i>Nationally</i> and <i>regionally significant infrastructure</i> is protected from <u>adverse effects, including</u> <sup>1661</sup> reverse sensitivity <i>effects</i> caused by incompatible activities.
EIT-INF-AER8	The adverse <i>effects</i> associated with <del><i>nationally and regionally significant infrastructure</i></del> <i>infrastructure</i> are avoided <sup>1662</sup> <u>to the extent practicable</u> <sup>1663</sup> or are minimised.

---

<sup>1659</sup> 00305.059 Waka Kotahi NZ Transport Agency

<sup>1660</sup> 00314.041 Transpower New Zealand Limited

<sup>1661</sup> 00314.042 Transpower New Zealand Limited

<sup>1662</sup> 00223.113 Te Ao Marama

<sup>1663</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00235.128 OWRUG



## EIT-EN – Energy

**Note to readers:** As a result of recommendations made by the reporting officer through supplementary evidence, some provisions in this chapter have been re-ordered and others have been moved from other chapters. The notified numbering has been retained as an interim measure while the hearing on these provisions occurs so that it is easier for submission points to be read alongside the chapter. The numbering of this chapter will be made chronological following a final decision by Council.

### Objectives

#### EIT-EN-O1 – Energy and social and economic well-being

The health and wellbeing of<sup>1664</sup> Otago’s communities and economy are supported by ~~renewable energy generation~~ renewable energy generation<sup>1665</sup> within the region that is safe, secure, and *resilient*.

#### EIT-EN-O3 – Energy use

Development is located and designed to facilitate the efficient use of energy and to reduce demand if possible, minimising the contribution that Otago makes to total *greenhouse gas* emissions.

#### EIT-EN-O2A – Greenhouse gas emissions and renewable energy targets

Otago’s renewable energy generation supports the overall reduction in New Zealand greenhouse gas emissions and achieving the national target for emissions reduction.<sup>1666</sup>

#### EIT-EN-O2 – Renewable electricity generation

The generation capacity of *renewable electricity generation activities* in Otago:

- (1) is protected and<sup>1667</sup> maintained and, where appropriate, increased ~~if practicable maximised, within environmental limits~~<sup>1668</sup>, and
- (2) contributes to meeting New Zealand’s national target for *renewable electricity generation*.

#### EIT-INF-O6 – Long-term planning for the National Grid electricity transmission<sup>1669</sup> and distribution<sup>1670</sup> infrastructure

Long-term investment in, and planning for, electricity transmission *infrastructure*, and its integration with *land* use, is sustained.

### Policies

---

<sup>1664</sup> 00311.030 Manawa Energy, 00509.094 Wise Response Society Inc

<sup>1665</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA.

<sup>1666</sup> 00318.024 Contact, 00311.031 Trustpower, 00311.039 Trustpower, 00321.040 NZIC

<sup>1667</sup> 00318.024 Contact

<sup>1668</sup> 00318.024 Contact Energy

<sup>1669</sup> 00236.080 Horticulture NZ

<sup>1670</sup> 00315.045 Aurora Energy

### **EIT-EN-P1 – Operation, ~~and~~ maintenance, and upgrade**

The operation, ~~and~~ maintenance, and upgrade of existing *renewable electricity generation activities* is provided for including the maintenance of generation output and protection of operational capacity, while minimising its adverse effects.<sup>1671</sup>

### **EIT-EN-P2 – Recognising renewable electricity generation activities in decision making**

Decisions on the allocation and use of *natural and physical resources*, including the use of *fresh water* and development of *land*:

- (1) recognise the national significance of renewable electricity generation activities, including the<sup>1672</sup> national, regional and local benefits of ~~existing~~<sup>1673</sup> *renewable electricity generation activities*,
- (2) ~~take into account~~ have particular regard to<sup>1674</sup> the ~~need to at least~~<sup>1675</sup> maintain maintenance of<sup>1676</sup> current *renewable electricity generation capacity*,<sup>1677</sup> and
- (3) recognise that the attainment of increases in *renewable electricity generation capacity* will require significant development of *renewable electricity generation activities*.

### **EIT-EN-P3 – ~~Development and upgrade of~~ The security of renewable electricity generation supply activities**<sup>1678</sup>

The security and installed capacity<sup>1679</sup> of renewable electricity supply is maintained or improved in Otago through appropriate provision for the development or upgrading of *renewable electricity generation activities* and diversification of the type or location of renewable<sup>1680</sup> *electricity generation activities*.

### **EIT-EN-P4 – Identifying new sites or resources**

Provide for activities associated with the investigation, identification and assessment of potential sites and energy sources for *renewable electricity generation*, ~~and, when selecting a site for new renewable electricity generation, prioritise those where adverse effects on highly valued natural and physical resources and mana whenua values can be avoided or, at the very least, minimised.~~<sup>1681</sup>

### **EIT-EN-P5 – Non-renewable energy generation**

In relation to non-renewable energy generation:

- (1) except as provided for in (2) below, Avoid restrict the development of non-renewable energy generation activities in Otago, where practicable, and facilitate the replacement of non-renewable energy sources, including the use of fossil fuels, in energy generation, ~~and~~ and
- (2) in relation to new heat devices for industrial process heat:

---

<sup>1671</sup> 00318.025 Contact Energy

<sup>1672</sup> 00306.054 Meridian

<sup>1673</sup> 00137.100 DCC

<sup>1674</sup> 00306.054 Meridian

<sup>1675</sup> 00318.026 Contact

<sup>1676</sup> 00318.026 Contact

<sup>1677</sup> 00306.054 Meridian, 00311.034 Trustpower, 00321.043 NZIC

<sup>1678</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1679</sup> 00318.027 Contact Energy

<sup>1680</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1681</sup> 00318.028 Contact Energy

- (a) avoid discharges from *new heat devices* that burn coal and deliver heat at or above 300 degrees Celsius, unless there is no technically feasible and financially viable lower emissions alternative,
  - (b) avoid discharges from *new heat devices* that burn coal and deliver heat below 300 degrees Celsius, and
  - (c) avoid discharges from *new heat devices* that burn any *fossil fuel* other than coal, unless there are no technically feasible and financially viable lower emissions alternative, and
- (3) in relation to *existing heat devices* for *industrial process heat*:
- (a) restrict *discharges* from *existing heat devices* that burn coal and deliver heat at or above 300 degrees Celsius,
  - (b) restrict and phase out *discharges* from *existing heat devices* that burn coal and deliver heat below 300 degrees Celsius, and
  - (c) restrict *discharges* from *existing heat devices* that burn any *fossil fuel* other than coal.<sup>1682</sup>

### **EIT-EN-P6 – Managing effects**

Manage the adverse *effects* of *renewable electricity generation activities* by:

- (1) applying EIT-INF-P13,
- (2) having particular<sup>1683</sup> regard to:
  - (a) the *functional need* to locate *renewable electricity generation activities* where resources are available,
  - (b) the *operational need* to locate where it is possible to connect to the *National Grid* or *electricity sub-transmission infrastructure*, and
- (3) having regard to (e) the extent and magnitude of adverse *effects* on the *environment* and the degree to which unavoidable adverse *effects* can be remedied or mitigated, or significant<sup>1684</sup> residual adverse *effects* are offset or compensated for; and
- (4) requiring consideration of alternative sites, methods and designs, and offsetting or compensation measures (in accordance with any specific requirements for their use in this RPS), where adverse *effects* are potentially significant or irreversible.

### **EIT-EN-P7 – Reverse sensitivity**

Activities that may result in reverse sensitivity *effects* on consented or existing *renewable electricity generation activities*<sup>1685</sup> or compromise the operation or maintenance of *renewable electricity generation activities* are, as the first priority, prevented from establishing and only if that is not reasonably practicable, managed so that reverse sensitivity *effects* are minimised.

### **EIT-EN-P8 – Small and community scale distributed electricity generation**

Provide for *small and community scale distributed electricity generation* activities that increase the local

<sup>1682</sup> 00139.150 DCC, 00138.107 QLDC

<sup>1683</sup> 00306.057 Meridian

<sup>1684</sup> 00306.057 Meridian Energy

<sup>1685</sup> 00239.119 Federated Farmers, 00306.058 Meridian

community's *resilience* and security of energy supply.

### **EIT-EN-P9 – Energy conservation and efficiency**

Development supports energy conservation and efficiency by designing subdivisions to maximise solar access, and locating subdivision development to minimise, as far as practicable, transportation costs, car dependency and *greenhouse gas* emissions is designed, including through roading, lot size, dimensions, layout, and orientation so that energy use is efficient, energy waste is minimised, and solar gain is optimised.<sup>1686</sup>

### **EIT-INF-P16 – Providing for electricity transmission and<sup>1687</sup> the *National Grid*<sup>1688</sup>**

Maintain a secure and sustainable electricity supply in Otago by:

- (1) providing for the effective operation, maintenance, upgrading and development of the *National Grid* development of, and upgrades to, the electricity transmission network<sup>1689</sup> and requiring, as far as reasonably<sup>1690</sup> practicable, its integration with *land* use,
- (2) considering the requirements of and constraints associated with the *functional* and *operational needs* of the *National Grid*<sup>1691</sup> electricity transmission network in its management,
- (3) ~~providing for the efficient and effective development, operation, maintenance, and upgrading of the *National Grid*,~~
- (4) enabling the reasonable operation, maintenance and minor upgrade requirements of established *National Grid*<sup>1692</sup> electricity transmission assets, and
- (5) minimising the adverse *effects* of the *National Grid*<sup>1693</sup> electricity transmission network on urban amenity, and avoiding adverse *effects* on town centres, areas of high amenity or recreational value and existing *sensitive activities*.,
- (6) in rural areas, seek to avoid adverse effects in areas of high natural character and areas of high recreation value and amenity, and, where this is not practicable, apply EIT-INF-P13(2)(a)(iv), and
- (7) in addition to clause (6), apply EIT-INF-P13 where relevant.

### **EIT-EN-P9A – Providing for electricity distribution**

Recognise and provide for electricity distribution infrastructure, by all of the following:

- (1) recognising the functional needs of electricity distribution activities;
- (2) restricting the establishment of activities that may result in reverse sensitivity effects;
- (3) avoiding, remedying or mitigating adverse effects from other activities on the functional needs of that infrastructure;

---

<sup>1686</sup> 00139.154 DCC

<sup>1687</sup> 00236.080 Horticulture NZ

<sup>1688</sup> Moved from EIT-INF – Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1689</sup> 00236.080 Horticulture NZ

<sup>1690</sup> 00236.080 Horticulture NZ

<sup>1691</sup> 00236.080 Horticulture NZ

<sup>1692</sup> 00236.080 Horticulture NZ

<sup>1693</sup> 00236.080 Horticulture NZ

- (4) minimising adverse effects of new and upgraded electricity distribution infrastructure on existing land uses;
- (5) identifying significant electricity distribution infrastructure and managing effects of potentially incompatible activities through methods such as corridors.<sup>1694</sup>

## Methods

### EIT-EN-M1 – Regional plans

Otago Regional Council must prepare or amend and maintain its *regional plans* to:

- (1) provide for activities associated with the investigation, identification and assessment of potential sites and energy sources for *renewable electricity generation*,
- ~~(2) require the prioritisation of sites for new *renewable electricity generation activities* where adverse effects on highly valued *natural and physical resources* and *mana whenua* values can be avoided or, at the very least, minimised,~~<sup>1695</sup>
- (3) manage the adverse *effects* of developing or upgrading *renewable electricity generation activities*, including identifying activities that qualify as minor upgrades,<sup>1696</sup> that:
  - (a) are within the *beds of lakes and rivers* and the *coastal marine area*, or
  - (b) involve the taking, use, damming or diversion of *water* and *discharge of water* or *contaminants*,
- (4) provide for the operation and maintenance of existing *renewable electricity generation activities*, including their *natural and physical resource* requirements, along with opportunities to increase the installed capacity of renewable electricity generation assets<sup>1697</sup> ~~within the environmental limits,~~<sup>1698</sup> and
- (5) restrict the establishment of activities that may adversely affect the efficient functioning of *renewable electricity generation activities infrastructure*<sup>1699</sup> (including impacts on generation capacity).

### EIT-EN-M2 – District plans

*Territorial authorities* must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* to:

- (1) provide for activities associated with the investigation, identification and assessment of potential sites and energy sources for *renewable electricity generation*,
- ~~(2) require the prioritisation of sites for new *renewable electricity generation activities* where adverse effects on highly valued *natural and physical resources* and *mana whenua* values can be avoided or, at the very least, minimised,~~<sup>1700</sup>
- (3) manage the adverse *effects* of developing or upgrading *renewable electricity generation activities*

<sup>1694</sup> 00315.058 Aurora Energy, 00320.026 Network Waitaki and 00511.026 PowerNet

<sup>1695</sup> 00306.061 Meridian Energy

<sup>1696</sup> 00305.043 Waka Kotahi

<sup>1697</sup> 00311.040 Manawa Energy

<sup>1698</sup> 00226.237 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1699</sup> 00306.061 Meridian

<sup>1700</sup> 00306.062 Meridian Energy

and electricity transmission National Grid<sup>1701</sup> infrastructure, including identifying activities that qualify as minor upgrades,<sup>1702</sup> that:

- (a) are on the surface of *rivers and lakes* and on *land* outside the *coastal marine area*, or
  - (b) the *beds of lakes and rivers*,
- (4) provide for the continued operation and maintenance of *renewable electricity generation activities* on the surface of *rivers and lakes* and on *land* outside the *coastal marine area* and the *beds of lakes and rivers*,
- (5) restrict the establishment or occurrence of activities that may adversely affect the efficient functioning of *renewable electricity generation infrastructure*,
- (5A) enable planning for National Grid,<sup>1703</sup>
- (5B) map the National Grid, and identify a buffer corridor within which sensitive activities shall generally not be allowed,<sup>1704</sup>
- (5C) map significant electricity distribution infrastructure and, where necessary, provide controls on activities to ensure that the functional needs of the significant electricity distribution infrastructure are not compromised,<sup>1705</sup>
- (5D) where necessary, establishing controls for buildings, structures and other activities adjacent to electricity infrastructure, to ensure the functional needs of that infrastructure are not compromised based on NZECP34:2001 Electrical Code of Practice for Electrical Safe Distances and the Electricity (Hazards from Trees) Regulations 2003 (prepared under the Electricity Act 1992), and<sup>1706</sup>
- (6) require the design of *subdivision* development to optimise solar gain, including through roading, lot size, dimensions, layout and orientation,<sup>1707</sup> and

### **EIT-EN-M3 – Education and information**

- (1) *Local authorities* must provide education and information to improve energy efficiency and provide for the adoption of renewable energy sources, including:
- (a) ways to increase measures for increased<sup>1707</sup> energy efficiency and energy conservation, and
  - (b) opportunities for *small and community scale distributed electricity generation*.
- (2) *Territorial authorities* must provide information on design techniques to optimise solar gain, including through roading, lot size, dimensions, layout, and orientation.

## **Explanation**

### **EIT-EN-E1 – Explanation**

The policies in this section are designed to set a clear preference for *renewable electricity generation activities* contributing to meeting New Zealand's national target for *renewable electricity generation*.

<sup>1701</sup> 00236.080 Horticulture NZ

<sup>1702</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment from 00305.043 Waka Kotahi

<sup>1703</sup> 00314.040 Transpower; Moved from EIT-INF-M5(2) – Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1704</sup> Moved from EIT-INF-M5(3) – Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1705</sup> 00315.058 Aurora Energy, 00320.026 Network Waitaki and 00511.026 PowerNet

<sup>1706</sup> 00315.058 Aurora Energy, 00320.026 Network Waitaki and 00511.026 PowerNet

<sup>1707</sup> 00139.157 DCC

Renewable electricity generation is a matter of national importance and a key component in responding to climate change and energy demands. Increasing energy security will assist with ensuring that communities have options for clean heat and electricity for health and wellbeing services.<sup>1708</sup>

*Renewable electricity generation activities* are promoted by providing for the investigation, operation and maintenance of these sites and ensuring that decisions on allocating natural resources and the use of *land*, for example, recognise the benefits of *renewable electricity generation activities* arising from maintaining or increasing generation capacity. It is noted that *renewable electricity generation activities* will come within the definition of *infrastructure*, and that provisions relating to *infrastructure* also apply.

The potential magnitude of adverse *effects* and *functional needs*<sup>1709</sup> and *operational needs* associated with *renewable electricity generation activities* is recognised by requiring consideration of those needs, and the extent to which unavoidable *effects* can be remedied or mitigated. Where significant<sup>1710</sup> residual adverse *effects* remain, consideration is given to proposals to offset these, or compensate for them. Increasing energy security will assist with ensuring that communities have options for clean heat.

To ensure the on-going functionality of *renewable electricity generation*<sup>1711</sup> assets and to maximise their benefits, reverse sensitivity *effects* or activities that may compromise the operation or maintenance of *renewable electricity generation activities* are to be avoided or their impacts minimised.

The policies also seek that energy use is efficient and energy waste is reduced, which will have consequential *effects* on minimising Otago's contribution to the nation's *greenhouse gas* emissions.

In addition, the policies also contain relevant considerations for the transmission of electricity, both in terms of the *National Grid, significant electricity distribution infrastructure* and other electricity transmission and distribution activities.<sup>1712</sup>

## Principal reasons

### EIT-EN-PR1 – Principal reasons

Energy is a basic requirement of life in Otago. It enables communities to provide for their well-being, and health and safety, and is essential to the regional economy. Everyday life is significantly affected when energy supply is disrupted. Therefore, ensuring the security of energy supplies that meet demand is crucial. The ability of existing energy generation activities to continue operating is dependent on access to resources such as *water* in hydro *lakes* and the operator's ability to maintain existing *infrastructure*.

Otago is fortunate to have several existing *renewable electricity generation* sites and potential to increase *renewable electricity generation*. The benefits of *renewable electricity generation* include reducing *greenhouse gas* emissions, dependence on imported energy and greater supply security. These benefits are afforded to Otago communities and nationally as exported energy is significant for other regions. Because of this, providing for new *renewable electricity generation* opportunities to meet increasing energy demand is necessary. Additionally, addressing inefficiencies in energy use can ensure that existing *infrastructure* is better utilised to reduce the need for new generation sites.

*Renewable electricity generation* facilities can cause significant adverse *effects* on the environment because of their *functional need* to locate in particular areas. These areas are where resources are

---

<sup>1708</sup> 00311.042 Trustpower

<sup>1709</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1710</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA consequential change to 00306.057 Meridian Energy

<sup>1711</sup> 00306.063 Meridian

<sup>1712</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from moving some policies from EIT-INF to EITEN.

available, for example *water* for hydro-electricity generation, but they may also contain other significant values such as outstanding natural features or landscapes, significant *indigenous vegetation* or sites of significance to *mana whenua* values. In some situations, it may not be possible to avoid adverse *effects* on these significant values after considering alternative sites or design options. In these circumstances the *effects* should be remedied or mitigated, and consideration should be given to whether those *effects* that cannot be avoided are offset or compensated.

In relation to the *National Grid and significant electricity distribution infrastructure*<sup>1713</sup> (which are both a subset of infrastructure), specific provision is made which recognises some of the operational and functional constraints for conveying electricity,<sup>1714</sup> as well as addressing matters that are required to be given effect to by the NPSET.<sup>1715</sup>

The provisions in this chapter assist in giving effect to the NPSREG, NPSET<sup>1716</sup> and NPSFM and implementing section 7(j) of the RMA 1991. Implementation of the provisions will occur primarily through *regional plans*<sup>1717</sup> and *district plan* provisions but regional, city and district councils also have a role in providing education and information to the community.

## Anticipated environmental results

- |                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>EIT-EN-AER1</b> | The proportion of electricity generated by <i>renewable energy generation activities</i> (including <u><i>small and community scale distributed electricity generation</i></u> <del>small and community scale electricity generation</del> ) <sup>1718</sup> in Otago increases over time. |
| <b>EIT-EN-AER2</b> | Energy use in Otago becomes more efficient over time and security of supply is maintained.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>EIT-EN-AER3</b> | The adverse <i>effects</i> associated with <i>renewable energy generation activities</i> are <del>minimised</del> <u>avoided, remedied or mitigated, or where appropriate, offset or compensated for.</u> <sup>1719</sup>                                                                  |
| <b>EIT-EN-AER4</b> | The proportion of <i>greenhouse gas</i> emissions per capita from energy generation reduces over time.                                                                                                                                                                                     |

---

<sup>1713</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1714</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1715</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from moving some policies from EIT-INF to EIT-EN.

<sup>1716</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1717</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1718</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1719</sup> 00311.045 Trustpower Limited



## **EIT-TRAN – Transport**<sup>1720</sup>

### **Objectives**

#### **EIT-TRAN-07 – Effective, efficient, and safe transport**

Otago has an integrated air, *land* and water-based-sea<sup>1721</sup> transport network that:

- (1) is effective, efficient and safe,
- (2) connects communities and their activities within Otago, with other regions, and internationally, and
- (3) is *resilient to natural hazards* and the effects of climate change, and the changing needs of communities.<sup>1722</sup>

#### **EIT-TRAN-08 – Transport system**

The transport system within Otago supports the movement of people, goods and services, is integrated with *land* use, provides a choice of transport modes and is adaptable to changes in demand.

#### **EIT-TRAN-09 – Effects of the transport system**

The contribution of transport to Otago's *greenhouse gas* emissions is reduced and communities are less reliant on fossil fuels for transportation.

#### **EIT-TRAN-010 – Commercial port activities**

*Commercial port activities* operate safely and efficiently, ~~and within environmental limits~~.<sup>1723</sup>

### **Policies**

#### **EIT-TRAN-P18 – Integration of the transport system**

The transport system contributes to the social, cultural and economic well-being of the people and communities<sup>1724</sup> of Otago through:

- (1) integration with *land* use activities and across transport modes, and
- (2) provision of transport *infrastructure* that enables safe and<sup>1725</sup> efficient<sup>1726</sup> service delivery in response to demand ~~as demand requires~~.<sup>1727</sup>

#### **EIT-TRAN-P19 – Transport system design**

*Resilience* and adaptability of the transport system supports efficient networks for the transport of

---

<sup>1720</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1721</sup> 00411.065 Wayfare

<sup>1722</sup> 00307.024 CIAL

<sup>1723</sup> 00301.043 Port of Otago

<sup>1724</sup> 00239.134 Federated Farmers

<sup>1725</sup> 00305.046 Waka Kotahi

<sup>1726</sup> 00239.134 Federated Farmers

<sup>1727</sup> 00305.046 Waka Kotahi

people and goods that are sustained, ~~and improved,~~ and responsive to growth<sup>1728</sup> by:

- (1) promoting a consolidated urban form that integrates *land* use activities with the transport system,
- (2) placing a high priority on *active transport* and *public transport* and their integration into the design of development and transport networks, and
- (3) encouraging regional connectivity, including to key visitor destinations, and<sup>1729</sup> improved access to public spaces, including the *coastal marine area, lakes and rivers*.

### **EIT-TRAN-P20 – Public transport**

~~Plans and proposals for m~~ Maintenance and development of the transport system ~~enhance~~ enhances<sup>1730</sup> the uptake of *public transport* by:

- (1) ~~promoting providing~~ safe and reliable alternatives to low occupancy<sup>1731</sup> private vehicle use ~~transport~~<sup>1732</sup>,
- (2) including measures to ensure pedestrian and cyclist safety and amenity, and
- (3) taking into consideration the accessibility needs of the community.

### **EIT-TRAN-P21 – Operation of the transport system**

The efficient and effective operation of the transport system is maintained by:

- (1) avoiding or mitigating<sup>1733</sup> adverse *effects* of activities on the functioning of the transport system,
- (2) avoiding the impacts of incompatible activities, to the extent reasonably practicable,<sup>1734</sup> including those that may result in reverse sensitivity *effects*,
- (3) avoiding or minimising the effects of activities and development so that the opportunity to adapt, upgrade or develop the transport system to meet future transport demand, is not compromised,<sup>1735</sup>
- (4) promoting the development and use of transport hubs that enable an efficient transfer of goods for transport and distribution across different freight and people transport modes,
- (5) promoting methods that provide more efficient use of, or reduce reliance on, private motor vehicles, including ridesharing, park and ride facilities, bus hubs, bicycle facilities,<sup>1736</sup> demand management and alternative transport modes, and
- (6) encouraging a shift to using renewable energy sources.

### **EIT-TRAN-P22 – Sustainable transportation**

Enable the development of sSustainable transport networks that enhance the uptake of new technologies and reduce reliance on fossil fuels ~~are developed~~ throughout Otago.<sup>1737</sup>

---

<sup>1728</sup> 00138.130 QLDC

<sup>1729</sup> 00206.052 Trojan, 00411.066 Wayfare

<sup>1730</sup> 00305.048 Waka Kotahi

<sup>1731</sup> 00139.182 DCC

<sup>1732</sup> 00139.182 DCC

<sup>1733</sup> 00139.183 DCC

<sup>1734</sup> 00139.183 DCC

<sup>1735</sup> 00139.183 DCC

<sup>1736</sup> 00139.183 DCC

<sup>1737</sup> 00139.184 DCC

## EIT-TRAN-P23 – Commercial port activities

Recognise the national and regional significance of the *commercial port activities* associated with the ports at Port Chalmers and Dunedin (respectively)<sup>1738</sup> by:

- (1) ~~within environmental limits as set out in Policies CE-P3 to CE-P12,~~<sup>1739</sup> providing for the efficient and safe operation of these the<sup>1740</sup> ports and efficient connections with other transport modes,
- (2) ~~within the environmental limits set out in Policies CE-P3 to CE-P12,~~<sup>1741</sup> providing for the development of the ports' capacity for national and international shipping in and adjacent to existing port activities, ~~and~~
- (3) ensuring that development in the coastal environment does not adversely affect the efficient and safe operation of these ports, or their connections with other transport modes, and
- (4) if any of policies CE-P3 to CE-P12 cannot be achieved while providing for the safe and efficient operation or development of *commercial port activities*, then resource consent for such activities may be sought where:
  - (a) the proposed work is required for the safe and efficient operation of *commercial port activities*, and
  - (b) the adverse effects from the operation or development are established to be the minimum necessary to achieve the safe and efficient operation of the *commercial port activities*.<sup>1742</sup>

## Methods

### EIT-TRAN-M7 – Regional plans

Otago Regional Council must prepare or amend and maintain its *regional plans* to:

- (1) provide for the development, operation, maintenance, or upgrade of the transport system that:
  - (a) is within the *beds of lakes and rivers* or the *coastal marine area*, or
  - (b) involves the taking, use, damming or diversion of *water* and *discharge of water* and *contaminants*,
- (2) ~~manage the adverse effects of infrastructure activities that:~~
  - (a) ~~provide for the establishment of transport infrastructure that supports modes of transport that are not reliant on fossil fuels, and~~<sup>1743</sup>
  - (b) ~~include policies and methods that provide for the *commercial port activities* associated with the operations at Otago Harbour and the ports at Port Chalmers and Dunedin,~~<sup>1744</sup> and
- (3) ~~within environmental limits,~~<sup>1745</sup> facilitate the safe and efficient operation and development of

<sup>1738</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1739</sup> 00301.001 Port Otago

<sup>1740</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1741</sup> 00301.001 Port Otago

<sup>1742</sup> 00301.001 Port Otago

<sup>1743</sup> 00301.045 Port Otago

<sup>1744</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00301.044 Port Otago

<sup>1745</sup> 00231.009 Fish and Game, 00301.045 Port Otago

~~commercial port activities at Port Chalmers and Dunedin. This includes including~~<sup>1746</sup> previously approved *resource consents* for the following activities in the coastal development area mapped in MAP2:

- (a) dredging of Otago lower ~~harbour~~ harbour<sup>1747</sup> (to 17.5m for entrance channel, and 14.5m through to Port Chalmers),
- (b) dredging of Otago upper harbour to 10.5m,
- (c) management of upper and lower harbour navigation beacons,
- (d) *discharge* of dredging spoil to the disposal grounds at Heyward Point, Aramoana, Shelley Beach, and ~~AO-A0~~<sup>1748</sup>, and
- (e) placement and use of scientific buoys.

### **EIT-TRAN-M8 – District plans**

*Territorial authorities* must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* to:

- (1) require a strategic approach to the integration of the transport system with *land* uses and between modes,
- (2) require high trip generating activities to be integrated with public transport services where sufficient public transport services exist or are planned<sup>1749</sup> and provide for safe pedestrian and cycling access, where this is practicable,<sup>1750</sup>
- (3) include *subdivision* and *infrastructure* design standards to ~~minimise private vehicle use,~~ facilitate the use of travel modes other than private vehicles,<sup>1751</sup> enable public transport networks to operate where this is practicable,<sup>1752</sup> provide access for emergency services,<sup>1753</sup> and recognise the accessibility needs of the community, including the mobility impaired, the elderly and children,
- ~~(3A) require the design of transport infrastructure to that provides~~<sup>1754</sup> for multi-modal transport options in urban areas, and in rural lifestyle locations where there is a practical opportunity to connect with an existing transport infrastructure network. ~~and rural residential locations.~~<sup>1755</sup>
- (4) restrict or prevent the establishment or expansion of activities adjacent to transport *infrastructure* that may compromise the operation or safety of the transport system,
- (5) provide for the establishment of transport *infrastructure* that supports modes of transport that are not reliant on fossil fuels, and
- (6) include policies and methods that provide for *commercial port* activities ~~associated with the operations at Otago Harbour and the ports at Port Chalmers and Dunedin~~<sup>1756</sup> and avoid encroachment of activities which give rise to reverse sensitivity effects.<sup>1757</sup>

<sup>1746</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00301.044 Port Otago

<sup>1747</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1748</sup> 00137.007 DCC

<sup>1749</sup> 00420.020 Hopkins, Jim, 00411.067 Wayfare

<sup>1750</sup> 00138.187 DCC

<sup>1751</sup> 00139.187 DCC

<sup>1752</sup> Consequential amendment made 00138.187 DCC

<sup>1753</sup> 00219.008 FENZ

<sup>1754</sup> 00139.156 DCC

<sup>1755</sup> 00138.108 QLDC – EIT-EN-M2(7) relocated to EIT-TRAN-M8

<sup>1756</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1757</sup> 00510.047 The Oil Companies

- (7) require the design of transport *infrastructure* to that provides<sup>1758</sup> for multi-modal transport options in urban areas, and in rural lifestyle locations where there is a practical opportunity to connect with an existing transport infrastructure network. and rural residential locations.<sup>1759</sup>

## EIT–TRAN–M9 – Regional Land Transport Plan

Otago Regional Council will take into account the objectives, provisions and methods of this chapter in preparing its Regional Land Transport Plan and Regional Public Transport Plan.

## Explanation

### EIT–TRAN–E3 – Explanation

The policies in this section seek to ensure that transport *infrastructure* is well designed and functions effectively, including providing for accessibility for different modes and purposes. This includes managing potential *effects* of other activities on the transport system and ensuring strategic decision making in the provision of transport *infrastructure* to best provide for connectivity. The policies also recognise the contribution of the transport system to emissions and provide for networks that seek to adopt technologies which reduce the adverse *effects* on the *environment* arising from fuel usage. In relation to *commercial port activities* taking place within the coastal environment, the provisions of the CE – Coastal Environment chapter also apply.

## Principal reasons

### EIT–TRAN–PR3 – Principal reasons

The transport system is critical for connecting people and communities and transporting goods, the effective functioning of Otago’s economy and the well-being of Otago’s community. The transport network can, however, have adverse *effects* on the *environment* and impact on community well-being. If there is sufficient demand, integration and the necessary *infrastructure*, modal choices can be provided and by giving preference to modes with lower environmental *effects*, the adverse impacts of the transport system can be reduced. However, as large parts of the Otago region are rural, reliance on private vehicles will remain the preferred, or the only practical, transport option for many people. This should not exclude the potential for improvements in modal choice or accessibility for a range of abilities and sectors of the community. Planning for transport *infrastructure* should be co-ordinated with urban and commercial growth and development to enable the transport system to effectively serve local communities and avoid reducing the efficiency of existing *infrastructure*.

## Anticipated environmental results

- |                       |                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>EIT–TRAN–AER9</b>  | Structure planning and <i>district plans</i> make explicit provision for all modes of transport.                        |
| <b>EIT–TRAN–AER10</b> | The number of people participating in active transport increases.                                                       |
| <b>EIT–TRAN–AER11</b> | The number of dwellings per hectare in areas accessible to <i>public transport</i> increases over the life of this RPS. |

---

<sup>1758</sup> 00139.156 DCC

<sup>1759</sup> 00138.108 QLDC

- EIT-TRAN-AER12** *Public transport patronage increases and congestion levels decrease*<sup>1760</sup> over the life of this RPS.
- EIT-TRAN-AER13** *Greenhouse gas emissions arising from the transport system reduce over time from increased active transport, shared travel and *public transport* patronage, increased use of rail for freight,<sup>1761</sup> and reduced reliance on fossil fuels.*
- EIT-TRAN-AER14** The transport of people, goods and services within Otago is achieved in a timely manner and at costs comparable to other regions.

---

<sup>1760</sup> 00139.189 DCC

<sup>1761</sup> 00139.190 DCC

# HAZ – Hazards and *risks*

## HAZ–NH – *Natural hazards*

### Objective

#### HAZ–NH–O1 – *Natural hazards*

Risks Levels of risk<sup>1762</sup> to people, communities and property from *natural hazards* within Otago are maintained where they are acceptable, and managed to ensure they<sup>1763</sup> do not exceed a tolerable level.

#### HAZ–NH–O2 – *Adaptation*<sup>1764</sup>

Otago’s people, ~~property and~~ communities, and property<sup>1765</sup> are prepared for and able to adapt to the effects of *natural hazards*, including *natural hazard risks* that are exacerbated by<sup>1766</sup> *climate change*.

### Policies

#### HAZ–NH–P1A – Identifying areas subject to *coastal hazards*

Identify areas that are potentially affected by *coastal hazards* (including tsunami), giving priority to the identification of areas at high *risk* of being affected.<sup>1767</sup>

#### HAZ–NH–P1 – Identifying areas subject to *natural hazards*

For *hazards* not identified in accordance with HAZ–NH–P1A,<sup>1768</sup> ~~Using the best available information,~~<sup>1769</sup> identify areas where *natural hazards* may adversely affect Otago’s people, communities and property, by assessing:

- (1) the hazard type and characteristics,
- (2) *multiple and cascading hazards*, where present,
- (3) any cumulative *effects*,
- (4) any *effects of climate change*,
- (5) the likelihood of different hazard scenarios occurring, using the best available information,<sup>1770</sup> and
- (6) any other exacerbating factors.

---

<sup>1762</sup> 00138.145 QLDC

<sup>1763</sup> 00138.142 QLDC

<sup>1764</sup> 00138.143 QLDC

<sup>1765</sup> 00139.194 DCC

<sup>1766</sup> 00321.073 NZ Infrastructure Commission

<sup>1767</sup> 00301.047 Port Otago

<sup>1768</sup> 00301.047 Port Otago

<sup>1769</sup> 00139.194 DCC

<sup>1770</sup> 00139.194 DCC

## HAZ–NH–P2 – Risk assessments

Within areas identified under HAZ-NH-P1 as being to *natural hazards*, Assess<sup>1771</sup> the level of<sup>1772</sup> *natural hazard risk* as significant, tolerable, or acceptable<sup>1773</sup> by determining a range of *natural hazard* event scenarios and their potential consequences in accordance with the criteria set out within APP6.

## HAZ–NH–P3 – New activities

Once the level of *natural hazard risk* associated with an activity has been determined in accordance with HAZ–NH–P2, manage new activities to achieve the following outcomes:

- (1) ~~significant when the *natural hazard risks* are avoided, is significant, the activity is avoided,~~<sup>1774</sup>
- (2) when the *natural hazard risk* is tolerable, manage the level of *risk* so that it does not exceed tolerable ~~become significant,~~<sup>1775</sup> and
- (3) when the *natural hazard risk* is acceptable, maintain the level of *risk*.

## HAZ–NH–P4 – Existing *natural hazard risk* activities<sup>1776</sup>

In areas identified under HAZ-NH-P1 as subject to *natural hazards*,<sup>1777</sup> Reduce existing *natural hazard risk* to a tolerable or acceptable level<sup>1778</sup> by:

- (1) encouraging activities that reduce *risk*, or reduce community vulnerability,
- ~~(2) restricting activities that increase *risk*, or increase community vulnerability,~~<sup>1779</sup>
- (3) managing existing activities ~~and uses~~<sup>1780</sup> within areas of significant *risk* to people, ~~and~~ communities, and property,<sup>1781</sup>
- (4) encouraging design that facilitates:
  - (a) ~~recovery from *natural hazard* events, or~~<sup>1782</sup>
  - (b) relocation to areas of acceptable *risk*, or
  - (c) reduction of *risk*,
- (5) relocating *lifeline utilities*, and facilities for essential and emergency services, away from areas of significant *risk*, where appropriate and practicable, and
- (6) enabling development, upgrade, maintenance and operation of *lifeline utilities* and facilities for essential and emergency services.

## HAZ–NH–P5 – Precautionary approach to *natural hazard risk*

Where the *natural hazard risk*, either individually or cumulatively, is uncertain or unknown, but potentially

---

<sup>1771</sup> 00236.085 Horticulture NZ

<sup>1772</sup> 00138.145 QLDC

<sup>1773</sup> 0138.145 QLDC

<sup>1774</sup> 00314.044 Transpower

<sup>1775</sup> 00138.148 QLDC

<sup>1776</sup> 00138.149 QLDC

<sup>1777</sup> 00301.047 Port Otago

<sup>1778</sup> 00138.149 QLDC

<sup>1779</sup> 00321.077 Te Waihanga

<sup>1780</sup> 00022.022 Graymont NZ

<sup>1781</sup> 00138.149 QLDC

<sup>1782</sup> 00138.149 QLDC



significant or irreversible, apply a precautionary approach to identifying, assessing and managing that *risk* by adopting an avoidance or adaptive management response to ~~diminish the risk and uncertainty.~~<sup>1783</sup>

#### **HAZ–NH–P6 – Protecting features and systems that provide hazard mitigation**

Protect the ability of<sup>1784</sup> natural or modified features and systems ~~that contribute~~<sup>1785</sup> to mitigate ~~mitigating~~<sup>1786</sup> the *effects of natural hazards and climate change*.

#### **HAZ–NH–P7 – Mitigating *natural hazards***

Prioritise *risk* management approaches that reduce the need for *hard protection structures* or similar engineering interventions, and provide for *hard protection structures* only when:

~~(1) *hard protection structures* are essential to manage *risk* to a level the community is able to tolerate,~~<sup>1787</sup>

(1A) the following apply:<sup>1788</sup>

(2a) there are no reasonable alternatives that manage or reduce ~~result in reducing~~<sup>1789</sup> the *risk* exposure to a level the community is able to tolerate,<sup>1790</sup>

(3b) *hard protection structures* would not result in a more than minor ~~an~~ increase in *risk* to people, communities and property, including displacement of *risk* off-site,

(4c) the adverse *effects* of the *hard protection structures* can be adequately managed, and

(5d) the mitigation is viable in the reasonably foreseeable long term or provides time for future adaptation methods to be implemented, or

~~(61B)~~ the *hard protection structure* protects a *lifeline utility*, or a facility for essential or emergency services.

#### **HAZ–NH–P8 – *Lifeline utilities* and facilities for essential or emergency services**

Locate, ~~relocate,~~<sup>1791</sup> and design *lifeline utilities* and facilities for essential or emergency services to:

- (1) maintain their ability to function to the fullest extent possible, during and after *natural hazard* events, and
- (2) take into account their operational co-dependence with other *lifeline utilities* and essential services to ensure their effective operation.

#### **HAZ–NH–P9 – Protection of hazard mitigation measures, *lifeline utilities*, and essential or emergency services**<sup>1792</sup>

Protect the *functional needs and operational*<sup>1793</sup> of hazard mitigation measures, *lifeline utilities*, and essential or emergency services, including by:

---

<sup>1783</sup> 00138.150 QLDC

<sup>1784</sup> 00139.199 DCC

<sup>1785</sup> 00139.199 DCC

<sup>1786</sup> 00139.199 DCC

<sup>1787</sup> 00301.050 Port Otago, 00119.019 Blackthorn Lodge Glenorchy Limited, 00138.152 QLDC

<sup>1788</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1789</sup> 00301.050 Port Otago

<sup>1790</sup> 00137.130 DOC, 00230.139 Forest and Bird

<sup>1791</sup> 00138.149 QLDC

<sup>1792</sup> 00139.202 DCC, 00510.056 The Fuel Companies

<sup>1793</sup> 00313.026 Queenstown Airport

- (1) avoiding significant adverse *effects* on those measures, utilities or services,
- (2) avoiding, and only where avoidance is not practicable, remedying or mitigating other adverse *effects* on those measures, utilities or services,
- (3) maintaining access to those measures, utilities or services for maintenance and operational purposes, and
- (4) restricting the establishment of other activities that may result in reverse sensitivity *effects* on those measures, utilities or services.

### HAZ–NH–P10 – Coastal hazards

In addition to HAZ–NH–P1 to HAZ–NH–P9 above, ~~o~~On any *land* that is potentially affected by coastal hazards over at least the next 100 years:

- (1) avoid increasing the *risk* of social, environmental and economic harm from coastal hazards,
- (2) ensure no *land* use change or redevelopment occurs that would increase the *risk* to people and communities from that coastal hazard,
- (3) encourage *land* use change or redevelopment that reduces the *risk* from that coastal hazard, ~~and~~
- (4) ensure decision making about the nature, scale and location of activities considers the ability of Otago’s people and communities to adapt to, or mitigate the *effects* of, sea level rise and *climate change*, ~~and~~
- (5) apply HAZ-NH-P5 to HAZ-NH-P9.<sup>1794</sup>

### HAZ-NH-P11 – Kāi Tahu rakatirataka ~~Kaitiaki decision making~~

Recognise and provide for the rakatirataka of Kāi Tahu by:

- (1) enabling *mana whenua* to lead approaches on the management of *natural hazard risks* affecting native reserves and Māori *land*, and
- (2) including Kāi Tahu in decision-making on the management of *natural hazard risks* affecting the values of *wāhi tūpuna*.<sup>1795</sup>

~~Recognise and provide for the role of Kāi Tahu as kaitiaki over *wāhi tūpuna*, Māori reserves and freehold land that is susceptible to *natural hazards* by involving *mana whenua* in decision making and management processes.~~<sup>1796</sup>

## Methods

### HAZ–NH–M1 – Statement of responsibilities

In accordance with section 62(1)(i)(i) of the RMA 1991,<sup>1797</sup> the responsibilities for the control of *land* use to avoid or mitigate *natural hazards* or any group of hazards are as follows:

- (1) the Regional Council and *territorial authorities* are both responsible for specifying objectives, policies and methods in *regional plans*<sup>1798</sup> and *district plans* for managing *land* subject to *natural*

<sup>1794</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1795</sup> 00226.048 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1796</sup> 00310.011 The Telecommunications Companies

<sup>1797</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1798</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

*hazard risk,*

- (2) the Regional Council is responsible for:
- (a) specifying objectives, policies and methods in *regional plans*:
    - (i) in the *coastal marine area,*
    - (ii) in *wetlands, lakes and rivers, and*
    - (iii) in, on or under the *beds of rivers and lakes, and*
    - (iv) on land in relation to *risk reduction,*<sup>1799</sup>
  - (b) identifying areas in the region subject to *natural hazards* and describing their characteristics as required by Policy HAZ–NH–P1, mapping the extent of those areas in the relevant *regional plan(s)* and including those maps on a *natural hazard* register or database,
  - (c) ~~in the coastal environment,~~ identifying the *coastal hazards* as required by ~~CE–P2(3)~~<sup>1800</sup> HAZ–NH–P1A<sup>1801</sup> in accordance with Policy 24 of the NZCPS, mapping the extent of those areas in the relevant *regional plan(s)* and including those maps on a *natural hazard* register or database, and
  - (d) continually monitoring *natural hazard risk* to understand how levels of *natural hazard risk* change overtime, and where required, update the *natural hazard* mapping areas identified in 2(b) and (c) above,<sup>1802</sup>
- (3) *territorial authorities* are responsible for:<sup>1803</sup>
- (a) specifying objectives, policies and methods in *district plans* for *land* outside of the areas listed in (2)(a), and
  - (b) mapping or identifying via the *natural hazard* register or database, areas identified in 2(a), (b) and (c) above subject to natural hazards and describing the characteristics ~~and the extent~~<sup>1804</sup> of those areas in the relevant *district plan(s)*.

### **HAZ–NH–M2 – Local authorities**

*Local authorities* must work collaboratively to:<sup>1805</sup>

- (1) assess the level of *natural hazard risk* in their region or district in accordance with HAZ–NH–P2 and APP6, including by:
- (a) consulting with communities, stakeholders and *Kāi Tahu,* including with *local authorities* in *neighbouring regions*<sup>1806</sup> partners regarding *risk* levels thresholds, ~~and~~
  - (b) developing a Risk Table in accordance with Step 3 of APP6 at a district or community scale, and
  - (c) identifying areas of significant *risk,*<sup>1807</sup>

---

<sup>1799</sup> 00138.155 QLDC

<sup>1800</sup> 00137.135 DOC

<sup>1801</sup> 00301.047 Port Otago

<sup>1802</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1803</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1804</sup> 00138.155 QLDC

<sup>1805</sup> 00138.156 QLDC

<sup>1806</sup> 00013.015 ECan

<sup>1807</sup> 00236.088 Horticulture NZ

- (2) continue to undertake research on the identification of *natural hazard risk* and amend *natural hazard registers, databases, regional plans*<sup>1808</sup> and/or *district plans* as required,
- (3) investigate options for reducing the level of *natural hazard risk* within areas of existing development to a tolerable or lower level, including by managing existing use rights under Sections 10 and 20A of the RMA,
- (4) prepare or amend and maintain their *regional plans*<sup>1809</sup> or *district plans* to take into account the *effects* of *climate change* by:
  - (a) using the best relevant *climate change* data and projections to 2115,
  - (b) taking a precautionary approach when assessing and managing the *effects* of *climate change* where there is scientific uncertainty and potentially significant or irreversible *effects*,
  - (c) providing for activities that assist to reduce or mitigate the *effects* of *climate change*, and
  - (d) encouraging system *resilience*.

### **HAZ–NH–M3 – Regional plans**

Otago Regional Council must prepare or amend and maintain its *regional plans* to:

- (1) manage activities in the *coastal marine area, beds of lakes and rivers, and wetlands* to achieve policies HAZ–NH–P23<sup>1810</sup> to HAZ–NH–P6 and APP6, and the outcomes of the Risk Table established within HAZ-NH-M2(1).<sup>1811</sup>
- (2) include *natural hazard risk*<sup>1812</sup> reduction measures, such as removing or restricting existing *land* uses, where there is significant *risk* to people or property,
- (3) protect natural or modified features and systems that provide mitigation from the adverse *effects* of *natural hazards* in accordance with HAZ–NH–P6,
- (4) provide for *hard protection structures* in accordance with HAZ–NH–P7,
- (5) provide for the *functional needs* of hazard mitigation measures, *lifeline utilities*, and essential or emergency services in accordance with HAZ–NH–P8 and HAZ–NH–P9,
- (6) include provisions that require decision makers to apply the precautionary approach set out in HAZ–NH–P5 when considering applications for *resource consent* for activities that will change the use of *land* and thereby increase the *risk* from *natural hazards* within areas subject to *natural hazard risk* that is uncertain or unknown, but potentially significant or irreversible, and
- (7) require a *natural hazard risk* assessment commensurate with the level of risk from the proposed activity<sup>1813</sup> be undertaken where an activity requires a *resource consent* to change the use of *land* ~~which will increase the risk from natural hazards with~~<sup>1814</sup> in areas subject to *natural hazards*, and where the *resource consent* is lodged prior to the *natural hazard risk* assessment required by HAZ–

<sup>1808</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1809</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1810</sup> 00138.158 QLDC

<sup>1811</sup> 00119.021 Blackthorn Lodge

<sup>1812</sup> 00138.157 QLDC

<sup>1813</sup> 00236.089 Horticulture NZ

<sup>1814</sup> 00138.158 QLDC

NH-M2(1) being completed, included in the regional plan and made operative,<sup>1815</sup> the *natural hazard risk* assessment must include:

- (a) an assessment of the level of *natural hazard risk* associated with the proposal in accordance with APP6, and
  - (b) an assessment demonstrating how the proposal will achieve the outcomes set out in Policies HAZ-NH-P3 and HAZ-NH-P4, and
- (8) not require a natural hazard risk assessment in accordance with APP6 for resource consent applications, once the natural hazard risk assessment required by HAZ-NH-M2(1) has been completed, included in the relevant regional plan and made operative, unless otherwise expressly required by the relevant regional plan.<sup>1816</sup>

#### **HAZ-NH-M4 – District plans**

*Territorial authorities* must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* to:

- (1) achieve policies HAZ-NH-P2~~3~~<sup>1817</sup> to HAZ-NH-P6, and APP6 and incorporate the outcomes of the Risk Table established within HAZ-NH-M2(1),<sup>1818</sup> on *land* outside the *coastal marine area, beds of lakes and rivers, and wetlands* by managing the location, scale and density of activities that are ~~may be~~<sup>1819</sup> subject to *natural hazard risk*,
- (2) ~~require implementation of natural hazard risk reduction measures, including to existing activities in accordance with HAZ-NH-P4,~~<sup>1820</sup>
- (3) protect the role of natural or modified features and systems that provide mitigation from the adverse *effects* of *natural hazards* in accordance with HAZ-NH-P6,
- (4) provide for *hard protection structures* in accordance with HAZ-NH-P7,
- (5) provide for the *functional needs* of hazard mitigation measures, *lifeline utilities*, and essential or emergency services in accordance with HAZ-NH-P8 and HAZ-NH-P9,
- (6) include provisions that require decision makers to apply the precautionary approach set out in HAZ-NH-P5 when considering applications for *resource consent* for activities that will change the use of *land* and which may increase the *risk* from *natural hazards* within areas subject to *natural hazard risk* that is uncertain or unknown, but potentially significant or irreversible, and
- (7) require a natural hazard risk assessment commensurate with the level of risk from the proposed activity<sup>1821</sup> be undertaken where an activity requires a plan change or *resource consent* to change the use of *land* ~~which will increase the risk from natural hazards with~~<sup>1822</sup> in areas subject to *natural hazards*, and where the application is lodged prior to the *natural hazard risk* assessment required by HAZ-NH-M2(1) being completed, included in the district plan and made operative,<sup>1823</sup> the *natural hazard risk* assessment must include:
  - (a) an assessment of the level of *natural hazard risk* associated with the proposal in accordance with APP6, and

---

<sup>1815</sup> 00301.052 Port Otago

<sup>1816</sup> 00301.052 Port Otago

<sup>1817</sup> 00119.021 Blackthorn Lodge

<sup>1818</sup> 00138.158 QLDC

<sup>1819</sup> 00119.022 Blackthorn Lodge

<sup>1820</sup> 00138.158 QLDC

<sup>1821</sup> 00236.090 Horticulture NZ, 00239.14 Federated Farmers

<sup>1822</sup> 00138.158 QLDC

<sup>1823</sup> 00301.047 Port Otago

- (b) an assessment demonstrating how the proposal will achieve the outcomes set out in Policies HAZ–NH–P3 and HAZ–NH–P4, and
- (8) not require a natural hazard risk assessment in accordance with APP6 for resource consent applications, once the natural hazard risk assessment required by HAZ–NH–M2(1) has been completed, included in the relevant regional plan and made operative, unless otherwise expressly required by the relevant regional plan.<sup>1824</sup>

### HAZ–NH–M5 – Other incentives and mechanisms

Local authorities are encouraged to consider the use of other mechanisms or incentives to assist in achieving Policies HAZ–NH–P1 to HAZ–NH–P11, including but not limited to.<sup>1825</sup>

- (1) preparing *natural hazard* strategies or other similar documents to assist in the management and reduction of *natural hazard risk* and adaptation to, and mitigation of, the *effects of climate change*,
- (2) developing community relevant responses to the impacts of *natural hazards* and *climate change*, in collaboration with key stakeholders and affected community,
- (3) undertaking research in collaboration with other *local authorities* and other stakeholders as appropriate, into *natural hazards* and *climate change* in Otago, and
- (4) providing information and guidance on:
  - (a) management approaches to the avoidance or mitigation of *natural hazards*,
  - (b) ways to adapt to and mitigate the *effects of climate change*, and
  - (c) the benefits of natural features and systems in mitigating *natural hazards*.

## Explanation

### HAZ–NH–E1 – Explanation

The policies in this chapter are designed to reduce the level of *natural hazard risk* within the region through sound preparation, investigation and planning. These provisions take a risk-based approach, taking into consideration the likelihood of the hazard and the vulnerability of people, communities, and the *environment*. The approach ensures consistent planning by applying the same framework irrespective of the type of *natural hazard* that may exist. It allows for the full range of *risk* mitigation measures (regulatory and non-regulatory) to be taken into account in determining the level of *risk* that exists at a particular locality.

Once the level of *risk* has been established, following consultation with communities, stakeholders and partners,<sup>1826</sup> the provisions direct that *district plans*<sup>1827</sup> and *regional plans* require activities to be undertaken in a manner that results in the *natural hazard risk* to people, the community and property being tolerable or lower. Where a *natural hazard risk* to people, the community and property cannot be reduced to a tolerable level, the activity must be avoided. The provisions require that the same risk-based approach is taken when considering the management of existing development, by ensuring that the *risk*

---

<sup>1824</sup> 00301.052 Port Otago

<sup>1825</sup> 00219.005 FENZ

<sup>1826</sup> 00119.023 Blackthorn Lodge

<sup>1827</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

associated with existing development is tolerable or lower.

The provisions also set direction on *natural hazard* management methods such as use of the precautionary approach, protecting natural features and systems that provide hazard mitigation, the use of *hard protection structures*, and the location and design of *lifeline utilities* and facilities for essential or emergency services. These provisions are designed to reduce the level of *natural hazard risk* within the region.

## **Principal reasons**<sup>1828</sup>

### **HAZ–NH–PR1 – Principal reasons**

The Otago region is exposed to a wide variety of *natural hazards* that impact on people, property, *infrastructure* and the wider *environment*. Given the wide variety of landscapes that make up the Otago region, the *natural hazards* threats range from coastal erosion and flooding in the lowland coastal areas of the region to alluvial fan deposition, landslip, fire, earthquakes, rock fall, and *river* breaches in the alpine areas of the region. The *effects* of *natural hazards* vary in terms of both their likelihood and consequence. Some *natural hazards*, such as flooding, may occur relatively frequently and may damage property and disrupt people’s lives and economic, social and cultural activities, whereas *natural hazards* such as tsunami occur infrequently, but when they do occur, they pose serious *risk* to life.

~~The negative effects of natural hazards are generally best managed by avoiding development in areas that are known to be subject to natural hazards. However,~~<sup>1829</sup> The majority of the region is subject to some form of hazards *risk*, to a greater or lesser extent. While avoidance of *natural hazard risk*<sup>1830</sup> may be the preferred option in many cases, in other situations mitigating the *effects* of *natural hazards* to tolerable levels will be a feasible option to ensure the health, safety and well-being of the community. The changing nature of *natural hazards risk* due to *climate change* means that planning provisions need to be able to adapt to a future *natural hazards environment*.

Consultation with communities, stakeholders and partners is essential to an understanding of risk tolerance.<sup>1831</sup> Preparing natural hazard risk assessments requires consultation with these groups.<sup>1832</sup> Communities need consistent guidance on sea level rise, extreme weather events, and all other adverse *effects* of *climate change* if they are to appropriately manage those *effects*. *Climate change* is resulting in rising sea levels and is increasing the frequency and severity of climate related *natural hazards* including flooding, wind events, fires, landslips, erosion and drought. *Stormwater* systems may not be able to cope with heavier rainfall. Other *effects* of *climate change* include changing distributions of plants and animals, and consequential *effects*, such as the *risk* of saltwater intrusion into *groundwater* as a result of sea level rise in combination with increased *groundwater* abstraction, and *groundwater* ponding. There may be other adverse *effects* from *climate change* that are not yet known. A precautionary approach is required where there is scientific uncertainty. The *effects* of *climate change* will result in social, environmental and economic costs. It is prudent that these changes are planned for now, so that the impacts can be reduced.

~~In addition to the objectives and policies in this chapter, the management of natural hazards are also recognised and provided for in the following chapters of this RPS:~~

---

<sup>1828</sup> Clause 16(2)

<sup>1829</sup> 00119.024 Blackthorn Lodge

<sup>1830</sup> 00119.024 Blackthorn Lodge

<sup>1831</sup> 00119.024 Blackthorn Lodge

<sup>1832</sup> 00119.024 Blackthorn Lodge

- ~~IM~~ — Integrated management
- ~~CE~~ — Coastal environment
- ~~EIT~~ — Energy, infrastructure and transport
- ~~UFD~~ — Urban form and development<sup>1833</sup>

## Anticipated environmental results

- HAZ-NH-AER1**      The location and design of new developments and natural resource use reduces community exposure to the adverse *effects of natural hazards* events and processes.
- HAZ-NH-AER2**      No developments proceed that have a significant level of *risk*.
- HAZ-NH-AER3**      The level of *risk* associated with new development does not exceed a tolerable level.
- HAZ-NH-AER4**      Where existing development is subject to *risks from natural hazards*, the level of *risk* is reduced to a tolerable level.
- HAZ-NH-AER5**      The impact on people, communities and life,<sup>1834</sup> property, *lifeline utilities*, and essential services from *natural hazards* and *climate change* is managed to a tolerable or acceptable level.<sup>1835</sup>

---

<sup>1833</sup> 00120.006 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

<sup>1834</sup> 00239.144 Federated Farmers

<sup>1835</sup> 00138.163 QLDC



## HAZ–CL – Contaminated land

### Objectives

#### HAZ–CL–O3 – Contaminated land

*Contaminated land* and waste materials are managed to protect human health and do not harm<sup>1836</sup> Kāi Tahu,<sup>1837</sup> *mana whenua* values and the *environment* in Otago.

### Policies

#### HAZ–CL–P13 – Identifying contaminated land

Identify sites of known or potentially *contaminated land* in Otago using the Ministry for the Environment's *Hazardous Activities and Industries List*.<sup>1838</sup>

#### HAZ–CL–P14 – Managing contaminated land

Actively manage<sup>1839</sup> contaminated or potentially *contaminated land* so that it does not pose an unacceptable *risk* to people and the *environment*, by:

- (1) assessing and, if required,<sup>1840</sup> monitoring *contaminant* levels and environmental *risks*,
- (2) protecting human health in accordance with regulatory requirements,
- (3) avoiding, as the first priority, and only where avoidance is not reasonably practicable, mitigating or remediating, adverse *effects* of the *contaminants* on the *environment*, ~~and~~
- (4) requiring closed *landfills* to be managed in accordance with a closure plan that sets out monitoring requirements and, where necessary, any remedial actions required to address ongoing *risks*, and
- (5) prioritising the identification and management of closed *landfills* and *contaminated land* at risk from the *effects* of *climate change*.<sup>1841</sup>

#### HAZ–CL–P15 – New contaminated land

Avoid the creation of new *contaminated land* or, where this is not practicable, minimise to the extent reasonably practicable<sup>1842</sup> adverse *effects* on the *environment* and Kāi Tahu *mana whenua*<sup>1843</sup> values.

#### HAZ–CL–P16 – Waste minimisation responses

Apply the principles of the *waste* management hierarchy (reduce, reuse, recycle, recover, residual *waste* management) to the management of all *waste* streams.

#### HAZ–CL–P17 – Disposal of waste materials

Provide for the development and operation of facilities and services for the storage, recycling, recovery

---

<sup>1836</sup> 00236.091 Horticulture NZ, 00239.145 Federated Farmers

<sup>1837</sup> 00226.264 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1838</sup> 00510.060 The Fuel Companies

<sup>1839</sup> 00510.061 The Fuel Companies

<sup>1840</sup> 00510.061 The Fuel Companies

<sup>1841</sup> 00223.119 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>1842</sup> 00313.027 Queenstown Airport

<sup>1843</sup> 00226.267 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

and treatment of *waste* materials but only for the disposal of *waste* materials if those materials cannot be recycled, recovered or treated for re-use.

### **HAZ-CL-P18 – Waste facilities and services**

When providing for the development of facilities and services for the storage, recycling, recovery, treatment and disposal of *waste* materials:

- (1) avoid adverse *effects* on the health and safety of people,
- (2) to the extent reasonably practicable,<sup>1844</sup> minimise the potential for adverse *effects* on the *environment* to occur,
- (3) minimise *risk* associated with *natural hazard* events, and
- (4) restrict the establishment of activities that may result in reverse sensitivity *effects* near *waste* management facilities and services.

## **Methods**

### **HAZ-CL-M6 – Regional plans**

Otago Regional Council must:

- (1) in accordance with HAZ-CL-P13,<sup>1845</sup> maintain a register or database of sites of known or potentially contaminated land in Otago ~~where hazardous activities and industries are or have been located in Otago~~,<sup>1846</sup>
- (2) prepare or amend and maintain its *regional plans* to:
  - (a) in accordance with HAZ-CL-P14 and HAZ-CL-P15 manage the *effects* of the use of *contaminated land* on:
    - (i) the quality of air, *water* and *land*; and
    - (ii) the *coastal marine area*, and the *beds* of *rivers*, *lakes* and other *water bodies*,
  - (b) require *waste* disposal facilities to be designed, constructed and operated in accordance with best industry practice, and
  - (c) require *waste* disposal facilities to monitor, record and report on the quantity and composition of *waste* being deposited to *landfill*.

### **HAZ-CL-M7 – District plans**

*Territorial authorities* must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* to provide for the development of facilities and services for the storage, recycling, recovery, treatment and disposal of *waste* while achieving the outcomes listed in HAZ-CL-P14 to HAZ-CL-P16.

### **HAZ-CL-M8 – Waste management and minimisation plans**

*Local authorities* must develop *waste* management and minimisation plans in accordance with the Waste Minimisation Act 2008.

---

<sup>1844</sup> 00226.270 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00230.140 Forest and Bird

<sup>1845</sup> 00236.093 Horticulture NZ

<sup>1846</sup> 00239.147 Federated Farmers

## **HAZ-CL-M8A – Prioritisation and action plans**

Otago Regional Council and territorial authorities, in consultation with Kāi Tahu and the community, must together:

- (1) identify closed *landfills* and *contaminated land* risk from the effects of *climate change*,
- (2) assess the *risk* and the potential *effects* of release of *contaminants*,
- (3) develop and implement action plans to avoid release of *contaminants* from the identified closed *landfills* and *contaminated land*, prioritising sites at greatest *risk*, and
- (4) review sites and their level of *risk* every five years.<sup>1847</sup>

## **HAZ-CL-M9 – Other incentives and mechanisms**

*Local authorities* may:

- (1) encourage the application of the *waste* management hierarchy by:
  - (a) giving preference to reducing waste generated,
  - (b) reusing *waste*,
  - (c) recycling *waste*,
  - (d) recovering resources from *waste*, and
  - (e) only disposing residual *waste* to a disposal facility,
- (2) provide information and guidance on *waste* minimisation and management, and
- (3) advocate for:
  - (a) the implementation of the *waste* hierarchy throughout the region, and
  - (b) the development of *infrastructure* and services to provide for recycling and disposal services across the region.

## **Explanation**

### **HAZ-CL-E2 – Explanation**

The policies in this chapter are designed to ensure that *contaminated land* and *waste* materials do not harm human health or the *environment*. To achieve this, areas of known or potentially *contaminated land* are to be identified. Once sites are identified, the protection of human health is managed by the ~~National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health 2012 (NESCS)~~ NESCS<sup>1848</sup>. It is the role of *regional plans* to minimise the adverse *effects* of the *contaminants* on the *environment* by avoiding the creation of new *contaminated land* and minimising the adverse *effects* of *waste* material on the *environment*. The provisions within this chapter also encourage the application of the *waste* management hierarchy.

## **Principal reasons**

---

<sup>1847</sup> 00223.119 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>1848</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

## HAZ-CL-PR2 – Principal reasons

Resources need to be carefully used to minimise the material disposed of as *waste*. Waste materials and hazardous substances need to be carefully managed to avoid creating environmental problems or adversely affecting human health.

In order to protect people and the *environment* from the adverse *effects* of *contaminated land*, the first task is to identify *land* that could be contaminated. The Ministry for the Environment's Hazardous Activities and Industries List (HAIL) is a list of activities and industries that may have involved the use of hazardous substances. Such use of hazardous substances may have resulted in *land* becoming contaminated. Once known or potentially *contaminated land* has been identified, assessments can be made to determine the nature or existence of contamination.

The ~~National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health 2012 (NESCS)~~ NESCS<sup>1849</sup> sets out a nationally consistent set of planning controls and soil *contaminant* values. It applies to assessing and managing the actual or potential adverse *effects* of *contaminants* in soil on human health when undertaking *subdivision*, *land* use change, *earthworks*, soil sampling or removing the underground portions of any fuel storage or dispensing systems. The NESCS does not apply to assessing and managing the actual or potential adverse *effects* of *contaminants* on other receptors, including ecology, *water* quality or *amenity values*. Therefore, it is the role of the *regional plans* to manage these adverse *effects*.

The *waste* management hierarchy is an internationally recognised management model for the reduction of residual *waste*. The *waste* management hierarchy can be applied to all *waste* streams. When making decisions about a *land* use or activity, it is possible to include methods that will reduce *waste* over the lifetime of that *land* use or activity.

## Anticipated environmental results

**HAZ-CL-AER6**                      The environment, people and communities are not harmed by *waste* materials.

**HAZ-CL-AER7**                      The waste hierarchy is implemented, resulting in less *waste* requiring disposal and a reduction of the environmental *effects* generated from *waste*.

---

<sup>1849</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

# HCV – Historical and cultural values

## HCV–WT – *Wāhi tūpuna*

### Objectives

#### HCV–WT–O1 – Kāi Tahu wāhi tūpuna cultural landscapes<sup>1850</sup>

*Wāhi tūpuna* and their associated cultural values are identified and protected.

#### HCV–WT–O2 – Rakatirataka

The rakatirataka of *mana whenua* over *wāhi tūpuna* is recognised, and *mana whenua* are able to exercise their role as kaitiaki<sup>1851</sup> ~~kaitiakitaka~~ within these areas.

### Policies

#### HCV–WT–P1 – Recognise and identify *wāhi tūpuna*

Sustain the enduring Kāi Tahu relationships ~~relationship~~ with *wāhi tūpuna* are sustained<sup>1852</sup>, including by:

- (1) enabling Kāi Tahu to identify ~~identifying~~<sup>1853</sup> as *wāhi tūpuna* any sites and areas of significance to *mana whenua*, along with the cultural values that contribute to each *wāhi tūpuna* being significant,
- (2) recognising the rakatirataka of *mana whenua* over *wāhi tūpuna* and providing for their ability to exercise their role as kaitiaki ~~kaitiakitaka~~<sup>1854</sup> within these areas,
- (3) recognising and providing for connections and associations between different *wāhi tūpuna*, and
- (4) recognising and using traditional place names.

#### HCV–WT–P2 – Management of effects on<sup>1855</sup> *wāhi tūpuna*

*Wāhi tūpuna* are protected by:

- (1) avoiding significant adverse *effects* on the cultural values ~~associated with~~<sup>1856</sup> of identified *wāhi tūpuna*,
- (1A) avoiding, as the first priority, other adverse effects on the cultural values of identified *wāhi tūpuna*<sup>1857</sup>,
- (2) where other adverse *effects* demonstrably cannot be completely avoided, then either remedying or mitigating adverse *effects* in a manner that maintains the values of the *wāhi tūpuna*,

---

<sup>1850</sup> 00226.275 Kāi Tahu ki Otago; 00234.034 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>1851</sup> 00226.276 Kāi Tahu ki Otago; 00234.035 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

<sup>1852</sup> 00226.277 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1853</sup> 00226.277 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1854</sup> 00226.277 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1855</sup> 00226.278 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1856</sup> 00226.278 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1857</sup> 00137.142 DOC

## **HCV–WT–P2A – Management of wāhi tūpuna**

Wāhi tūpuna are protected by:

- (3) managing identified *wāhi tūpuna* in accordance with tikaka Māori, and
- ~~(4) avoiding any activities that may be considered inappropriate in *wāhi tūpuna* as identified by Kāi Tahu, and~~
- (5) encouraging the enhancement of access to *wāhi tūpuna* to the extent compatible with the particular *wāhi tūpuna*.

## **Methods**

### **HCV–WT–M3 – Treaty Partnership Collaboration<sup>1858</sup> with Kāi Tahu<sup>1859</sup>**

Local authorities must include Kāi Tahu in all decision making concerning protection of the values of *wāhi tūpuna* sites and areas and collaborate with Kāi Tahu to:

- (1) include Kāi Tahu in all decision-making concerning identification and protection of *wāhi tūpuna* sites and areas and the values that contribute to their significance, and identify and protect places, areas or landscapes of cultural, spiritual or traditional significance to them,<sup>1860</sup>
- ~~(2) identify and protect the values that contribute to their significance, and~~<sup>1861</sup>
- (3) collaborate with Kāi Tahu to<sup>1862</sup> share information relevant to Kāi Tahu interests.

### **HCV–WT–M1 – Identification**

Local authorities must:

- (1) enable Kāi Tahu to identify, in accordance with tikaka,<sup>1863</sup> *wāhi tūpuna* sites, areas and values, using the guide set out in APP7,
- ~~(2) identify *wāhi tūpuna* using the guide set out in APP7,~~<sup>1864</sup>
- (3) recognise that *wāhi tūpuna* span jurisdictional boundaries and work together to ensure the identification process under (1) enables *wāhi tūpuna* sites, areas and values to be treated uniformly across district boundaries, and
- (4) identify, ~~map, describe~~ record using methods determined by *mana whenua* (which may include mapping)<sup>1865</sup> and protect the sites,<sup>1866</sup> areas and values identified under (1) in the relevant *regional plans*<sup>1867</sup> and *district plans* or, if a site is a sensitive cultural site, use alert layers to advise of sensitive cultural sites without disclosure in plans.

---

<sup>1858</sup> 00226.281 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1859</sup> Note that this method is deliberately out of order – it has been proposed to be moved from third position in the methods to first by the reporting officer.

<sup>1860</sup> 00201.042 CODC

<sup>1861</sup> 00226.281 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1862</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.281 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1863</sup> 00223.121 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>1864</sup> 00226.279 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1865</sup> 00223.121 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>1866</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1867</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

## HCV–WT–M2 – Regional plans<sup>1868</sup> and district plans

Local authorities must prepare or amend and maintain their regional plans<sup>1869</sup> and district plans to include methods that are in accordance with tikaka to:

- (1) control activities in, or adjacent to, wāhi tūpuna sites and areas,
- (2) require cultural impact assessments where activities have the potential to adversely affect values of<sup>1870</sup> wāhi tūpuna and Kāi Tahu have identified the need for an assessment to protect particular values,<sup>1871</sup>
- (3) require including<sup>1872</sup> conditions on resource consents or designations to provide buffers or setbacks between protect<sup>1873</sup> wāhi tūpuna values and from<sup>1874</sup> incompatible activities,
- (4) require including<sup>1875</sup> accidental discovery protocols as an advice note<sup>1876</sup> conditions on resource consents or designations for activities that may unearth archaeological sites, in accordance with APP11,<sup>1877</sup> and
- (5) maintain existing access to identified wāhi tūpuna sites and areas and promote improved access where practicable.

## Explanation

### HCV–WT–E1 – Explanation

Providing for wāhi tūpuna plays a role in recognising the resource management principles in sections 6(e), 7(a) and 8 of the RMA. The policies in this chapter recognise the cultural and contemporary significance of wāhi tūpuna to Kāi Tahu and acknowledge that the identification of wāhi tūpuna and the associated values can only be undertaken by Kāi Tahu.

Wāhi tūpuna can be impacted by a range of activities, requiring a range of different management responses.<sup>1878</sup> The policies in this chapter are designed to achieve active protection of wāhi tūpuna from inappropriate subdivision, use and development. The policies recognise the significance of wāhi tūpuna to Kāi Tahu, and enable the relationship of Kāi Tahu with their culture and traditions by acknowledging that the identification of wāhi tūpuna and the associated values can only be undertaken by Kāi Tahu, then protecting or managing those sites or areas to ensure that activities do not have any significant adverse effects on the values of of associated with<sup>1879</sup> the identified wāhi tūpuna. The policies also direct that the management of activities within or affecting adjacent to wāhi tūpuna must occur in accordance with tikaka.<sup>1880</sup> a culturally appropriate manner.

---

<sup>1868</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1869</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1870</sup> 00226.280 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1871</sup> 00223.122 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>1872</sup> 00226.280 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1873</sup> 00239.152 Federated Farmers

<sup>1874</sup> 00239.152 Federated Farmers

<sup>1875</sup> 00239.152 Federated Farmers

<sup>1876</sup> 00123.007 Heritage NZ

<sup>1877</sup> Consequential amendment to APP11: 00123.007, Heritage NZ

<sup>1878</sup> 00223.123 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>1879</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.278 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1880</sup> 00226.282 Kāi Tahu ki Otago; 00223.123 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

## Principal reasons

### HCV–WT–PR1 – Principal reasons

*Wāhi tūpuna* are landscapes that embody the customary and contemporary relationship of Kāi Tahu and their culture and traditions with Otago. The sites and resources used by Kāi Tahu are spread throughout Otago, reflecting the relationship of Kāi Tahu with the *land, coastal waters* and *wai Māori*. *Wāhi tūpuna* have significant cultural value to Kāi Tahu.

The provisions in this chapter play a role in recognising the resource management principles in assist in implementing<sup>1881</sup> sections 6(e), 7(a) and 8<sup>1882</sup> of the RMA 1991<sup>1883</sup> and the NZCPS, as well as providing for the principles of te Tiriti o Waitangi,<sup>1884</sup> by requiring:

- the identification of *wāhi tūpuna* ~~in consultation with~~ by Kāi Tahu in accordance with tikaka Māori,<sup>1885</sup>
- the protection of *wāhi tūpuna* from inappropriate *subdivision*, use and development, and
- specified actions on the part of Otago's *local authorities* in managing activities that may impact *wāhi tūpuna*.

Implementation of the provisions in this chapter will occur primarily through *regional plans*<sup>1886</sup> and *district plan* provisions, however *local authorities* may also choose to adopt additional non-regulatory methods to support the achievement of the objectives.

## Anticipated environmental results

**HCV–WT–AER1** *Wāhi tūpuna* areas and sites ~~The areas and places of *wāhi tūpuna*~~<sup>1887</sup> are identified in the relevant *regional plans*<sup>1888</sup> and *district plans* using tikaka for identification of *wāhi tūpuna* and their values and the manner of recording those being determined by Kāi Tahu.<sup>1889</sup>

**HCV–WT–AER2** *Wāhi tūpuna* and their values are protected<sup>1890</sup> and improved where their values have been degraded by human activities. ~~maintained.~~<sup>1891</sup>

<sup>1881</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – Consequential amendment arising from 00226.282 Kāi Tahu ki Otago; 00223.123 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>1882</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – Consequential amendment arising from 00226.282 Kāi Tahu ki Otago; 00223.123 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>1883</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1884</sup> 00101.052 Toitū Te Whenua

<sup>1885</sup> 00226.283 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1886</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1887</sup> 00239.156 Federated Farmers; 00226.284 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1888</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1889</sup> 00101.053 Toitū Te Whenua

<sup>1890</sup> 00226.285 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1891</sup> 00223.124 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku



## HCV–HH – Historic heritage

### Objective

#### HCV–HH–O3 – *Historic heritage resources*

Otago’s unique *historic heritage* contributes to the region’s character, sense of identity, and social, cultural and economic well-being, and people’s understanding and appreciation of it is enhanced, and that it is protected<sup>1892</sup> is preserved for future generations- against inappropriate subdivision, use and development.<sup>1893</sup>

### Policies

#### HCV–HH–P3 – Recognising *historic heritage*

Recognise that Otago’s *historic heritage* includes:

- (1) Māori cultural and *historic heritage* values and sites, and places and areas,<sup>1894</sup>
- (2) archaeological sites,
- (3) residential and commercial *buildings*,
- (4) pastoral sites,
- (5) surveying equipment, communications and transport, including *roads*, bridges railway infrastructure<sup>1895</sup> and routes,
- (6) industrial *historic heritage*, including mills, quarries, limekilns, grain stores, water supply infrastructure<sup>1896</sup> and brickworks,
- (7) gold, limestone<sup>1897</sup> and other mining systems and settlements,
- (8) dredge and ship wrecks, and coastal structures and buildings, including breakwaters, jetties and lighthouses,<sup>1898</sup>
- (9) ruins,
- (10) coastal *historic heritage*, particularly Kāi Tahu occupation sites and those associated with early European activities such as whaling,
- (11) memorials, ~~and~~
- (12) trees and vegetation<sup>1899</sup> ~~and,~~
- (13) military structures or remains, and<sup>1900</sup>

---

<sup>1892</sup> 00139.231 DCC

<sup>1893</sup> 00139.231 DCC

<sup>1894</sup> 00239.158 Federated Farmers 00226.287 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00140.029 Waitaki DC

<sup>1895</sup> 00140.029 Waitaki DC

<sup>1896</sup> 00140.029 Waitaki DC

<sup>1897</sup> 00140.029 Waitaki DC

<sup>1898</sup> 00140.029 Waitaki DC

<sup>1899</sup> 00239.158 Federated Farmers

<sup>1900</sup> 00140.029 Waitaki DC

(14) Historic places within the meaning under section 6 of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014.<sup>1901</sup>

#### **HCV-HH-P4 – Identifying *historic heritage***

Identify the places and areas of *historic heritage* in Otago in accordance with APP8 and categorise them as:

~~(1) places and areas with special or outstanding *historic heritage* values or qualities, or~~

~~(2) places and areas with *historic heritage* values or qualities.~~<sup>1902</sup>

#### **HCV-HH-P5 – Managing *historic heritage***

Except as provided for in EIT-INF-P13<sup>1903</sup>, protect *historic heritage* from inappropriate subdivision, use and development<sup>1904</sup> by:

(1) requiring the use of accidental discovery protocols in accordance with APP11<sup>1905</sup>,

(2) avoiding adverse *effects* on areas or places which have been identified as having<sup>1906</sup> with special or outstanding *historic heritage* or qualities, except that in circumstances (a) to (f) below, they are remedied or mitigated to the extent practicable:

(a) where HCV-HH-P6 applies<sup>1907</sup>, or

(b) a project has significant public benefit that outweighs the loss of historic heritage<sup>1908</sup>; or

(c) the activity has functional or locational constraints and has a significant public benefit<sup>1909</sup>

(d) the area or place is already impacted by an existing, lawfully established activity<sup>1910</sup>; or

(e) there is significant risk to safety or property<sup>1911</sup>; or

(f) any adverse effects are minor and relate to work necessary to adapt a historic heritage building to modern use.<sup>1912</sup>

(3) ~~avoiding, remedying or mitigating significant adverse *effects* on other areas or places with *historic heritage* values or qualities<sup>1913</sup>,~~

~~(4) avoiding, as the first priority, other adverse *effects* on areas or places with *historic heritage* values or qualities;~~

~~(5) where adverse *effects* demonstrably cannot be completely avoided, remedying or mitigating them, and~~

~~(6) recognising that for *infrastructure*, EIT-INF-P13 applies instead of HCV-HH-P5(1) to (5).~~

<sup>1901</sup> 00137.143 Director General of Conservation

<sup>1902</sup> 00206.060 Trojan

<sup>1903</sup> 00310.013 Aurora Energy –

<sup>1904</sup> 00313.028 Queenstown Airport Corporation

<sup>1905</sup> Consequential amendment to APP11: 00123.007, Heritage NZ

<sup>1906</sup> Consequential amendment due removing the two-tier process

<sup>1907</sup> 00137.145 DOC and DCC as now P6 and P7 are a combined policy.

<sup>1908</sup> 00139.234 DCC

<sup>1909</sup> 00115.029 Oceana Gold

<sup>1910</sup> 00022.024 Graymont

<sup>1911</sup> 00139.234 DCC

<sup>1912</sup> 00310.013 Telecommunication Companies

<sup>1913</sup> 00239.159 Federated Farmers

### **HCV-HH-P6 – Enhancing *historic heritage***

Enhance places and areas of *historic heritage* wherever possible through the implementation of plan provisions, decisions on applications for *resource consent* and notices of requirement and non-regulatory methods.

### **HCV-HH-P7 – Integration of *historic heritage***

Maintain *historic heritage* values through the integration of *historic heritage* values into new activities and the adaptive reuse or upgrade of *historic heritage* places and areas.<sup>1914</sup>

### **HCV-HH-P6A – Maintenance and enhancement of *historic heritage***

Encourage the ongoing use and adaptive re-use of *historic heritage* in a way that, as far as practicable, maintains and enhances the identified heritage values.<sup>1915</sup>

## **Methods**

### **HCV-HH-M4 – *Regional plans***

Otago Regional Council must prepare or amend and maintain its *regional plans* to:

- (1) identify places and areas with *historic heritage* in accordance with HCV-HH-P4 that are located in the *beds of lakes and rivers, wetlands* and the *coastal marine area*,
- (2) control the following where they may adversely affect *historic heritage*:
  - (a) the character, location, scale and form of *structures* in the *beds of lakes and rivers, wetlands* and in the *coastal marine area*,
  - (b) indigenous vegetation removal in the *beds of lakes and rivers, wetlands* and the *coastal marine area*,
  - (c) *earthworks*, deposition and disturbance to and in the *beds of lakes and rivers* and in the *coastal marine area*,
  - (d) *discharges* to air,
  - (e) taking, use, damming and diversion of, and *discharges* to, *water*, and
  - (f) the disturbance, demolition or alteration of physical elements or *structures of historic heritage* in the *beds of lakes and rivers* and in the *coastal marine area*,
- (2A) enable Kāi Tahu to identify places and areas with historic heritage values for mana whenua in accordance with HCV-HH-P4 that are located on the beds of lakes and rivers, and in wetlands and the coastal marine areas,<sup>1916</sup>

---

<sup>1914</sup> 00226.291 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1915</sup> 00016.021 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 00017.019 Danny Walker and others; 00311.056 and 057 Manawa Energy; 00305.076 Waka Kotahi; 00016.021 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 00017.019 Danny Walker and other, 00139.235 and 236 DCC

<sup>1916</sup> 00226.292 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

- (3) include implementation methods to protect *historic heritage* that are in accordance with HCV–HH–P5 and may also include:
  - (a) assessment criteria, development standards or thresholds to control the scale, intensity, form and location of activities (including for the purposes of controlling cumulative adverse effects), and
  - (b) conditions on *resource consents* to provide buffers or setbacks between *historic heritage* places or areas and other incompatible activity, and
- (4) require the use of accidental discovery protocols as conditions on *resource consents* for *earthworks* or other activities that may encounter archaeological features.

### **HCV–HH–M5 – District Plans**

*Territorial authorities* must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* to the extent necessary to:

- (1) identify places and areas with *historic heritage* in accordance with HCV–HH–P4 that are located outside the *beds of lakes and rivers, wetlands* and the *coastal marine area*,
- (2) control the following where they may adversely affect *historic heritage*:
  - (a) the location, intensity and form of *subdivision*,
  - (b) the character, location, scale and form of activities (including *structures*) outside the *beds of lakes and rivers* and the *coastal marine area*,
  - (c) the location and scale of *earthworks* and indigenous vegetation removal outside the *beds of lakes and rivers* and the *coastal marine area*,
  - (d) the disturbance, demolition or alteration of physical elements or *structures* with special or outstanding *historic heritage* value or qualities outside the *coastal marine area, beds of lakes and rivers*,
- (2A) enable Kāi Tahu to identify places and areas with historic heritage values for mana whenua in accordance with HCV–HH–P4 that are located on the beds of lakes and rivers, and in wetlands and the coastal marine areas,<sup>1917</sup>
- (3) include implementation methods to protect *historic heritage* places and areas required by HCV–HH–P5, and may also include:
  - (a) assessment criteria, development standards or thresholds to control the scale, intensity, form and location of activities (including for the purposes of controlling cumulative adverse effects),
  - (b) conditions on *resource consents* and designations to provide buffers or setbacks between *historic heritage* places or areas and other incompatible activity,
  - (c) accidental discovery protocols as conditions on *resource consents* for *earthworks* or other activities that may unearth archaeological features,
  - (d) providing for activities seeking to retain *historic heritage* places, areas or landscapes, including adaptive reuse, maintenance and seismic strengthening,
  - (e) including heritage alert layers in plans to inform the public about areas where there is a high probability of the presence of heritage values, particularly archaeological values, and
- (4) require the use of accidental discovery protocols as conditions on *resource consents* and

---

<sup>1917</sup> 00226.292 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

designations for *earthworks* or other activities that may unearth archaeological features.

## HCV–HH–M6 – Incentives and education

*Local authorities* are encouraged to use other mechanisms or incentives to assist in achieving Policies<sup>1918</sup> HCV–HH–P3 to HCV–HH–P7, including:

- (1) promoting public awareness of *historic heritage* values through providing information and education, and
- (2) rates differentials and *resource consent* fee waivers for activities that involve the retention of historic places or areas.
- (3) enabling Kāi Tahu to interpret places and areas with *historic heritage* values for *mana whenua*.<sup>1919</sup>

## Explanation

### HCV–HH–E2 – Explanation

The policies in this section are designed to ensure that Otago’s unique *historic heritage* continues to contribute to the region’s character, sense of identity, and social and economic well-being by requiring places and areas of significant *historic heritage* to be identified using regionally consistent methodology, then protecting or managing those sites or areas ~~in particular ways~~ to ensure that ~~other~~<sup>1920</sup> activities do not detract from the region’s special character and sense of identity. This also includes ~~enhancing places and areas of *historic heritage* by~~ encouraging the ongoing use and adaptive re-use of historic heritage integration of *historic heritage* values into new activities and enabling the adaptive reuse or upgrade of *historic heritage* places in certain circumstances.

## Principal reasons

### HCV–HH–PR2 – Principal reasons

Otago is a region rich in *historic heritage*, with a diversity of significant cultural and *historic heritage* places and areas that contribute to its special character and identity. *Historic heritage* encompasses historic sites, *structures*, places, and areas; archaeological sites; sites of significance to Māori (including wāhi tapu and wāhi taoka sites)<sup>1921</sup> and the broader surroundings and landscape in which they are situated. The heritage resources in Otago are reflective of the history that helped to shape the region, and is representative of the different cultures, industries and institutions that contributed to its development. Historic landscapes in the coastal *environment* are specifically recognised in Policy 17 of the NZCPS.

The provisions in this chapter assist in implementing section 6(f) of the RMA ~~1991~~<sup>1922</sup> and the NZCPS by requiring:

- the identification of places and areas with *historic heritage* values and qualities ~~and places and areas with special or outstanding *historic heritage* values and qualities~~ using clear criteria and methodology that is regionally consistent and providing for the assessing of special or outstanding values and qualities with a regionally consistent criteria and methodology where this is required.

<sup>1918</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1919</sup> 00226.294 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1920</sup> 00226.295 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1921</sup> 00226.296 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1922</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

- the protection of *historic heritage* from inappropriate *subdivision*, use and development,
- the *maintenance and* enhancement of *historic heritage* through *encouraging its ongoing use and adaptive re-use* ~~the integration~~<sup>1923</sup> of *historic heritage* values into new activities and enabling the adaptive reuse or upgrade of *historic heritage* places and areas in certain circumstances, and
- specified actions on the part of Otago’s *local authorities* in managing *historic heritage*.

Implementation of the provisions in this chapter will occur primarily through *regional plan*<sup>1924</sup> and *district plan* provisions, however *local authorities* may also choose to adopt additional non-regulatory methods to support the achievement of the objectives.

## Anticipated environmental results

- |                    |                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>HCV-HH-AER3</b> | Heritage resources that make a significant contribution towards Otago’s <i>historic heritage</i> are identified and protected.                                                      |
| <b>HCV-HH-AER4</b> | The number, type, extent and distribution of <i>historic heritage</i> sites and places with special or outstanding values or qualities are maintained.                              |
| <b>HCV-HH-AER5</b> | Otago’s existing built <i>historic heritage</i> is maintained <u>and</u> enhanced <del>and</del> <del>integrated</del> through efficient use, or adaptive reuse, where appropriate. |

---

<sup>1923</sup> Consequential amendments from 00016.021 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 00017.019 Danny Walker and others; 00311.056 and 057 Manawa Energy; 00305.076 Waka Kotahi; 00016.021 Alluvium and Stoney Creek, 00017.019 Danny Walker and other, 00139.235 and 236 DCC

<sup>1924</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

# NFL – Natural features and landscapes

**Advice note:** Pursuant to CE-P1 the provisions within this chapter do not apply in the coastal environment.<sup>1925</sup>

## Objectives

### NFL-O1 – Outstanding ~~and highly valued~~<sup>1926</sup> natural features and landscapes

The areas and values of Otago's outstanding ~~and highly valued~~<sup>1927</sup> natural features and landscapes are identified, and the use and development of Otago's natural and physical resources results in:

- (1) the protection of ~~them~~ outstanding natural features and landscapes from inappropriate subdivision, use and development.<sup>1928</sup>, and
- (2) the maintenance or enhancement of ~~highly valued natural features and landscapes.~~<sup>1929</sup>

## Policies

### NFL-P1 – Identification

~~In order to manage~~ Identify the areas and values of<sup>1930</sup> outstanding ~~and highly valued~~<sup>1931</sup> natural features and landscapes, ~~identify:~~

- (1) ~~the areas and values of outstanding and highly valued~~<sup>1932</sup> natural features and landscapes in accordance with Te Tangi a te Manu: Aotearoa New Zealand Landscape Assessment Guidelines', Tuia Pito Ora New Zealand Institute of Landscape Architects, July 2022.<sup>1933</sup> APP9, and
- (2) ~~the capacity of those natural features and landscapes to accommodate use or development while protecting the values that contribute to the natural feature and landscape being considered outstanding or highly valued.~~

---

<sup>1925</sup> 00301.054 Port Otago.

<sup>1926</sup> 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

<sup>1927</sup> 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

<sup>1928</sup> 00411.076 Wayfare, 00206.062 Trojan, and 00311.059 Trustpower.

<sup>1929</sup> 00306.003, 00306.068, 00306.069, 00306.070; 00306.071, 00306.072, 00306.073, 00306.085 Meridian; 00020.024 Rayonier Matariki Forests; 00320.028 Network Waitak; 00318.035 Contact; 00511.028 PowerNet ; 00115.03 Oceana Gold; 00211039 LAC; 00210.039 Lane Hocking; 00118.063 Maryhill Limited; 00014.063, 00014.065 Mt Cardrona Station; 00209.039 Universal Developments; 00126.041 Harbour Fish

<sup>1930</sup> 00014.065 Mt Cardrona Station

<sup>1931</sup> 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

<sup>1932</sup> 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

<sup>1933</sup> 00310.015 Telecommunications Companies, 00311.066 Trustpower; 00137.161 DOC.

## NFL-P2 – Protection of outstanding natural features and landscapes

Protect outstanding natural features and landscapes from inappropriate subdivision, use and development<sup>1934</sup> by:

- (1A) avoiding exceeding the landscape capacity of the natural feature or landscape,<sup>1935</sup>
- (1) maintaining ~~avoiding adverse effects on~~<sup>1936</sup> the values that contribute to the natural feature or landscape being considered outstanding, even if those values are not themselves outstanding, and
- (2) avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse ~~effects~~; and
- (3) managing the adverse effects of infrastructure on the values of outstanding natural features and landscapes in accordance with EIT-INF-P13.<sup>1937</sup>

## NFL-P3 – Maintenance of highly valued natural features and landscapes

Maintain or enhance *highly valued natural features and landscapes* by:

- (1) ~~avoiding significant adverse effects on the values of the natural feature or landscape, and~~
- (2) ~~avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects~~.<sup>1938</sup>

## NFL-P4 – Restoration

Promote restoration of the areas and values of outstanding and *highly valued natural features and landscapes* where those areas or values have been reduced or lost.<sup>1939</sup>

## NFL-P5 – Wilding conifers

Reduce the impact of ~~wilding conifers on outstanding and highly valued~~<sup>1940</sup> *natural features and landscapes* by:

- (1) ~~avoiding afforestation and replanting of plantation forests with wilding conifer species listed in APP5 within:~~
  - (a) ~~areas identified as outstanding natural features or landscapes, and~~
  - (b) ~~buffer zones adjacent to outstanding natural features and landscapes where it is necessary to protect the outstanding natural feature or landscape, and~~
- (2) ~~supporting initiatives to control existing wilding conifers and limit their further spread.~~

---

<sup>1934</sup> 00301.054 Port Otago.

<sup>1935</sup> 00014.063 Mt Cardrona Station.

<sup>1936</sup> 00014.063 Mt Cardrona Station.

<sup>1937</sup> 00139.243 DCC

<sup>1938</sup> 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

<sup>1939</sup> 00121.096 Ravensdown

<sup>1940</sup> 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.



## NFL-P6 – Coastal features and landscapes

Natural features and landscapes located within the coastal environment are managed by CE-P6 and implementation of CE-P6 also contributes to achieving NFL-O1.<sup>1941</sup>

## Methods

### NFL-M1 – Identification

*Territorial authorities must:*

- (1) include in their *district plans* a map or maps and a statement of the values of the areas of outstanding and ~~highly valued~~<sup>1942</sup> *natural features and landscapes* in accordance with NFL-P1,
- (2) in areas likely to face development or growth pressure,<sup>1943</sup> include in their *district plans* a statement of the capacity of outstanding and ~~highly valued~~<sup>1944</sup> *natural features and landscapes* to accommodate use or development while protecting the values that contribute to the natural feature and landscape being considered outstanding, ~~change in use and development without their values being materially compromised or lost,~~ in accordance with NFL-P1,<sup>1945</sup>
- (2A) collaborate with Kāi Tahu to identify the areas, values, and capacity of natural features and landscapes of significance for Kāi Tahu in accordance with tikaka, and record and apply appropriate management responses as determined by *mana whenua*,<sup>1946</sup>
- (3) recognise that natural features and landscapes may span jurisdictional boundaries and work together, including with the Regional Council and adjoining Regional Councils<sup>1947</sup>, to identify areas under (1) to ensure that the identification of outstanding natural features and landscapes are treated uniformly across district boundaries and, where appropriate, regional boundaries<sup>1948</sup>, and
- (4) prioritise identification under (1) in areas that are likely to contain outstanding natural features or landscapes and are likely to face development or growth pressure over the life of this RPS.

### NFL-M2 – Regional plans

Otago Regional Council must prepare or amend and maintain its *regional plans* to:

- (1) control the use and development of *water bodies*, the *beds of rivers and lakes*, and *wetlands* in order to protect outstanding natural features and landscapes in accordance with NFL-P2, ~~and maintain and enhance highly valued natural features or landscapes~~ in accordance with NFL-P3,

---

<sup>1941</sup> 00301.054 Port Otago

<sup>1942</sup> 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

<sup>1943</sup> 00014.065 Mt Cardrona Station.

<sup>1944</sup> 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

<sup>1945</sup> 00014.065 Mt Cardrona Station.

<sup>1946</sup> 00223.128 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku, 00234.036, 00234.037 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu.

<sup>1947</sup> 00013.016 CRC.

<sup>1948</sup> 00013.016 CRC.

and

- ~~(2) provide for and encourage activities undertaken for the primary purpose of restoring *highly valued natural features or landscapes* in accordance with NFL-P4.~~<sup>1949</sup>

### **NFL-M3 – District plans**

*Territorial authorities* must prepare or amend and maintain their *district plans* to:

- (1) control the *subdivision*, use and development of *land* and the use of the surface of *water bodies* in order to protect outstanding natural features or landscapes in accordance with NFL-P2, ~~and maintain and enhance *highly valued natural features or landscapes* in accordance with NFL-P3,~~<sup>1950</sup>
- (2) ~~provide for and encourage activities undertaken for the primary purpose of restoring *highly valued natural features or landscapes* in accordance with NFL-P4, and~~<sup>1951</sup>
- (3) manage *wilding conifer* spread in accordance with LF-LS-P16A. ~~NFLP5.~~<sup>1952</sup>

### **NFL-M4 – Other incentives and mechanisms**

*Local authorities* are encouraged to consider the use of other mechanisms or incentives to assist in achieving the outcomes sought by the policies in this chapter, including:

- (1) funding assistance for restoration projects (for example, through the Regional Council's ECO Fund),
- (2) purchase of *land* that forms part of a natural feature or landscape,
- (3) development or design guidelines (for example, colour palettes for *structures* in or on natural features or landscapes),
- (4) rates relief for *land* that is protected due to its status as an outstanding natural feature or landscape,
- (5) education and advice,
- (6) waiver or reduction of processing fees for activities where the primary purpose is to enhance the values of ~~*highly valued*~~<sup>1953</sup> *natural features or landscapes*, and
- (7) advocating for a collaborative approach between central and local government to fund and carry out *wilding conifer* control.

---

<sup>1949</sup> 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

<sup>1950</sup> 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

<sup>1951</sup> 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

<sup>1952</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

<sup>1953</sup> 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

## Explanation

### NFL-E1 – Explanation

The policies in this chapter are designed to require outstanding ~~and highly valued~~<sup>1954</sup> *natural features and landscapes* to be identified using regionally consistent attributes, then managing activities to either protect outstanding natural features and landscapes in accordance with section 6(b) of the RMA, 1991 or maintain ~~highly valued natural features or landscapes~~ in accordance with section 7 of the RMA 1991. This distinction recognises that these areas have values with differing degrees of significance and that, generally, those classified as ‘highly valued’ will have greater capacity to accommodate ~~land use change and development without values being adversely affected.~~<sup>1955</sup> The policies seek to control the impact of *wilding conifers* which are a particular threat to Otago’s natural features and landscapes, in a way that recognises the regulations in the NESPF<sup>1956</sup>.

## Principal reasons

### NFL-PR1 – Principal reasons

Natural features include resources that are the result of natural processes, particularly those reflecting a particular geology, topography, geomorphology, hydrology, ecology, or other physical attribute that creates a natural feature or combination of natural features. Landscapes include the natural and physical attributes of *land* together with air and *water*, which change over time and which is made known by people’s evolving perceptions and associations. Natural features and landscapes also have significant cultural value to Kāi Tahu. There are many sites of significance across Otago, reflecting the relationship of Kāi Tahu with the *land, water* and sea.

The provisions in this chapter assist in protecting Otago’s outstanding ~~and highly valued~~<sup>1957</sup> *natural features and landscapes* by requiring:

- the identification of outstanding ~~and highly valued~~<sup>1958</sup> *natural features and landscapes* using regionally consistent criteria,
- the protection of outstanding *natural features and landscapes* ~~and maintenance of highly valued natural features and landscapes~~<sup>1959</sup>,

---

<sup>1954</sup> 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

<sup>1955</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i).

<sup>1956</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

<sup>1957</sup> 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

<sup>1958</sup> 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

<sup>1959</sup> 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

- ~~an ongoing reduction in the impact of *wilding conifers* on natural features and landscapes, and~~<sup>1960</sup>
- specified actions on the part of Otago’s *local authorities* in managing natural features and landscapes.

Implementation of the provisions in this chapter will occur primarily through *regional* and *district plan* provisions, however *local authorities* may also choose to adopt additional non-regulatory methods to support the achievement of the objectives.

## Anticipated environmental results

<b>NFL–AER1</b>	The number, type, extent and distribution of identified outstanding <del>and highly valued</del> <sup>1961</sup> <i>natural features and landscapes</i> are maintained over the life of this RPS.
<b>NFL–AER2</b>	The values of outstanding and <i>highly valued natural features and landscapes</i> are not reduced or lost.
<del><b>NFL–AER3</b></del>	<del>Within areas identified as outstanding or highly valued<sup>1962</sup> <i>natural features or landscapes</i>, the area of <i>land vegetated by wilding conifers</i> is reduced over the life of this RPS.</del> <sup>1963</sup>

<sup>1960</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

<sup>1961</sup> 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

<sup>1962</sup> 00211.039 LAC Properties Trustees Limited, 00210.039 Lane Hocking, 00118.063 Maryhill Limited, 00306.073 and 00306.068 Meridian Energy Limited, 00114.063 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.039 Universal Developments Hawea Limited.

<sup>1963</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00411.006 Wayfare, 00137.084 DOC (insertion of new LF-LS-P16A)

# UFD – Urban form and development

**Note to readers:** As a result of reporting officer recommendations, the following provisions have been moved to the LF-LS chapter:

- UFD-O4 – Development in rural areas
- UFD-P7 – Rural areas
- UFD-P8 – Rural lifestyle and rural residential zones
- UFD-M2(8) and (9)
- UFD-E1 – Explanation (third paragraph)
- UFD-PR1 – Principal reasons (sixth paragraph)

The notified numbering of UFD-O4 and UFD-P7 has been retained in the LF-LS chapter as an interim measure so that it is easier to link submission points to provisions. The numbering of both chapters will be updated and made chronological following a final decision by Council.

## Objectives

### UFD-O1 – ~~Form and function~~ Development<sup>1964</sup> of urban areas

The development and change form and functioning of Otago’s urban areas occurs in a strategic and coordinated way, which<sup>1965</sup>:

- (1) ~~reflects~~ accommodates<sup>1966</sup> the diverse and changing needs and preferences of Otago’s people and communities, now and in the future, ~~and~~<sup>1967</sup>
- (2) integrates effectively with surrounding urban areas and rural areas,<sup>1968</sup> ~~maintains or enhances the significant values and features identified in this RPS, and the character and resources of each urban area.~~
- (2A) results in a consolidated, well-connected and well-designed urban form which is integrated with infrastructure, and<sup>1969</sup>
- (2B) supports climate change adaptation and climate change mitigation.<sup>1970</sup>

### UFD-O2 – ~~Development of urban areas~~

The ~~development and change of Otago’s urban areas:~~

- ~~(1) improves housing choice, quality, and affordability,~~
- ~~(2) allows business and other non-residential activities to meet the needs of communities in appropriate locations,~~
- ~~(3) respects and wherever possible enhances the area’s history, setting, and natural and built environment,~~

<sup>1964</sup> 00211.045 LAC, 00210.045 Lane Hocking, 00209.045 Universal Developments, 00139.001, 00139.250 & 00139.251 DCC

<sup>1965</sup> 00211.045 LAC, 00210.045 Lane Hocking, 00209.045 Universal Developments, 00139.250 & 00139.251 DCC

<sup>1966</sup> 00139.250 DCC

<sup>1967</sup> 00321.084 New Zealand Infrastructure Commission, 00139.250 & 00139.251 DCC

<sup>1968</sup> 00139.001, 00139.250 & 00139.251 DCC

<sup>1969</sup> 00211.045 LAC, 00210.045 Lane Hocking, 00209.045 Universal Developments, 00139.250 & 00139.251 DCC

<sup>1970</sup> 00139.250 DCC, 00136.010 Minister for the Environment

- ~~(4) — delivers good urban design outcomes, and improves liveability,~~
- ~~(5) — improves connectivity within urban areas, particularly by *active transport* and *public transport*,~~
- ~~(6) — minimises conflict between incompatible activities,~~
- ~~(7) — manages the exposure of *risk* from *natural hazards* in accordance with the HAZ-NH — Natural hazards section of this RPS,~~
- ~~(8) — results in sustainable and efficient use of *water, energy, land, and infrastructure*,~~
- ~~(9) — achieves integration of *land use* with existing and planned *development infrastructure* and *additional infrastructure* and facilitates the safe and efficient ongoing use of *regionally significant infrastructure*,~~
- ~~(10) — achieves consolidated, well designed and located, and sustainable development in and around existing *urban areas* as the primary focus for accommodating the region’s urban growth and change, and~~
- ~~(11) — is guided by the input and involvement of *mana whenua*.<sup>1971</sup>~~

### **UFD-03 — Strategic planning**

Strategic planning is undertaken in advance of significant development, expansion or redevelopment of *urban areas* to ensure that

- ~~(1) — there is sufficient *development capacity* supported by integrated *infrastructure* provision for Otago’s housing and business needs in the short, medium and long term,~~
- ~~(2) — development is located, designed and delivered in a way and at a rate that recognises and provides for locationally relevant regionally significant features and values identified by this RPS, and~~
- ~~(3) the involvement of *mana whenua* is facilitated, and their values and aspirations are provided for.<sup>1972</sup>~~

### **UFD-04 — Development in rural areas**

Development in Otago’s *rural areas* occurs in a way that:

- ~~(1) avoids impacts on significant values and features identified in this RPS,~~
- ~~(2) avoids as the first priority, land and soils identified as highly productive by LF-LS-P19 unless there is an *operational need* for the development to be located in *rural areas*,~~
- ~~(3) only provides for urban expansion, rural lifestyle and rural residential development and the establishment of *sensitive activities*, in locations identified through strategic planning or zoned within *district plans* as suitable for such development; and~~
- ~~(4) outside of areas identified in (3), maintains and enhances the *natural and physical resources* that support the productive capacity, rural character, and long term visibility of the rural sector and rural communities.<sup>1973</sup>~~

---

<sup>1971</sup> 00139.001, 00139.251 DCC

<sup>1972</sup> 00139.252 DCC

<sup>1973</sup> Moved to LF-LS chapter (00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00239.197 Federated Farmers, 00237.045 and 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ)

## ~~UFD-O5 – Urban development and *climate change*~~

The impacts of *climate change* are responded to in the development and change of Otago's *urban areas* so that:

- ~~(1) the contributions of current communities and future generations to *climate change* impacts are reduced,~~
- ~~(2) community resilience increases,~~
- ~~(3) adaptation to the effects of *climate change* is facilitated,~~
- ~~(4) energy use is minimised, and energy efficiency improves, and~~
- ~~(5) establishment and use of *small and community scale distributed electricity generation* is enabled.<sup>1974</sup>~~

## Policies

### UFD-P1 – Strategic planning

Strategic planning processes, undertaken at an appropriate scale and detail, precede urban growth and development and:

- (1) identify how housing choice, quality, and affordability will be improved,<sup>1975</sup>
- (1A) ensure integration of *land use* and *infrastructure*, including how, where and when necessary *development infrastructure* and *additional infrastructure* will be provided, and by whom,
- (2) demonstrate at least sufficient *development capacity* supported by integrated *infrastructure* provision for Otago's housing and business needs in the short, medium and long term,
- (3) maximise current and future opportunities for increasing *resilience* and reducing contributions of communities to *climate change*,<sup>1976</sup> and facilitating<sup>1977</sup> adaptation to changing demand, needs, preferences and *climate change*,
- (4) ~~minimise *risks* from and improve resilience to *natural hazards*, including those exacerbated by *climate change*, while not increasing *risk* for other development,~~<sup>1978</sup>
- (5) indicate how connectivity will be improved and connections will be provided within *urban areas*,
- (6) provide opportunities for iwi, hapū and whānau involvement in planning processes, including in decision making, to ensure provision is made for their needs and aspirations, and cultural practices and values,
- (7) facilitate involvement of the current community and respond to the reasonably foreseeable needs of future communities, and
- ~~(8) identify, maintain and where possible, enhance important features and values identified by this RPS.~~

---

<sup>1974</sup> 00139.254 DCC

<sup>1975</sup> Shifted from UFD-O2. Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00139.001, 00139.250, 00139.251 DCC

<sup>1976</sup> 00226.312 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1977</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>1978</sup> 00139.001 DCC

(8A) identify areas of potential conflict between incompatible activities and sets out the methods by which these are to be resolved.<sup>1980</sup>

### **UFD-P2 – Sufficiency of development capacity**

Ensure that at least sufficient<sup>1981</sup> ~~urban area~~ housing and business *development capacity* is provided in urban areas, including any required competitiveness margin, is provided in the short, medium and long term, including by:<sup>1982</sup>

- ~~(1) — undertaking strategic planning in accordance with UFD-P1~~
- ~~(2) — identifying areas for urban intensification in accordance with UFD-P3,~~
- ~~(3) — identifying areas for urban expansion in accordance with UFD-P4,~~
- ~~(4) — providing for commercial and industrial activities in accordance with UFD-P5 and UFD-P6~~<sup>1983</sup>
- (5) responding to any demonstrated insufficiency in housing or business *development capacity* by increasing *development capacity* or providing more *development infrastructure* as required, as soon as practicable,
- (5A) being responsive to plan changes that demonstrate compliance with UFD-P10,<sup>1984</sup> and
- (6) requiring Tier 2 *urban environments* to meet, at least, the relevant housing bottom lines in APP10.

### **UFD-P3 – Urban intensification**

Manage ~~Within urban areas~~ intensification in urban areas, so that as a minimum, is enabled where it:<sup>1985</sup>

- (1) contributes to establishing or maintaining the qualities of a *well-functioning urban environment*,
- (2) is well-served by existing or planned *development infrastructure* and *additional infrastructure*,
- (3) enables heights and densities that<sup>1986</sup> meets the greater of demonstrated demand for housing and/or business use or the level of accessibility provided for by existing or planned *active transport* or *public transport*,
- ~~(4) — addresses an identified shortfall for housing or business space, in accordance with UFD-P2,~~<sup>1987</sup>
- (5) addresses issues of concern to iwi and hapū, including those identified in any relevant iwi planning documents, and
- ~~(6) — manages adverse effects on values or resources identified by this RPS that require specific management or protection.~~<sup>1988</sup>

<sup>1979</sup> 00226.312 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>1980</sup> 00306.077 Meridian, 00322.039 Fulton Hogan, 00313.031 Queenstown Airport, 00235.150 OWRUG, 00236.100 Horticulture NZ, 00239.176 Federated Farmers, 00204.005 Daisy Link

<sup>1981</sup> 00211.047 LAC, 00210.046 Lane Hocking, 00118.066 Maryhill Ltd, 00014.066 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.046 Universal Developments, 00139.001 DCC

<sup>1982</sup> 00139.001 DCC

<sup>1983</sup> 00139.256 DCC

<sup>1984</sup> 00204.005 Daisy Link

<sup>1985</sup> 00139.257 Dunedin City Council

<sup>1986</sup> 00139.001 DCC

<sup>1987</sup> 00139.257 DCC

<sup>1988</sup> 00266.314 Kāi Tahu ki Otago, 00138.213 QLDC



## UFD-P4 – Urban expansion

Expansion of existing *urban areas* may occur<sup>1989</sup> ~~is facilitated~~ where at a minimum<sup>1990</sup> the expansion:

(1) contributes to establishing or maintaining the qualities of a *well-functioning urban environment*,

(1A) is identified by and undertaken consistent with strategic plans prepared in accordance with UFD-P1, or is required to address a shortfall identified in accordance with UFD-P2,<sup>1991</sup>

(1B) achieves consolidated, well designed and sustainable development in and around existing *urban areas*,<sup>1992</sup>

(2) is logically and appropriately staged, and<sup>1993</sup> will not result in inefficient or sporadic patterns of settlement and residential growth,

(3) is integrated efficiently and effectively with *development infrastructure* and *additional infrastructure* in a strategic, timely and co-ordinated way,

(4) addresses issues of concern to iwi and hapū, including those identified in any relevant iwi planning documents,

(5) manages adverse *effects* on other values or resources identified by this RPS that require specific management or protection,

~~(6) avoids, as the first priority, highly productive land except as provided for in the NPS-HPL,~~<sup>1994</sup> and ~~identified in accordance with LF-LS-P19,~~

~~(7) locates the new urban/rural zone boundary interface by considering:-~~

~~(a) —considers adverse *effects*, particularly *reverse sensitivity effects*, on *rural areas* and existing and anticipated<sup>1995</sup> or potential productive *primary production*<sup>1996</sup> or *rural industry*<sup>1997</sup> activities when determining the location of the new urban/rural beyond the new boundary, and~~<sup>1998</sup>

~~(b) —key natural or built barriers or physical features, significant values or features identified in this RPS, or cadastral boundaries that will result in a permanent, logical and defensible long-term limit beyond which further urban expansion is demonstrably inappropriate and unlikely, such that provision for future development infrastructure expansion and connectivity beyond the new boundary does not need to be provided for, or~~

~~(c) —reflects a short or medium term, intermediate or temporary zoning or infrastructure servicing boundary where provision for future *development infrastructure* expansion and connectivity should not be foreclosed, even if further expansion is not currently anticipated.~~<sup>1999</sup>

<sup>1989</sup> 00139.258 Dunedin City Council

<sup>1990</sup> 00136.011 MfE, 00139.258 DCC.

<sup>1991</sup> 00136.011 Minister for the Environment, 00413.006 NZ Cherry Corp, 00204.008 Daisy Link

<sup>1992</sup> Shifted from UFD-O2(10). Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00139.001 DCC

<sup>1993</sup> 00139.258 DCC

<sup>1994</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00014.031 Mt Cardrona Station, 00209.01 Universal Developments, 00210.012 Lane Hocking, 00211.01 LAC Properties

<sup>1995</sup> 00213.042 Fonterra

<sup>1996</sup> 00208.010 AgResearch, 00233.040 Fonterra, 00322.040 Fulton Hogan

<sup>1997</sup> 00410.008 Rural Contractors NZ

<sup>1998</sup> 00213.042 Fonterra

<sup>1999</sup> 00139.258 DCC

## UFD-P5 – Commercial activities

Provide for *commercial activities* in *urban areas* by:

- (1) enabling a wide variety and scale of *commercial activities*, ~~social activities~~, recreational<sup>2000</sup> and cultural activities to concentrate in central business districts city, metropolitan,<sup>2001</sup> town centres and commercial zoned<sup>2002</sup> areas, where appropriate,<sup>2003</sup> especially if they are highly accessible by *public transport* ~~and or~~<sup>2004</sup> *active transport*,
- (2) enabling smaller local and neighbourhood centres, mixed use zones<sup>2005</sup> and rural settlements to accommodate a variety of *commercial activities*, ~~social~~, recreational activities<sup>2006</sup> and cultural activities of a scale appropriate to service local community needs, and
- ~~(3) providing for the expansion of existing areas or establishment of new areas identified in (1) and (2) by first applying UFD-P1 and UFD-P2, and~~<sup>2007</sup>
- (4) outside the areas described in (1) and (2), ~~allow~~ provide<sup>2008</sup> for small scale retail and service activities, home occupations and *community services* to establish within or close to the communities they serve.

## UFD-P6 – Industrial activities

Provide for *industrial activities* in *urban areas* by:

- (1) identifying specific locations and applying zoning suitable for accommodating *industrial activities* and their reasonable needs and *effects* including supporting or *ancillary activities*,
- (2) identifying a range of *land* sizes and locations suitable for different *industrial activities*, and their *operational needs* including land-extensive activities,
- ~~(3) managing the establishment of non-industrial activities, in industrial zones, by to avoid activities likely to result in the likelihood of~~<sup>2009</sup> *reverse sensitivity effects* on existing or potential<sup>2010</sup> *industrial activities* arising, unless the potential for reverse sensitivity is insignificant.<sup>2011</sup> ~~or likely to result in an inefficient use of industrial zoned land or infrastructure, particularly where:~~
  - ~~(a) the area provides for a significant operational need for a particular industrial activity or grouping of industrial activities that are unlikely or are less efficiently able to be met in alternative locations, or~~<sup>2012</sup>
  - ~~(b) the area contains nationally or regionally significant infrastructure and the requirements of EIT-INF-P15 apply, and~~<sup>2013</sup>

<sup>2000</sup> 00206.071 Trojan, 00411.086 Wayfare

<sup>2001</sup> 00139.260 DCC

<sup>2002</sup> 00139.260 DCC

<sup>2003</sup> 00139.260 DCC

<sup>2004</sup> 00401.013 Tussock Rise

<sup>2005</sup> 00206.071 Trojan, 00411.086 Wayfare

<sup>2006</sup> 00206.071 Trojan, 00411.086 Wayfare

<sup>2007</sup> 00139.260 DCC

<sup>2008</sup> 00139.260 DCC

<sup>2009</sup> 00139.260 DCC

<sup>2010</sup> 00233.043 Fonterra

<sup>2011</sup> 00139.260 DCC

<sup>2012</sup> 00139.260 DCC

<sup>2013</sup> 00139.261 DCC

~~(4) in areas that are experiencing or expected to experience high demand from other urban activities, and the criteria in (3)(a) or (3)(b) do not apply, managing the establishment of non-industrial activities and the transition of industrial zoned areas to other purposes, by first applying (1) and (2).~~<sup>2014</sup>

### **UFD-P7 – Rural areas**

The management of *rural areas*:

~~(1) provides for the maintenance and, wherever possible, enhancement of important features and values identified by this RPS,~~

~~(2) outside areas identified in (1), maintains the productive capacity, amenity and character of *rural areas*,~~

~~(3) enables *primary production* particularly on land or soils identified as highly productive in accordance with LF-LS-P19,~~

~~(4) facilitates *rural industry* and supporting activities,~~

~~(5) directs rural residential and rural lifestyle development to areas zoned for that purpose in accordance with UFD-P8,~~

~~(6) restricts the establishment of residential activities, *sensitive activities*, and non-rural businesses which could adversely affect, including by way of reverse sensitivity, the productive capacity of *highly productive land*, *primary production* and *rural industry* activities, and~~

~~(7) otherwise limit the establishment of activities, *sensitive activities*, and non-rural businesses to those that can demonstrate an *operational need* to be located in *rural areas*.~~<sup>2015</sup>

### **UFD-P9 – Iwi, hapū and whānau**

~~Facilitate the development of Native Reserves and *Te Ture Whenua Maori land*, for *papakāika*, *kāika*, *nohoaka*, and *marae*, where existing or planned *development infrastructure* of sufficient capacity is or can be provided (including allowance for self-servicing systems).~~<sup>2016</sup>

### **UFD-P10 – Criteria for significant development capacity**

~~‘*Significant development capacity*’<sup>2017</sup> is provided for where a proposed plan change affecting an *urban environment* meets all of the following criteria:~~

~~(1) the location, design and layout of the proposal will positively contribute to achieving a *well-functioning urban environment*,~~

~~(2) the proposal is well-connected to the existing or planned urban area, particularly if it is located along existing or planned transport corridors,~~<sup>2018</sup>

~~(3) required *development infrastructure* can be provided effectively and efficiently for the proposal, and without material impact on planned *development infrastructure* provision to, or reduction in *development infrastructure* capacity available for, other feasible, likely to be realised developments, in the short-medium term,~~

~~(4) the proposal makes a significant contribution to meeting a need identified in a *Housing and Business Development Capacity Assessment*, or a shortage identified in monitoring for:~~

---

<sup>2014</sup> 00139.001 DCC

<sup>2015</sup> Moved to LF-LS chapter (00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00239.197 Federated Farmers, 00237.045 and 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ)

<sup>2016</sup> 00139.264 DCC

<sup>2017</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA – not a defined term

<sup>2018</sup> 00139.265 DCC

- (a) housing of a particular price range or typology, particularly more affordable housing,
  - (b) business space or *land* of a particular size or locational type, or
  - (c) community or educational facilities, and
- (5) when considering the significance of the proposal's contribution to a matter in (4), this means that the proposal's contribution:
- (a) is of high yield relative to either the forecast demand or the identified shortfall,
  - (b) will be realised in a timely (i.e. rapid) manner,
  - (c) is likely to be taken up, and
  - (d) will facilitate a net increase in district-wide up-take in the short to medium term.

## Methods

### UFD–M1 – Strategic planning

Otago Regional Council and *territorial authorities*:

- (1) must, where they are Tier 2 local authorities, jointly determine housing *development capacity* that is feasible and likely to be taken up in the medium and long terms through *Housing and Business Development Capacity Assessments*,
- (2) should, for other districts, jointly determine demand and potential supply responses through similar, but appropriately scaled strategic planning approaches,
- (3) must, where they are Tier 2 and Tier 3 local authorities, monitor and regularly assess and report on the supply of, and demand for, residential, commercial and industrial zoned *land development capacity* available at the regional, district and *urban environment* scales, and other local authorities are encouraged to do so,
- (4) must coordinate the redevelopment and intensification of *urban areas* and the development of ~~extensions~~ expansions<sup>2019</sup> to *urban areas* with *infrastructure* planning and development programmes, to:
  - (a) provide the required *development infrastructure* and *additional infrastructure* in an integrated, timely, efficient and effective way, and
  - (b) to identify *major existing and future activities, constraints and opportunities*<sup>2020</sup> ~~and manage impacts on key values and resources identified by this RPS,~~<sup>2021</sup>

and for Tier 2 local authorities to achieve this through jointly developed *Future Development Strategies* and/or strategic planning, and for all other *local authorities* through strategic planning in accordance with UFD-P1,
- (5) must, where they are Tier 2 local authorities, develop housing bottom lines for *urban environments* and include those bottom lines in APP10 and in the relevant *district plans*,
- (6) must individually or jointly develop further regulatory or non-regulatory methods and actions to implement strategic and spatial plans, including to guide the detail of how, when and where development occurs, including matters of urban design, requirements around the timing, provision,

<sup>2019</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA – for consistency

<sup>2020</sup> 00411.088 Wayfare, 00206.073 Trojan, 00219.012 FENZ

<sup>2021</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00137.151 DOC, 00226.307 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

and responsibilities for open space, connections and infrastructure, including by third parties, and the ongoing management of effects of urban development on matters of local importance, and must involve *mana whenua*, and provide opportunities for iwi, hapū and whānau involvement in planning processes, including in decision making, ~~to ensure provision is made for their needs and aspirations, and cultural practices and values and to ensure the requirements of the MW chapter are met, and the issues and values identified in RMIA are recognised and provided for.~~<sup>2022</sup>

## UFD-M2 – District plans

*Territorial authorities* must prepare or amend their *district plans* as soon as practicable, and maintain thereafter, to:

- (1) identify and provide for urban expansion and intensification,<sup>2023</sup> to occur in accordance with:
  - (a) any adopted *future development strategy* for the relevant district or region, which must be completed in time to inform the 2024 Long Term Plan, or
  - (b) where there is no *future development strategy*, a *local authority* adopted strategic plan developed in accordance with UFD-P1, for the relevant area, district or region,
- (2) in accordance with any required *Housing and Business Development Capacity Assessments* or monitoring, including any *competitiveness margin*, ensure there is always at least<sup>2024</sup> sufficient *development capacity* that is feasible and likely to be taken up and, for Tier 2 urban environments, at a minimum meets the bottom lines for housing in APP-10, and meets the identified *land* size and locational needs of the commercial and industrial sectors, and where there is a shortage, respond in accordance with UFD-P2,<sup>2025</sup>
- (3) ensure that urban development is designed to:
  - (a) achieve a built form that relates well to its surrounding *environment*, ~~including by identifying and managing impacts of urban development on values and resources identified in this RPS,~~<sup>2026</sup>
  - (b) provide for a diverse range of housing, *commercial activities*, industrial and service activities, social and cultural opportunities,
  - (c) achieve an efficient use of *land*, energy, *water* and *infrastructure*,
  - (d) ~~promote the use of water sensitive design wherever practicable,~~<sup>2027</sup>
  - (e) minimise the potential for reverse sensitivity *effects* to arise, by managing the location of incompatible activities, within the *urban area*, and at the rural-urban interface<sup>2028</sup> and
  - (f) reduce the adverse *effects* of Otago’s cooler winter climate through designing new subdivision and development to maximise passive winter solar gain and winter heat retention, including through roading, lot size, dimensions, layout and orientation,
- (4) identify and provide for locations that are suitable for urban intensification in accordance with

---

<sup>2022</sup> 00139.266 DCC

<sup>2023</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA – grammatical correction

<sup>2024</sup> 00204.003 Daisy Link, 00405.009 Glenpanel, 00402.012 Sipka Holdings, 00401.006 Tussock Rise

<sup>2025</sup> 00401.012 Tussock Rise

<sup>2026</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00137.151 DOC, 00226.307 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>2027</sup> 00139.267 DCC

<sup>2028</sup> 00236.104 Horticulture NZ, 235.154 OWRUG

UFD-P~~23~~,<sup>2029</sup>

- (5) identify and provide for locations that are suitable for urban expansion, if any, in accordance with UFD-P~~34~~,<sup>2030</sup>
- (6) identify and provide for *commercial activities* in accordance with UFD-P5,
- (7) identify and provide for *industrial activities* in accordance with UFD-P6, and
- (8) ~~manage development in rural areas in accordance with UFD-P7,~~<sup>2031</sup>
- (9) ~~manage rural residential and rural lifestyle activities in rural areas in accordance with UFD-P8,~~<sup>2032</sup>
- (10) ~~provide for papakāika, kāika, nohoaka, and marae, in accordance with UFD-P9, and~~<sup>2033</sup>
- (11) ~~must~~<sup>2034</sup> involve *mana whenua* and provide opportunities for iwi, hapū and whānau involvement in planning processes, including in decision making, ~~to ensure provision is made for their needs and aspirations, and cultural practices and values and ensure the requirements of the MW chapter are met, and the issues and values identified in RMIA are recognised and provided for at the local level.~~<sup>2035</sup>

### UFD-M3 – Design of public spaces and surrounds

*Territorial authorities* must design and maintain public places and spaces, including streets, open spaces, public *buildings* and publicly accessible spaces so that they are safe, attractive, accessible and usable by everyone in the community.

## Explanation

### UFD-E1 – Explanation

The policies in this chapter are designed to facilitate the provision of sufficient housing and business capacity and ensure all of the region's *urban areas* demonstrate the features of *well-functioning urban environments* and meet the needs of current and future communities. Urban intensification ~~must be enabled,~~ and urban expansion ~~should be facilitated, however these important~~<sup>2036</sup> decisions should be preceded and guided by strategic planning processes that consider how best this can be achieved, ~~while also maintaining and, wherever possible, enhancing the important values and features identified in other chapters of this RPS,~~<sup>2037</sup> and in consideration of local context, values and pressures. The strategic planning process will also consider and demonstrate where, when, how and by whom the necessary *development infrastructure* and *additional infrastructure* will be provided in order to both facilitate development and change and minimise environmental impacts from it, ~~including avoiding impacts on the operation of regionally and nationally significant infrastructure.~~<sup>2038</sup>

<sup>2029</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA, 00138.222 QLDC, 00235.154 OWRUG

<sup>2030</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA, 00138.222 QLDC, 00235.154 OWRUG

<sup>2031</sup> Shifted into LF-LS chapter (00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00239.197 Federated Farmers, 00237.045 and 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ)

<sup>2032</sup> Shifted into LF-LS chapter (00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00239.197 Federated Farmers, 00237.045 and 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ)

<sup>2033</sup> 00139.267 DCC

<sup>2034</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>2035</sup> 00139.267 DCC

<sup>2036</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00139.001, 00139.257, 00139.258 DCC

<sup>2037</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00137.151 DOC, 00226.307 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>2038</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00139.001 DCC

In addition, this chapter seeks to maintain the character and *amenity values* of Otago's rural areas, including by facilitating the use of the *natural and physical resources* that support the viability of the rural sector. Otago's rural and *urban areas* also contain significant natural, cultural and historic values and features as identified by other parts of this RPS. In all cases while facilitating urban development and managing rural productive activities these values must also be identified, maintained and, wherever possible, enhanced. This approach includes direction on different types of development within *rural areas*, managing the expansion and location of *urban areas*, and rural lifestyle and rural residential development, and directing that growth be enabled in *urban areas* to minimise the need for development to occur within *rural areas*, other than what is needed to facilitate rural community and rural productive activities. The provisions in this chapter also include direction on managing the expansion and location of *urban areas* in terms of the effects on and interface with *rural areas*. These provisions work closely with those in the LF-LS chapter which apply to *rural areas*.<sup>2039</sup>

In addition, this chapter seeks to maintain the character and *amenity values* of Otago's rural areas, including by facilitating the use of the *natural and physical resources* that support the viability of the rural sector. Otago's rural and *urban areas* also contain significant natural, cultural and historic values and features as identified by other parts of this RPS. In all cases while facilitating urban development and managing rural productive activities these values must also be identified, maintained and, wherever possible, enhanced. This approach includes direction on different types of development within rural areas, managing the expansion and location of *urban areas*, and rural lifestyle and rural residential development, and directing that growth be enabled in *urban areas* to minimise the need for development to occur within rural areas, other than what is needed to facilitate rural community and rural productive activities.<sup>2040</sup>

The policies in this chapter are primarily focused on directing where *urban*<sup>2041</sup> development is and is not appropriate and under what circumstances, but provides discretion for *local authorities* to determine the detail of how that development is managed, its ultimate density, height, bulk and location, timing and sequencing, the detail of any required *development infrastructure* and *additional infrastructure* that may be needed, and allows for the consideration of particular locally significant features values and needs that contribute to the attractiveness or uniqueness of the diverse communities, landscapes, and *environments* of the region.

This more detailed determination must, however, be informed by evidence and information collated through appropriately scaled *strategic planning* processes ~~and~~ which will identify how constraints to urban development, such as hazards, landscapes, *highly productive land*, and limits are responded to, and opportunities for meeting demand, integration with lifeline utilities, *infrastructure* and other requirements may be provided for. They<sup>2042</sup> will be implemented by a range of regulatory and non-regulatory methods, including joint development of *Housing and Business Assessments* and *Future Development Strategies* for Tier 2 local authorities, and similar but appropriately scaled processes undertaken in and for other areas, including regular regional, district and *urban environment* scale monitoring, analysis and evaluation. In delivering on the objectives and policies in this chapter, which relate largely to human activities and settlements, the natural, physical, and built values and features of importance to the region must be recognised and provided for. These values and features are largely identified within other chapters and provision of the RPS. They also provide detail on how they should be identified and managed. Achieving the objectives of this chapter requires consideration of those other relevant parts of this RPS.<sup>2043</sup>

---

<sup>2039</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00239.197 Federated Farmers, 00237.045 and 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

<sup>2040</sup> 00239.178 Federated Farmers

<sup>2041</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00239.197 Federated Farmers, 00237.045 and 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

<sup>2042</sup> 00219.020 FENZ, 0139.268 DCC

<sup>2043</sup> 00139.268, and 00139.259 DCC

The following chapters of this Regional Policy Statement have particular relevance to the achievement of the objectives of this chapter by identifying particular aspects of Domains or Topics to be managed, and where there is an apparent conflict, must be balanced in accordance with the directions outlined in the Integrated Management chapter:

- ~~MW – Mana Whenua~~
- ~~AIR – Air~~
- ~~CE – Coastal environment~~
- ~~LF – Land and freshwater~~
- ~~ECO – Ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity~~
- ~~EIT – Energy, infrastructure and transport~~
- ~~HAZ – Hazards and risks~~
- ~~HCV – Historical and cultural values~~
- ~~NFL – Natural features and landscapes<sup>2044</sup>~~

## Principal reasons

### UFD-PR1 – Principal reasons

The provisions in this chapter assist in fulfilling the functions of the regional council under section 30(ba) and *territorial authorities* under section 31(aa) of the RMA 1991<sup>2045</sup> to ensure sufficient *development capacity* in relation to housing and *business land* to meet the expected demands of the region and districts respectively. They also assist in giving effect to the similar but more detailed requirements of the NPSUD.

*Urban areas* are important for community well-being and are a reflection the inherently social nature of humans. Well-functioning urban areas enable social interactions and provide a wide variety (across type, location and price) of housing, employment and recreational opportunities to meet the varied and variable needs and preferences of communities, in a way that maximises the well-being of its present and future inhabitants, and respects its history, its setting and the *environment*. The combination of population growth and demographic change will result in changes in the quantity and qualities demanded of housing, employment, business, *infrastructure*, social facilities emergency services and lifeline utilities<sup>2046</sup> and other<sup>2047</sup> and services across the region. Upgrade and replacement of the existing development and infrastructure will also continue to be required even where growth is limited, resulting in changes in the built environment. Some of these changes will also be driven by changes in the *natural environment*, including the impacts of climate change. Urban areas are highly dynamic by nature, so the provisions in this chapter seek to manage, rather than limit, the form, function, growth and development of urban areas in a way that best provides for the community's well-being both now and into the future.

The pace and scale of growth and change, and the scale and nature of urban environments and areas in the region is variable, meaning no single response at a regional level is appropriate in all cases. Accordingly, the process identified in this RPS remains flexible and responsive (outside of Tier 2 urban environments, which have specific requirements under the NPSUD). Key requirements of strategic planning include considering and providing for reasonably expected changes in overall quantum of demand and supply as well as changes in needs and preferences that may drive or add to these changes in demand, designing to maximise the efficient use of energy, land and infrastructure (including transport

---

<sup>2044</sup> 00120.006 Yellow-eyed Penguin Trust

<sup>2045</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>2046</sup> 00219.020 FENZ

<sup>2047</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00219.020 FENZ



infrastructure). This can best be achieved by prioritising development in and around the region's existing urban areas as the primary focus of the region's growth and change, by enabling development within and adjacent to those urban areas, where it generally is most suitable and most efficient to do so.

These strategic planning processes provide the mechanism by which longer term issues can be considered, integration between land use and infrastructure can be achieved, and various constraints, opportunities and key trade-offs can be identified and appropriately resolved, while identifying and managing the values and resources identified in this RPS. These processes, and others should always involve *mana whenua*, at all levels of the process to ensure their views and values can be incorporated and celebrated, and their needs and aspirations appropriately provided for.

All development should seek to maximise efficient use of *water* consumption (through *water* efficient design) and disposal. ~~{Reduced<sup>2048</sup> consumption reduces sewerage loads, and the<sup>2049</sup> *water* sensitive design reduces impacts on both supplying and receiving natural systems and can reduce flooding from *stormwater*}<sup>2050</sup>, and maximise the winter capture and retention of the sun's energy, which will also assist with reducing the energy needed to heat homes in winter and can also help reduce air pollution from *solid fuel* burning for home heating. Development in more central parts of the region also need to be designed to be cognisant of minimising excess sun capture in the summer months. ~~Enabling the establishment and use of small-scale renewable energy generation also facilitates local energy resilience, contributes to national renewable energy generation targets with associated *climate change* benefits, and may reduce the need for additional large-scale generation and transmission infrastructure and associated impacts.~~<sup>2051</sup>~~

~~Rural areas are attractive as residential living areas, and for other non-rural activities. However, they contain areas, activities and resources critical for rural production that can be impacted by sensitive activities. Non-urban areas also contain a wide range of other values that can be negatively impacted by the impacts of rural residential and other activities, that do not have a functional need to be in rural areas. The provisions in this chapter focus on managing where rural living opportunities and other non-rural activities are provided for, so that the potential effects on the rural character, productive potential and the wide range of environmental values, features and resources that rural areas also contain are appropriately managed. The supply of rural lifestyle opportunities to meet demand should be directed to suitably located and zoned areas to minimise impacts on values in rural areas. In designing and planning for rural residential and rural lifestyle development, local authorities will need to be aware of the potential future constraints on future urban expansion and development, including the cumulative impacts of infrastructure servicing irrespective of whether this is onsite, community or through connections to urban reticulated schemes.~~<sup>2052</sup>

Implementation of the provisions in this chapter will occur partially through *regional plans* but primarily *district plan* provisions, as well as through preparation of *future development strategies* and *structure plans* and the financial and *infrastructure* planning processes they inform. While the functions and duties of regional and territorial authorities are different, each brings different focus and responsibilities to the task of achieving well-functioning urban environments. Working together, and with others, in accordance with specified joint responsibilities under the NPSUD, will assist with achieving the purpose of the RMA and the outcomes sought by this RPS.<sup>2053</sup>

To appropriately and efficiently achieve the objectives and policies, other non-regulatory spatial planning exercises and associated action plans, agreements and *infrastructure* delivery programs will be needed to

---

<sup>2048</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>2049</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>2050</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>2051</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00139.254 DCC

<sup>2052</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00236.096 Horticulture NZ, 00239.197 Federated Farmers, 00237.045 and 00237.063 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

<sup>2053</sup> 00139.268 DCC

complement regulatory approaches, including setting aside the necessary funding for delivery, and partnering with *mana whenua*, central government, communities and developers to deliver the quality and quantity of urban development needed to meet demand and provide for change, improve *land* and development market competitiveness, and achieve *resilient*, efficient and attractive urban places.

## Anticipated environmental results

- UFD–AER1** Appropriately scaled strategic planning occurs in advance of regulatory planning, and regulatory plans are changed in a timely manner to facilitate the outcomes identified in these processes.
- UFD–AER2** Urban expansion only occurs when suitable and sufficient *development infrastructure* is in place or will be provided at the time of expansion and provision is made for the needs of *additional infrastructure*.
- UFD–AER3** *Development infrastructure* is in place in time to facilitate reasonably expected urban intensification or planned expansion.
- UFD–AER4** New developments including redevelopments are designed to maximise energy and transport efficiency and minimise impacts on *water* quality and quantity.
- UFD–AER5** The majority of new urban<sup>2054</sup> development is located close to services, jobs, and other urban amenities and can access those amenities by a range of transport modes including *active transport* and, where available, *public transport*.
- UFD–AER6** The mode share and use of *active transport* and where available,<sup>2055</sup> *public transport* increases.
- ~~**UFD–AER7** New developments are at minimal *risk* from *natural hazards* including changes to *risk* due to the impacts of *climate change*, and do not increase *risk* to existing or planned developments.<sup>2056</sup>~~
- ~~**UFD–AER8** In existing urban areas at *risk* from *natural hazards*, including changes to *risk* due to the impacts of *climate change*, communities are informed, *resilient* and prepared for the effects of known *natural hazard risks*.<sup>2057</sup>~~
- UFD–AER9** There is an increased range of housing types and locations and an increased number of *dwelling*s, particularly more affordable housing in existing and planned *urban areas*.
- UFD–AER10** The current and future needs of business are met by the availability of a range of opportunities for *land* and space that meets their requirements.
- UFD–AER11** ~~All n~~New rural residential or rural<sup>2058</sup> lifestyle development occurs within areas

<sup>2054</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from Boxer Hills Trust, 00023.005 Waterfall Park

<sup>2055</sup> 00139.272 DCC

<sup>2056</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00139.001 DCC

<sup>2057</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00139.001 DCC

<sup>2058</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00221.016 Silver Fern Farms, 00236.103 Horticulture NZ.

~~zoned~~ appropriate for this use.<sup>2059</sup>

**UFD-AER12**

Urban expansion and urban activities are appropriately planned so that they do not adversely affect the long-term viability of the rural sector and rural communities.<sup>2060</sup>

**UFD-AER13**

*Mana whenua* are involved in strategic planning and other planning processes.<sup>2061</sup>

---

<sup>2059</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00025.004 Boxer Hills Trust, 00023.005 Waterfall Park Developments Limited

<sup>2060</sup> 00236.107 Horticulture NZ, 00208.001 AgResearch, 00239.180 Federated Farmers

<sup>2061</sup> 00139.259 DCC

# PART 4 – EVALUATION AND MONITORING

## Monitoring the efficiency and effectiveness of the policy statement

ORC must monitor the efficiency and effectiveness of its RPS provisions and publish the results every five years.<sup>2062</sup> The RPS needs to include the procedures for monitoring its methods and policies.<sup>2063</sup>

### Existing monitoring procedure

ORC has policies and procedures in place to gather information and to monitor and report on how well Otago's *natural and physical resources* are managed. These include State of the Environment reporting, *resource consent* monitoring, and annual reporting against objectives in the Council's Long-Term Plan. These policies and procedures will be reviewed and updated to reflect ORPS environmental goals (objectives) and ensure the right information is being gathered to monitor the environmental results anticipated.

The ORPS is relevant to all decision making under the RMA ~~1991~~<sup>2064</sup> and must be given effect through *regional plans*<sup>2065</sup> and *district plans*. As the ORPS is given effect through *regional plans*<sup>2066</sup> and *district plans*, much of the data needed for monitoring will be gathered for the purpose of, or will be relevant to, the monitoring of *regional plans*<sup>2067</sup> and *district plans*. ORC will undertake a work programme to identify data the *territorial authorities* collect in the course of their normal monitoring regimes and make arrangements for collection and sharing of data, including information that the regional council collects that may be of benefit to *territorial authorities*.

Specific environmental indicators will be developed to monitor the impact that ORPS policies and methods are having on Otago's social, economic, cultural and environmental well-being, and whether they remain the most appropriate for achieving the ~~RMA 1991's~~ RMA's<sup>2068</sup> purpose. These environmental indicators will be developed outside of the ORPS. This approach enables the frequency or type of indicators to be amended, in order to respond to emerging issues, improved technology and best practice, changes in the local *environment*, or societal expectations. It forms part of a continuous review and reporting cycle, resulting in policy changes and adjustments as necessary.

The ORPS needs to reflect the needs and aspirations of *mana whenua tangata whenua*<sup>2069</sup> and the wider community, so ~~*mana whenua tangata whenua*~~<sup>2070</sup> and stakeholders will be encouraged to be involved with monitoring the provisions of the ORPS.

### Regional Monitoring Strategy

To address the undertakings described above, ORC must develop a comprehensive integrated Regional

---

<sup>2062</sup> Section 35 of the Resource Management Act 1991

<sup>2063</sup> Section 62(1)(j) of the Resource Management Act 1991

<sup>2064</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>2065</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>2066</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>2067</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>2068</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>2069</sup> 00226.325 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>2070</sup> 00226.325 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

Monitoring Strategy (RMS). This strategy will link ORC's various monitoring procedures together to reduce double handling, identify connections, and improve interrelationships, both between ORC functions and with other agencies. The strategy will help monitor the effectiveness and efficiency of the ORPS, using both quantitative and qualitative assessments, and sit alongside it as a non-statutory document.

The RMS will assist ORC with expanding its monitoring activities to respond to ORPS provisions and ensure the things measured accurately reflect policy success, including environmental,<sup>2071</sup> ~~natural~~, social, economic, cultural and *historic heritage* values. It will increase transparency by stating what is monitored and why.

This goes hand in hand with increasing the ORC's leadership and facilitation role in several areas, including *climate change*.

## **PART 5 – APPENDICES AND MAPS**

# Appendices

## APP1 – Criteria for identifying *outstanding water bodies*

*Outstanding water bodies* include any *water body* with one or more of the following outstanding values, noting that sub-values are not all-inclusive:

Table 4: Values of outstanding water bodies

Values	Description	Example sub-values
Cultural and spiritual <sup>2072</sup>	A <i>water body</i> which has outstanding cultural and spiritual values.	Wāhi tapu, wāhi taoka, wai tapu, rohe boundary, battle sites, pa, kāika, tauraka waka, mahika kai, pa tuna; and acknowledged in korero tuku iho, pepeha, whakatauki or waiata
Ecology	A <i>water body</i> which has outstanding ecological value as a habitat for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Native birds</li> <li>• Native fish</li> <li>• Salmonid fish<sup>2073</sup></li> <li>• Other aquatic species</li> </ul>	Native birds, native fish, native plants, aquatic macroinvertebrates
Landscape	A <i>water body</i> that: <p>(1) is an essential which forms a key component of a landscape or natural feature that is “conspicuous, eminent, remarkable or iconic” within the region, and or is critical to an outstanding natural feature.</p> <p>(2) has landscape, wild and/or scenic values that contain distinctive qualities which are outstanding in the context of the region.<sup>2074</sup></p>	Scenic, association, natural characteristics (includes hydrological, ecological and geological features)
Natural character	A <i>water body</i> with high naturalness that: <p>(1) exhibits an exceptional combination of natural processes, natural patterns and natural elements with low levels of modification to its form, ecosystems and the surrounding landscape that is exceptional in the context of the region, and</p> <p>(2) has little to no human modification to its form, ecosystems, and the surrounding landscape.<sup>2075</sup></p>	Natural characteristics (includes hydrological, ecological and geological features)
Recreation	A <i>water body</i> which is recognised as providing an outstanding recreational experience for an activity which is directly related to the <i>water</i> .	Angling, fishing, kayaking, rafting, jetboating
Physical	A <i>water body</i> which has an outstanding geomorphological, geological or hydrological feature which is dependent on the <i>water body’s</i> condition and functioning.	Science

<sup>2072</sup> 00226.326 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>2073</sup> 00239.184 Federated Farmers, 00237.066 Beef + Lamb and DINZ

<sup>2074</sup> 00311.062 Manawa, 00239.184 Federated Farmers

<sup>2075</sup> 00311.062 Manawa



## **APP2 – Criteria for identifying areas that qualify as indigenous natural areas (SNAs) Significance criteria for indigenous biodiversity**<sup>2076</sup>

This appendix sets out the criteria for identifying significant indigenous vegetation or significant *habitats* of indigenous fauna in a specific area, so that the area qualifies as an SNA.

The assessment must be done using the assessment criteria in Appendix 1 and in accordance with the following principles:

- (a) partnership: territorial authorities engage early with mana whenua and land owners and share information about *indigenous biodiversity*, potential management options, and any support and incentives that may be available:
- (b) transparency: territorial authorities clearly inform mana whenua and landowners about how any information gathered will be used and make existing information, draft assessments and other relevant information available to mana whenua and relevant landowners for review:
- (c) quality: wherever practicable, the values and extent of natural areas are verified by physical inspection; but if a physical inspection is not practicable (because, for instance, the area is inaccessible, or a landowner does not give access) the local authority uses the best information available to it at the time:
- (d) access: if a physical inspection is required, permission of the landowner is first sought and the powers of entry under section 333 of the Act are used only as a last resort:
- (e) consistency: the criteria in Appendix 1 are applied consistently, regardless of who owns the land:
- (f) boundaries: the boundaries of areas of significant indigenous vegetation or significant *habitat* if indigenous fauna are determined without regard to artificial margins (such as property boundaries) that would affect the extent or ecological integrity of the area identified.

### **1 What qualifies as an SNA**

- (1) An area qualifies as an SNA if it meets any one of the attributes of the following four criteria:
  - (a) representativeness:
  - (b) diversity and pattern:
  - (c) rarity and distinctiveness:
  - (d) ecological context.
- (2) If an area would quality as an SNA solely on the grounds that it provides *habitat* for a single indigenous fauna species that is At Risk (declining), and that the species is widespread in at least three other regions, the area does not quality as an SNA unless:
  - (a) the species is rare within the region or *ecological district* where the area is located; or
  - (b) the protection of the species at that location is important for the persistence of the species as a whole.
- (3) If an area would qualify as an SNA solely on the grounds that it contains one or more indigenous flora species that are Threatened or At Risk (declining), and those species are widespread in at least three other regions, the area does not qualify as an SNA unless:
  - (a) the species is rare within the region or *ecological district* where the area is located; or
  - (b) the protection of the species at that location is important for the persistence of the species as a whole.

### **2 Context for assessment**

---

<sup>2076</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

- (1) The context for an assessment of an area is: (a) its *ecological district*; and (b) for the ratiry assessment only, its *ecological district*, its region and the national context.

### **3 Manner and form of assessment**

- (1) Every assessment must include at least:
- (a) a map of the area; and
  - (b) a general description of its significant attributes, with reference to relevant criteria (as specified below); and
  - (c) a general description of the indigenous vegetation, indigenous fauna, *habitat*, and ecosystems present; and
  - (d) additional information, such as the key threats, pressures, and management requirements; and
  - (e) for SNAs in areas of Crown-owned land referred to in clause 3.8(8), the conservation management strategy or plan or national park management plan that applies to the area.
- (2) An assessment under this appendix must be conducted by a suitably qualified ecologist (which, in the case of an assessment of a geothermal ecosystem, requires an ecologist with geothermal expertise).

#### **A Representativeness criterion**

- (1) Representativeness is the extent to which the indigenous vegetation or *habitat* of indigenous fauna in an area is typical or characteristic of the *indigenous biodiversity* of the relevant *ecological district*.
- (2) Significant indigenous vegetation has ecological integrity typical of the indigenous vegetation of the *ecological district* in the present-day environment. It includes seral (regenerating) indigenous vegetation that is recovering following natural or induced disturbance, provided species composition is typical of that type of indigenous vegetation.
- (3) Significant indigenous fauna *habitat* is that which supports the typical suite of indigenous animals that would occur in the present-day environment. *Habitat* of indigenous fauna may be indigenous or exotic.
- (4) Representativeness may include commonplace indigenous vegetation and the *habitats* of indigenous fauna, which is where most *indigenous biodiversity* is present. It may also include degraded indigenous vegetation, ecosystems and *habitats* that are typical of what remains in depleted *ecological districts*. It is not restricted to the best or most representative examples, and it is not a measure of how well that indigenous vegetation or *habitat* is protected elsewhere in the *ecological district*.
- (5) When considering the typical character of an *ecological district*, any highly developed land or built-up areas should be excluded.
- (6) The application of this criterion should result in identification of indigenous vegetation and *habitats* that are representative of the full range and extent of ecological diversity across all environmental gradients in an *ecological district*, such as climate, altitude, landform, and soil sequences. The ecological character and pattern of the indigenous vegetation in the *ecological district* should be described by reference to the types of indigenous vegetation and the landforms on which it occurs,

#### Attributes of representativeness

- (7) An area that qualifies as an SNA under this criterion has at least one of the following attributes:
- (a) Indigenous vegetation that has ecological integrity that is typical of the character of the *ecological district*;
  - (b) *habitat* that supports a typical suite of indigenous fauna that is characteristic of the *habitat*

type in the *ecological district* and retains at least a moderate range of species expected for that *habitat* type in the *ecological district*.

## **B Diversity and pattern criterion**

- (1) Diversity and pattern is the extent to which the expected range of diversity and patter of biological and physical components within the relevant *ecological district* is present in an area.

### Key assessment principles

- (2) **Diversity of biological components** is expressed in the variation of species, communities, and ecosystems. Biological diversity is associated with variation in physical components, such as geology, soils/substrate, aspect/exposure, altitude/depth, temperature, and salinity.
- (3) **Pattern** includes changes along environmental and landform gradients, such as ecotones and sequences.
- (4) **Natural areas** that have a wider range of species, *habitats* or communities or wider environmental variation due to ecotones, gradients, and sequences in the context of the *ecological district*, rate more highly under this criterion.

### Attributes of diversity and pattern

- (5) An area that qualifies as a significant natural area under this criterion has at least one of the following attributes:
- (a) at least a moderate diversity of indigenous species , vegetation, *habitats* of indigenous fauna or communities in the context of the *ecological district*:
  - (b) presence of indigenous ecotones, complete or partial gradients or sequences.

## **C Rarity and distinctiveness criterion**

- (1) Rarity and distinctiveness is the presence of rare or distinctive indigenous taxa, *habitats* of indigenous fauna, indigenous vegetation or ecosystems

### Key assessment principles

- (2) **Rarity** is the scarcity (natural or induced) of indigenous elements: species, *habits*, vegetation, or ecosystems. Rarity includes elements that are uncommon or threatened.
- (3) **The list of Threatened and At Risk species** is regularly updated by the Department of Conservation. Rarity at a regional or *ecological district* scale is defined by regional or district lists or determined by expert ecological advice. The significance of nationally listed Threatened and At Risk species should not be downgraded just because they are common within a region or *ecological district*.
- (4) **Depletion of indigenous vegetation or ecosystems** is assessed using *ecological districts* and land environments.
- (5) **Distinctiveness** includes distribution limits, type localities, local endemism, relict distributions and species ecological or scientific features.

### Attributes of rarity and distinctiveness

- (6) An area that qualifies as an SNA under this criterion has at least one of the following attributes:
- (a) provides *habitat* for an indigenous species that is listed as Threatened or At Risk (declining) in the New Zealand Threat Classification System lists:
  - (b) an indigenous vegetation type or an indigenous species that is uncommon within the region or *ecological district*:
  - (c) an indigenous species or plant community at or near its natural distributional limit:
  - (d) indigenous vegetation that has been reduced to less than 20 per cent of its prehuman extent in the *ecological district*, region, or land environment:

- (e) indigenous vegetation or *habitat* of indigenous fauna occurring on naturally uncommon ecosystems:
- (f) the type locality of an indigenous species:
- (g) the presence of a distinctive assemblage or community of indigenous species:
- (h) the presence of a special ecological or scientific feature.

**D Ecological context criterion**

- (1) Ecological context is the extent to which the size, shape, and configuration of an area within the wider surrounding landscape contributes to its ability to maintain *indigenous biodiversity* or affects the ability of the surrounding landscape to maintain its *indigenous biodiversity*.

Key assessment principles

- (2) Ecological context has two main assessment principles:
  - (a) the characteristics that help maintain *indigenous biodiversity* (such as size, shape, and configuration) in the area; and
  - (b) the contribution the area makes to protecting *indigenous biodiversity* in the wider landscape (such as by linking, connecting to or buffering other natural areas, providing 'stepping stones' of *habitat* or maintaining ecological integrity).

Attributes of ecological context

- (3) An area that qualifies as an SNA under this criterion has at least one of the following attributes:
  - (a) at least moderate size and compact shape, in the context of the relevant *ecological district*:
  - (b) well-buffered relative to remaining *habitats* in the relevant *ecological district*:
  - (c) provides an important full or partial buffer to, or link between, one or more important *habitats* of indigenous fauna or *significant natural areas*:
  - (d) important for the natural functioning of an ecosystem relative to remaining *habitats* in the *ecological district*; and
  - (e) an area that is important for a population of indigenous fauna during a critical part of their lifecycle, either seasonally or permanently, e.g. for feeding, resting, nesting, breeding, spawning or refuges from predation.

An area is considered to be a *significant natural area* if it meets any one or more of the criteria below:

**Representativeness**

- (a) — An area that is an example of an indigenous vegetation type or habitat that is typical or characteristic of the original natural diversity of the relevant ecological district or coastal marine biogeographic region. This may include *degraded* examples of their type or represent all that remains of indigenous vegetation and habitats of indigenous fauna in some areas.
- (b) — An indigenous marine ecosystem (including both intertidal and sub-tidal habitats, and including both faunal and floral assemblages) that makes up part of at least 10% of the natural extent of each of Otago's original marine ecosystem types and reflecting the environmental gradients of the region.
- (c) — An indigenous marine ecosystem, or habitat of indigenous marine fauna (including both intertidal and sub-tidal habitats, and including both faunal and floral components), that is characteristic or typical of the natural marine ecosystem diversity of Otago.

**Rarity**

- (d) — An area that supports:
  - (i) — An indigenous species that is threatened, at *risk*, or uncommon, nationally or within an ecological district or coastal marine biogeographic region, or
  - (ii) — Indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna that has been reduced to less than 20% of its former extent nationally, regionally or within a relevant *land environment*, ecological district, coastal marine biogeographic region or *freshwater environment* including *wetlands*, or
  - (iii) — Indigenous vegetation and habitats within originally rare ecosystems, or
  - (iv) — The site contains indigenous vegetation or an indigenous species that is endemic to Otago or that are at distributional limits within Otago.

**Diversity**

- (e) — An area that supports a high diversity of indigenous ecosystem types, indigenous *taxa* or has changes in species composition reflecting the existence of diverse natural features or gradients.

**Distinctiveness**

- (f) — An area that supports or provides habitat for:
  - (i) — Indigenous species at their distributional limit within Otago or nationally, or
  - (ii) — Indigenous species that are endemic to the Otago region, or
  - (iii) — Indigenous vegetation or an association of indigenous species that is distinctive, of restricted occurrence, or has developed as a result of an unusual environmental factor or combinations of factors.

**Ecological context**

- (g) — The relationship of the area with its surroundings (both within Otago and between Otago and the adjoining regions), including:
  - (i) — An area that has important connectivity value allowing dispersal of indigenous flora and fauna between different areas, or
  - (ii) — An area that has an important buffering function that helps to protect the values of an adjacent area or feature, or
  - (iii) — An area that is important for indigenous fauna during some part of their life cycle, either regularly or on an irregular basis, e.g. for feeding, resting, nesting, breeding, spawning or refuges from predation, or
  - (iv) — A *wetland* which plays an important hydrological, biological or ecological role in the natural functioning of a *river* or coastal ecosystem.

## APP3 – Principles for biodiversity offsetting ~~Criteria for biodiversity offsetting~~<sup>2077</sup>

These principles apply to the use of biodiversity offsets for adverse effects on *indigenous biodiversity*. An applicant is to comply with principles 1 to 6 and have regard to the remaining principles as appropriate.

- (1) **Adherence to effects management hierarchy:** A biodiversity offset is a commitment to redress more than minor residual adverse effects and should be contemplated only after steps to avoid, minimise, and remedy adverse effects are demonstrated to have been sequentially exhausted.
- (2) **When *biodiversity offsetting* is not appropriate:** Biodiversity offsets are not appropriate in situations where *indigenous biodiversity* values cannot be offset to achieve a net gain. Examples of an offset not being appropriate include where:
  - (a) residual adverse effects cannot be offset because of the irreplaceability or vulnerability of the *indigenous biodiversity* affected:
  - (b) effects on *indigenous biodiversity* are uncertain, unknown, or little understood, but potential effects are significantly adverse or irreversible:
  - (c) there are no technically feasible options by which to secure gains within an acceptable timeframe.
  - (d) the loss from an *ecological district* of any individuals of Threatened *taxa*, other than *kanuka* (*Kunzea robusta* and *Kunzea serotina*), under the New Zealand Threat Classification System (Townsend et al, 2008); or
  - (e) the likely worsening of the conservation status of any *indigenous biodiversity* as listed under the New Zealand Threat Classification System (Townsend et al, 2008); or
  - (f) the removal or loss of health and *resilience* of a naturally uncommon ecosystem type that is associated with *indigenous vegetation* or *habitat* of indigenous fauna.
- (3) **Net gain:** This principle reflects a standard of acceptability for demonstrating, and then achieving, a net gain in *indigenous biodiversity* values. Net gain is demonstrated by a like-for-like quantitative loss/gain calculation of the following, and is achieved when the *indigenous biodiversity* values at the offset site are equivalent to or exceed those being lost at the impact site:
  - (a) types of *indigenous biodiversity*, including when indigenous species depend on introduced species for their persistence; and
  - (b) amount; and
  - (c) condition (structure and quality).
- (4) **Additionality:** A biodiversity offset achieves gains in *indigenous biodiversity* above and beyond gains that would have occurred in the absence of the offset, such as gains that are additional to any minimisation and remediation undertaken in relation to the adverse effects of the activity.
- (5) **Leakage:** Biodiversity offset design and implementation avoids displacing hard to other *indigenous biodiversity* in the same or any other location.
- (6) **Long-term outcomes:** A biodiversity offset is managed to secure outcomes of the activity that last at least as long as the impacts, and preferably in perpetuity. Consideration must be given to long-term issues around funding, location, management and monitoring.
- (7) **Landscape context:** *Biodiversity offsetting* is undertaken where this will result in the best

ecological outcome, preferably close to the impact site or within the same *ecological district*. The action considers the landscape context of both the impact site and the offset site, taking into account interactions between species, *habitats* and ecosystems, special connections, and *ecosystem function*.

- (8) **Time lags:** The delay between loss of, or effects on, *indigenous biodiversity* values at the impact site and the gain or maturity of *indigenous biodiversity* at the offset site is minimised so that the calculated gains are achieved within the consent period or, as appropriate, a longer period (but not more than 35 years).
- (9) **Science and mātauraka Māori:** The design and implementation of a biodiversity offset is a documented process informed by science and mātauraka Māori.
- (10) **Mana whenua and stakeholder participation:** Opportunity for the effective and early participation of mana whenua and stakeholders is demonstrated when planning biodiversity offsets, including their evaluation, selection, design, implementation, and monitoring.
- (11) **Transparency:** The design and implementation of a biodiversity offset, and communication of its results to the public, is undertaken in a transparent and timely manner.

~~(1) — Biodiversity offsetting is not available if the activity will result in:~~

- ~~(a) — the loss of any individuals of Threatened *taxa*, other than kānuka (*Kunzea robusta* and *Kunzea serotina*), under the New Zealand Threat Classification System (Townsend et al, 2008), or~~
- ~~(b) — reasonably measurable loss within the ecological district to an At Risk Declining *taxon*, other than manuka (*Leptospermum scoparium*), under the New Zealand Threat Classification System (Townsend et al, 2008).~~

~~(2) — Biodiversity offsetting is available if the following criteria are met:~~

- ~~(a) — the offset addresses residual adverse *effects* that remain after implementing the sequential steps required by ECO-P6(1) to (3),~~
- ~~(b) — the offset achieves no net loss and preferably a net gain in indigenous *biodiversity*, as measured by type, amount and condition at both the impact and offset sites using an explicit loss and gain calculation,~~
- ~~(c) — the offset is undertaken where it will result in the best ecological outcome, and as the first priority be:~~
- ~~(i) — close to the location of the activity, and~~
- ~~(ii) — within the same ecological district or coastal marine biogeographic region,~~
- ~~(d) — the offset is applied so that the ecological values being achieved are the same or similar to those being lost,~~
- ~~(e) — the positive ecological outcomes of the offset endure at least as long as the impact of the activity and preferably in perpetuity,~~
- ~~(f) — the offset achieves *biodiversity* outcomes beyond results that would have occurred if the offset was not proposed,~~
- ~~(g) — the time delay between the loss of *biodiversity* and the realisation of the offset is the least necessary to achieve the best possible outcome,~~



- ~~(h) — the outcome of the offset is achieved within the duration of the *resource consent*, and~~
- ~~(i) — any offset developed in advance of an application for *resource consent* must be shown to have been created or commenced in anticipation of the specific *effect* of the proposed activity and would not have occurred if that *effect* was not anticipated.~~

## APP4 – Principles for biodiversity compensation ~~Criteria for biodiversity compensation~~<sup>2078</sup>

These principles apply to the use of *biodiversity compensation* for adverse effects on *indigenous biodiversity*. An applicant is to comply with principles 1 to 6 and have regard to the remaining principles as appropriate.

- (1) Adherence to effects management hierarchy: *Biodiversity compensation* is a commitment to redress more than minor residual adverse effects, and should be contemplated only after steps to avoid, minimise, remedy, and offset adverse effects are demonstrated to have been sequentially exhausted.
- (2) When *biodiversity compensation* is not appropriate: *Biodiversity compensation* is not appropriate where *indigenous biodiversity* values are not able to be compensated for.  
Examples of *biodiversity compensation* not being appropriate include where:
  - (a) the *indigenous biodiversity* affected is irreplaceable or vulnerable;
  - (b) effects on *indigenous biodiversity* are uncertain, unknown, or a little understood, but potential effects are significantly adverse or irreversible;
  - (c) there are no technically feasible options by which to secure a proposed net gain within acceptable timeframes.
  - (d) the loss from an ecological district of Threatened taxa, other than kanuka (*Kunzea robusta* and *Kunzea serotina*), under the New Zealand Threat Classification System (Townsend et al, 2008); or,
  - (e) removal or loss of viability of the *habitat* of a Threatened *indigenous species* of fauna or flora under the New Zealand Threat Classification System (Townsend et al, 2008),
  - (f) removal or loss of health and *resilience* of a naturally uncommon ecosystem type that is associated with *indigenous vegetation* or *habitat* of indigenous fauna,
  - (g) the likely worsening of the conservation status of any Threatened or At Risk *indigenous biodiversity* listed under the New Zealand Threat Classification System (Townsend et al, 2008).
- (3) scale of biodiversity compensation: The *indigenous biodiversity* values lost through the activity to which the *biodiversity compensation* applies are addressed by positive effects to *indigenous biodiversity* (including when indigenous species depend on introduced species for their persistence), that outweigh the adverse effects.
- (4) Additionality: *Biodiversity compensation* achieves gains in *indigenous biodiversity* above and beyond gains that would have occurred in the absence of the compensation, such as gains that are additional to any minimisation and remediation or offsetting undertaken in relation to the adverse effects of the activity.
- (5) Leakage: *Biodiversity compensation* design and implementation avoids displacing harm to other *indigenous biodiversity* in the same or any other location.
- (6) Long-term outcomes: *Biodiversity compensation* is managed to secure outcomes of the activity that last as least as long as the impacts, and preferably in perpetuity. Consideration must be given to long-term issues around funding, location, management, and monitoring.
- (7) Landscape context: *Biodiversity compensation* is undertaken where this will result in the best ecological outcome, preferably close to the impact site or within the same *ecological district*. The

---

<sup>2078</sup> 00139.129 DCC, 00237.049 Beef & Lamb NZ

action considers the landscape context of both the impact site and the compensation site taking into account interactions between species, *habitats*, and ecosystems, spatial connections, and *ecosystem function*.

- (8) Time lags: The delay between loss of, or effects on, *indigenous biodiversity* values at the impact site and the gain or maturity of *indigenous biodiversity* at the compensation site is minimised so that the calculated gains are achieved within the consent period or, as appropriate, a longer period (but not more than 35 years)
- (9) Trading up: When trading up forms part of biodiversity compensation, the proposal demonstrates that the *indigenous biodiversity* gains are demonstrably greater or higher than those lost. The proposal also shows the values are not to *Threatened or At Risk (declining) species* or to species considered vulnerable or irreplaceable.
- (10) Financial contributions: A financial contribution is only considered if:
- (a) there is no effective option available for delivering biodiversity gains on the ground; and
  - (b) it directly funds an intended biodiversity gain or benefit that complies with the rest of these principles.
- (11) Science and mātauraka Māori: The design and implementation of *biodiversity compensation* is a documented process informed by science, and mātauraka Māori.
- (12) Mana whenua and stakeholder participation: Opportunity for the effective and early participation of mana whenua and stakeholders is demonstrated when planning for biodiversity compensation, including its evaluation, selection, design, implementation, and monitoring.
- (13) Transparency: The design and implementation of biodiversity compensation, and communication of its results to the public, is undertaken in a transparent and timely manner.
- (14) Achievability: The *biodiversity compensation* outcome is demonstrably achievable.

~~(1) — *Biodiversity compensation* is not available if the activity will result in:~~

- ~~(a) — the loss of an indigenous *taxon* (excluding *freshwater* fauna and flora) or of any ecosystem type from an ecological district or coastal marine biogeographic region,~~
- ~~(b) — removal or loss of viability of habitat of a Threatened or At Risk indigenous species of fauna or flora under the New Zealand Threat Classification System (Townsend et al, 2008),~~
- ~~(c) — removal or loss of viability of a *naturally rare* or uncommon ecosystem type that is associated with indigenous vegetation or habitat of indigenous fauna, or~~
- ~~(d) — worsening of the New Zealand Threat Classification System (Townsend et al, 2008) conservation status of any Threatened or At Risk indigenous fauna.~~

~~(2) — *Biodiversity compensation* is available if the following criteria are met:~~

- ~~(a) — compensation addresses only residual adverse effects that remain after implementing the sequential steps required by ECO-P5(1) to (4),~~
- ~~(b) — compensation is undertaken where it will result in the best practicable outcome and preferably:
  - ~~(i) — close to the location of the activity, and~~
  - ~~(ii) — within the same ecological district or coastal marine biogeographic region,~~~~

- ~~(c) — compensation achieves positive *biodiversity* outcomes that would not have occurred without that compensation,~~
- ~~(d) — the positive *biodiversity* outcomes of the compensation are enduring,~~
- ~~(e) — the time delay between the loss of *biodiversity* through the proposal and the gain or maturation of the compensation's *biodiversity* outcomes is the least necessary to achieve the best possible outcome,~~
- ~~(f) — the outcome of the compensation is achieved within the duration of the *resource consent*,~~
- ~~(g) — *biodiversity* compensation developed in advance of an application for *resource consent* must be shown to have been created or commenced in anticipation of the specific *effect* of the proposed activity and would not have occurred if that *effect* was not anticipated, and~~
- ~~(h) — the *biodiversity* compensation is demonstrably achievable.~~

## **APP4A – Principles for aquatic offsetting**

These principles apply to the use of aquatic offsets for the loss of extent or values of natural inland wetlands and rivers (“extent or values” below).

**1. Adherence to effects management hierarchy:** An aquatic offset is a commitment to redress more than minor residual adverse effects, and should be contemplated only after steps to avoid, minimise, and remedy adverse effects are demonstrated to have been sequentially exhausted.

**2. When aquatic offsetting is not appropriate:** Aquatic offsets are not appropriate in situations where, in terms of conservation outcomes, the extent or values cannot be offset to achieve no net loss, and preferably a net gain, in the extent and values. Examples of an offset not being appropriate would include where:

(a) residual adverse effects cannot be offset because of the irreplaceability or vulnerability of the extent or values affected:

(b) effects on the extent or values are uncertain, unknown, or little understood, but potential effects are significantly adverse:

(c) there are no technically feasible options by which to secure proposed no net loss and preferably a net gain outcome within an acceptable timeframe.

**3. No net loss and preferably a net gain:** This is demonstrated by a like-for-like quantitative loss/gain calculation, and is achieved when the extent or values gained at the offset site (measured by type, amount and condition) are equivalent to or exceed those being lost at the impact site.

**4. Additionality:** An aquatic offset achieves gains in extent or values above and beyond gains that would have occurred in the absence of the offset, such as gains that are additional to any minimisation and remediation undertaken in relation to the adverse effects of the activity.

**5. Leakage:** Aquatic offset design and implementation avoids displacing harm to other locations (including harm to existing biodiversity at the offset site).

**6. Long-term outcomes:** An aquatic offset is managed to secure outcomes of the activity that last at least as long as the impacts, and preferably in perpetuity. Consideration must be given to long-term issues around funding, location, management and monitoring.

**7. Landscape context:** An aquatic offset action is undertaken where this will result in the best ecological outcome, preferably close to the impact site or within the same ecological district. The action considers the landscape context of both the impact site and the offset site, taking into account interactions between species, habitats and ecosystems, spatial and hydrological connections, and ecosystem function.

**8. Time lags:** The delay between loss of extent or values at the impact site and the gain or maturity of extent or values at the offset site is minimised so that the calculated gains are achieved within the consent period or, as appropriate, a longer period (but not more than 35 years).

**9. Science and mātauranga Māori:** The design and implementation of an aquatic offset is a documented process informed by science where available, and mātauranga Māori at place.

**10. Tangata whenua or stakeholder participation:** Opportunity for the effective and early participation of tangata whenua or stakeholders is demonstrated when planning aquatic offsets, including their evaluation, selection, design, implementation, and monitoring.

**11. Transparency:** The design and implementation of an aquatic offset, and communication of its results

to the public, is undertaken in a transparent and timely manner.

## **APP4B – Principles for aquatic compensation**

These principles apply to the use of aquatic compensation for the loss of extent or values of natural inland wetlands and rivers (“extent or values” below).

**1. Adherence to effects management hierarchy:** Aquatic compensation is a commitment to redress more than minor residual adverse effects, and should be contemplated only after steps to avoid, minimise, remedy, and offset adverse effects are demonstrated to have been sequentially exhausted.

**2. When aquatic compensation is not appropriate:** Aquatic compensation is not appropriate where, in terms of conservation outcomes, the extent or values are not able to be compensated for. Examples of aquatic compensation not being appropriate would include where:

(a) the affected part of the natural inland wetland or river bed, or its values, including species, are irreplaceable or vulnerable:

(b) effects on the extent or values are uncertain, unknown, or little understood, but potential effects are significantly adverse:

(c) there are no technically feasible options by which to secure gains within an acceptable timeframe.

**3. Scale of aquatic compensation:** The extent or values to be lost through the activity to which the aquatic compensation applies are addressed by positive effects that outweigh the adverse effects.

**4. Additionality:** Aquatic compensation achieves gains in extent or values above and beyond gains that would have occurred in the absence of the compensation, such as gains that are additional to any minimisation and remediation or offsetting undertaken in relation to the adverse effects of the activity.

**5. Leakage:** Aquatic compensation design and implementation avoids displacing harm to other locations (including harm to existing biodiversity at the compensation site).

**6. Long-term outcomes:** Aquatic compensation is managed to secure outcomes of the activity that last as long as the impacts, and preferably in perpetuity. Consideration must be given to long-term issues around funding, location, management, and monitoring.

**7. Landscape context:** An aquatic compensation action is undertaken where this will result in the best ecological outcome, preferably close to the impact site or within the same ecological district. The action considers the landscape context of both the impact site and the compensation site, taking into account interactions between species, habitats and ecosystems, spatial and hydrological connections, and ecosystem function.

**8. Time lags:** The delay between loss of extent or values at the impact site and the gain or maturity of extent or values at the compensation site is minimised so that the calculated gains are achieved within the consent period or, as appropriate, a longer period (but not more than 35 years).

**9. Trading up:** When trading up forms part of aquatic compensation, the proposal demonstrates that the aquatic extent or values gained are demonstrably of greater or higher value than those lost. The proposal also shows the values lost are not to Threatened or At Risk/Declining species or to species considered vulnerable or irreplaceable.

**10. Financial contribution:** A financial contribution is only considered if it directly funds an intended aquatic gain or benefit that complies with the rest of these principles.

**11. Science and mātauranga Māori:** The design and implementation of aquatic compensation is a documented process informed by science where available, and mātauranga Māori at place.

**12. Tangata whenua or stakeholder participation:** Opportunity for the effective and early participation of tangata whenua or stakeholders is demonstrated when planning aquatic compensation, including its evaluation, selection, design, implementation, and monitoring.

**13. Transparency:** The design and implementation of aquatic compensation, and communication of its results to the public, is undertaken in a transparent and timely manner.



## APP5 – Species prone to *wilding conifer* spread

Table 5: Species prone to *wilding conifer* spread

Common name	Botanical name
Big cone pine	<i>Pinus coulteri</i>
Bishops pine	<i>Pinus muricata</i>
Contorta (lodgepole) pine	<i>Pinus contorta</i>
Corsican pine, Black pine	<i>Pinus nigra</i>
Douglas fir	<i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i>
Dwarf mountain pine	<i>Pinus uncinata</i>
Japanese cedar	<i>Cryptomeria japonica</i>
Japanese larch	<i>Larix kaempferi</i>
Larch	<i>Larix decidua</i>
Lawson's cypress	<i>Chamaecyparis lawsoniana</i>
Macrocarpa	<i>Cupressus macrocarpa</i>
Maritime pine	<i>Pinus pinaster</i>
Mountain pine	<i>Pinus mugo</i>
Norfolk Island pine	<i>Araucaria heterophylla</i>
Norway spruce	<i>Picea abies</i>
Patula pine	<i>Pinus patula</i>
Pine	<i>Pinus sp./Pine</i>
Ponderosa pine	<i>Pinus ponderosa</i>
Radiata pine	<i>Pinus radiata</i>
Scots pine	<i>Pinus sylvestris</i>
Sitka spruce	<i>Picea sylvestris</i>
Slash pine	<i>Pinus elliottii</i>
Spruce	<i>Picea sp.</i>
Strobus pine	<i>Pinus strobus</i>
Western red cedar	<i>Thuja plicata</i>
Western white pine	<i>Pinus monticola</i>

## APP6 – Methodology for *natural hazard risk assessment*

Undertake the following four step process to determine the *natural hazard risk*.

### Step 1 – Determine the likelihood

- (1) Using Table 6, assess the likelihood of three *natural hazard* scenarios occurring, representing a high likelihood, median likelihood, and the maximum credible event, using the best available information;
- (2) Use table 6 to assign a likelihood descriptor to the three natural hazard scenarios.
- (3) The likelihood assessment shall include consideration of the *effect of climate change* and should use the Shared Socio-Economic Pathway (SSP) scenarios or Representative Concentration Pathways (RCP) scenarios provided in the National Adaptation Plan.<sup>2079</sup>

Table 6: Likelihood scale

Likelihood	Indicative frequency
Almost certain	Up to once every 50 years (2% AEP)
Likely	Once every 51 – 100 years (2 – 1% AEP)
Possible	Once every 101 – 1,000 years (1 – 0.11% AEP)
Unlikely	Once every 1,001 – 2,500 years (0.1 – 0.04% AEP)
Rare	2,501 years plus (<0.04% AEP)

### Step 2 – *Natural hazard consequence*

**Advice note 1:** Table 7 shall be utilised by *local authorities* determining the level of *risk* presented by a hazard(s) when undertaking plan change or plan review processes.

**Advice note 2:** The matters listed in (1) to (11) provide useful considerations for *local authorities* and are the primary considerations for resource consent applications triggering a *risk assessment* requirement in accordance with HAZ-NH-M3(7)(a) or HAZ-NH-M4(7)(a).<sup>2080</sup>

Using Table 7 and the matters listed in (1) to (10) below, assess the consequence (catastrophic, major, moderate, minor, or insignificant) of the *natural hazard* scenarios identified in step 1 considering:

- (1) the nature and scale<sup>2081</sup> of activities in the area,
- (2) individual and community vulnerability and resilience,<sup>2082</sup>
- (3) impacts on individual and community health and safety,
- (4) impacts on social, cultural and economic well-being,
- (5) impacts on *infrastructure* and property, including access and services,
- (6) available and viable *risk* reduction and hazard mitigation measures,
- (7) *lifeline utilities*, essential and emergency services, and their co-dependence,

<sup>2079</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2080</sup> 00301.055 Port Otago

<sup>2081</sup> 00411.091 Wayfare

<sup>2082</sup> 00411.091 Wayfare

- (8) implications for civil defence agencies and emergency services,
- (9) the changing *natural hazard* environment,
- (10) cumulative *effects* including *multiple* and *cascading hazards*, where present, and
- (11) factors that may exacerbate a *natural hazard* event including the *effects* of *climate change*.

Table 7: Consequence table

Severity of Impact	Built				Health & Safety
	Social/Cultural	Buildings	Critical Buildings	Lifelines	
<b>Catastrophic</b>  (V)	≥25% of <i>buildings</i> of social/cultural significance within hazard <u>impact area zone</u> <sup>2083</sup> have functionality compromised	≥50% of <del>affected</del> <sup>2084</sup> <i>buildings</i> within hazard <u>impact area zone</u> <sup>2085</sup> have functionality compromised	≥25% of critical facilities within hazard <u>impact area zone</u> <sup>2086</sup> have functionality compromised	Out of service for > 1 month (affecting ≥20% of the town/city population) OR suburbs out of service for > 6 months (affecting < 20% of the town/city population)	> 101 dead and/or > 1001 injured <sup>2087</sup>
<b>Major</b>  (IV)	11-24% of <i>buildings</i> of social/cultural significance within hazard <u>impact area zone</u> <sup>2088</sup> have functionality compromised	21-49% of <i>buildings</i> within hazard <u>impact area zone</u> <sup>2089</sup> have functionality compromised	11-24% of <i>buildings</i> within hazard <u>impact area zone</u> <sup>2090</sup> have functionality compromised	Out of service for 1 week – 1 month (affecting ≥20% of the town/city population) OR suburbs out of service for 6 weeks to 6 months (affecting < 20% of the town/city population)	11 – 100 dead and/or 101 – 1000 injured <sup>2091</sup>
<b>Moderate</b>  (III)	6-10% of <i>buildings</i> of social/cultural significance within hazard <u>impact area zone</u> <sup>2092</sup> have functionality compromised	11-20% of <i>buildings</i> within hazard <u>impact area zone</u> <sup>2093</sup> have functionality compromised	6-10% of <i>buildings</i> within hazard <u>impact area zone</u> <sup>2094</sup> have functionality compromised	Out of service for 1 day to 1 week (affecting ≥20% of the town/city population) OR suburbs out of service for 1 week to 6 weeks (affecting < 20% of the town/city population)	2 – 20 dead and/or 11 – 100 injured <sup>2095</sup>
<b>Minor</b>  (II)	1-5% of <i>buildings</i> of social/cultural significance within hazard <u>impact area</u>	2-10% of <i>buildings</i> within hazard <u>impact area</u>	1-5% of <i>buildings</i> within hazard <u>impact area</u>	Out of service for 2 hours to 1 day (affecting ≥20% of the town/city population) OR suburbs out of service for 1 day to 1 week (affecting < 20% of the town/city population)	1 dead and/or 1 – 10 injured

<sup>2083</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2084</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>2085</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2086</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2087</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2088</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2089</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2090</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2091</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2092</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2093</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2094</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2095</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

	<del>zone</del> <sup>2096</sup> have functionality compromised	<del>area zone</del> <sup>2097</sup> have functionality compromised	<del>zone</del> <sup>2098</sup> have functionality compromised		
<b>Insignificant</b>  <b>(I)</b>	No <i>buildings</i> of social/cultural significance within hazard <u>impact area</u> <del>zone</del> <sup>2099</sup> have functionality compromised	< 1% of <del>affected</del> <sup>2100</sup> <i>buildings</i> within hazard <u>impact area</u> <del>zone</del> <sup>2101</sup> have functionality compromised	No damage within hazard <u>impact area</u> <del>zone</del> <sup>2102</sup> , fully functional	Out of service for up to 2 hours (affecting ≥20% of the town/city population) OR suburbs out of service for up to 1 day (affecting < 20% of the town/city population)	No dead No injured

When assessing consequences within this matrix, the final level of impact is assessed on the ‘first past the post’ principle, in that the consequence with the highest severity of impact applies. For example, if a *natural hazard* event resulted in moderate severity of impact across all of the categories, with the exception of critical *buildings* which had a ‘major’ severity of impact, the major impact is what the proposal would be assessed on. If a *natural hazard* event resulted in all of the consequences being at the same level (for example, all of the consequences are rated moderate), then the level of consequence is considered to be moderate.

When this assessment is being undertaken in accordance with HAZ-NH-M3(7)(a) or HAZ-NH-M4(7)(a) the text within Step 2 shall guide the assessment of *natural hazard* consequence.<sup>2103</sup>

### Step 3 – Assessing ~~activities for~~<sup>2104</sup> *natural hazard risk*

Using the information within steps 1 and 2 above, complete Table 8 for each of the hazard scenarios considered, and identify if the risk from each of the scenarios is and Table 8, assess whether the *natural hazard* scenarios will have an<sup>2105</sup> acceptable, tolerable, or significant *risk* to people, property and communities, by considering:

- ~~(1) the *natural hazard risk* identified, including *residual risk*,~~
- ~~(2) any measures to avoid, remedy or mitigate those *risks*, including relocation and recovery methods,~~
- ~~(3) the long-term viability and affordability of those measures,~~
- ~~(4) flow on *effects* of the *risk* to other activities, individuals and communities, and~~
- ~~(5) the availability of, and ability to provide, *lifeline utilities*, and essential and emergency services, during and after a *natural hazard* event.<sup>2106</sup>~~

<sup>2096</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2097</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2098</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2099</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2100</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>2101</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2102</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2103</sup> 00301.055 Port Otago

<sup>2104</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2105</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2106</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

Table 8: Risk table

Likelihood	Consequences				
	Insignificant	Minor	Moderate	Major	Catastrophic
Almost certain	Green	Yellow	Yellow	Red	Red
Likely	Green	Green	Yellow	Yellow	Red
Possible	Green	Green	Yellow	Yellow	Red
Unlikely	Green	Green	Green	Green	Yellow
Rare	Green	Green	Green	Green	Yellow

Green, Acceptable Risk: Yellow, Tolerable Risk: Red, Significant Risk, Hatching: Quantitative assessment required<sup>2107</sup>

Notes:

Table 8 above has been included as a region-wide baseline. As set out in HAZ–NH–M2(1) local authorities are required to undertake a consultation process with communities, stakeholders and partners regarding risk levels thresholds and develop a risk table at a district or community scale. This region-wide baseline is to be used in the absence of a district or community scale risk table being developed.

When this assessment is being undertaken in accordance with HAZ–NH–M3(7)(a) or HAZ–NH–M4(7)(a) the text within Step 3 shall guide the assessment of natural hazard risk.<sup>2108</sup>

**Step 4 – Undertake a quantitative risk assessment**

While Steps 1-3 will qualitatively categorise natural hazard risk based on a community’s understanding and acceptance level of risk, it will not provide quantitative understanding of the risk a natural hazard presents to the built environment, or health and safety.

If the assessment undertaken in Steps 1-3 determines that one of the three natural hazard scenarios generate risk that is significant, or a tolerable risk with a catastrophic consequence,<sup>2109</sup> undertake a quantitative risk assessment utilising the following methodology:<sup>2110</sup>

- (1) Based on the likelihood of a natural hazard event within the hazard zone (see Step 1), and including the potential impacts of climate change and sea level rise, select a representative range

<sup>2107</sup> 00415.002 ORC

<sup>2108</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2109</sup> 00415.002 ORC

<sup>2110</sup> This methodology has been developed in general accordance with the Australian Geomechanics Society, 2007 methodology, which may usefully provide additional guidance. (New footnote attributed to 00138.147 QLDC)

of at least ~~three~~ five<sup>2111</sup> hazard scenarios with varying likelihoods to model,<sup>2112</sup> including the maximum credible event.

- (2) Model the Annual Individual Fatality Risk (AIFR)<sup>2113</sup> and Annual Property Risk (APR)<sup>2114</sup> for the range of hazard scenarios across the hazard zone, and create loss exceedance distributions.
- (3) Analyse loss exceedance distributions and determine losses.
- (4) Assign the risk level ~~Implementing a first-past-the-post principle for the AIFR and APR:~~<sup>2115</sup>
  - (a) for areas of new development where the greatest AIFR or APR is:
    - (i) less than  $1 \times 10^{-6}$  per year, the *risk* is re-categorised as acceptable,
    - (ii) between  $1 \times 10^{-6}$  and  $1 \times 10^{-5}$  per year, the *risk* is re-categorised as tolerable, or
    - (iii) greater than  $1 \times 10^{-5}$  per year, the *risk* is re-categorised as significant.
  - (b) for areas with existing development, where the greatest AIFR or APR is:
    - (i) less than  $1 \times 10^{-5}$  per year, the *risk* is re-categorised as acceptable;
    - (ii) between  $1 \times 10^{-5}$  and  $1 \times 10^{-4}$  per year, the *risk* is re-categorised as tolerable; or
    - (iii) greater than  $1 \times 10^{-4}$  per year, the *risk* is re-categorised as significant.

~~(5) Following the quantitative risk assessment, a risk level is assigned to the hazard area.~~

AIFR and APR are the selected *risk* metrics as they represent the likely consequences of a wide range of *natural hazards*. For example, some *natural hazards*, generally, do not have the capacity to cause fatalities, but may result in widespread damage to property, while other *natural hazards* have a high capacity to cause fatalities. A first-past-the-post principle to the re-categorisation of *risk* is applied to ensure that decisions are based on the greatest *risk* present between the two metrics.

If the level of knowledge or uncertainty regarding the likelihood or consequences of a *natural hazard* event precludes the use of Step 4, then a precautionary approach to assessing and managing the *risk* should be applied, as set out in HAZ–NH–P5.

---

<sup>2111</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

<sup>2112</sup> The model should include an analysis of uncertainty.

<sup>2113</sup> Annual probability that an individual most at risk is killed in any one year as a result of the hazards occurring.

<sup>2114</sup> Annual probability of total property loss (relating to permanent structures) as a result of the hazards occurring.

<sup>2115</sup> 00138.147 QLDC

## APP7 – Identifying *wāhi tūpuna*

This appendix is a guide to assist in identifying *wāhi tūpuna*. It is not a complete list of all *wāhi tūpuna* in Otago.

Kāi Tahu use the term '*wāhi tūpuna*' to describe landscapes ~~that embody the customary and contemporary relationship of Kāi Tahu and their culture and traditions with Otago.~~ and places that embody the relationship of mana whenua and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu and other taoka.<sup>2116</sup> It is important to understand this concept in the context of the distinctive seasonal lifestyle that Kāi Tahu evolved in the south. The sites and resources used by Kāi Tahu are spread throughout Otago. These places did not function in isolation from one another but were part of a wider cultural setting and pattern of seasonal resource use. The different elements of these areas sites<sup>2117</sup> of significance include:

Table 9: Areas Sites<sup>2118</sup> of significance to Kāi Tahu

<b>Area Site<sup>2119</sup> of significance</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
Ara Tawhito	Ancient trails. A network of trails crossed the region linking the permanent villages with seasonal inland campsites and along the coast, providing access to a range of <u><i>mahika kai mahika kai</i></u> <sup>2120</sup> resources and inland stone resources, including pounamu and silcrete.
Kāika	Permanent settlements or occupation sites. These occurred throughout Otago, particularly in coastal areas.
Nohoaka	These were a network of seasonal settlements. Kāi Tahu were based largely on the coast in permanent settlements and ranged inland on a seasonal basis. Iwi history shows, through place names and whakapapa, continuous occupation of a network of seasonal settlements, which were distributed along the main river systems from the source lakes to the sea.
Wāhi <u><i>mahika kai mahika kai</i></u> <sup>2121</sup>	The places where the customary gathering of food or natural materials occurs. <u><i>Mahika kai Mahika kai</i></u> <sup>2122</sup> is one of the cornerstones of Kāi Tahu culture.
Mauka	Important mountains. Mountains are of great cultural importance to Kāi Tahu. Many are places of spiritual presence, and prominent peaks in the district are linked to Kāi Tahu creation stories, identity and mana.
Marae	The marae atea and the buildings around it, including the wharenuī, wharekai, church and urupā. The sheltering havens of Kāi Tahu cultural expression, a place to gather, kōrero and to welcome visitors. Marae are expressions of Kāi Tahu past and present.
Repo <u>raupō raupō</u> <sup>2123</sup>	Wetlands or swamps. These provide valued habitat for taoka species and <u><i>mahika kai mahika kai</i></u> <sup>2124</sup> resources.
<u>Taumanu</u> <sup>2125</sup>	<u>Fishing sites. These are traditional fishing easements which have been gazetted by the South Island Māori Land Court.</u>

<sup>2116</sup> 00223.135 Ngāi Tahu ki Murihiku

<sup>2117</sup> 00226.327 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>2118</sup> 00226.327 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>2119</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i), Schedule 1, RMA – consequential amendment arising from 00226.327 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>2120</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>2121</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>2122</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>2123</sup> 00226.327 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>2124</sup> Clause 10(2)(b)(i) – consequential amendment arising from 00226.038 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>2125</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

Tauraka waka	Canoe mooring sites. These were important for transport and gathering kai.
Tūāhu	Places of importance to Māori identity. These are generally sacred ground and marked by an object, or a place used for purposes of divination.
<u>Tuhituhi neherā</u> <sup>2126</sup>	<u>Rock art sites.</u>
<del>Taumanu</del> <sup>2127</sup>	<del>Fishing sites. These are traditional fishing easements which have been gazetted by the South Island Māori Land Court.</del>
Umu, Umu-tī	Earth ovens. Used for cooking tī-kōuka (cabbage tree), are found in a diversity of areas, including old stream banks and ancient river terraces, on low spurs or ridges, and in association with other features, such as kāika nohoaka.
Urupā	Human burial sites. These include historic burial sites associated with kāika, and contemporary sites, such as the urupā at Ōtākou and Puketeraki marae.
Wāhi kōhatu	Rock outcrops. Rocky outcrops provided excellent shelters and were intensively occupied by Māori from the moa-hunter period into early European settlement during seasonal hikoī. Tuhituhi neherā (rock art) may be present due to the occupation of such places by the tūpuna.

Wāhi pakaka	Battle sites. Historic battle sites occur throughout Otago, such as that at Ohinepouwera ( <u>Waikōuaiti</u> <del>Waikouaiti</del> <sup>2128</sup> sandspit) where Taoka's warriors camped for six months while they laid siege on Te Wera on the Huriawa Peninsula.
Wāhi paripari	Cliff areas.
Wāhi taoka	Resources, places and sites treasured by <i>mana whenua</i> . These valued places reflect the long history and association of Kāi Tahu with Otago.
Wāhi tapu	Places sacred to Kāi Tahu. These occur throughout Otago and include urupā (human burial sites).
Wāhi tohu	Features used as location markers within the landscape. Prominent landforms formed part of the network of trails along the coast and inland.
Wai Māori	Freshwater areas important to Māori, including wai puna (springs), roto (lakes) and awa (rivers).

<sup>2126</sup> 00226.327 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

<sup>2127</sup> See above.

<sup>2128</sup> 00226.024 Kāi Tahu ki Otago



## APP8 – Identification criteria for places and areas of *historic heritage*

### 1. Identifying Areas and Places with Historic Heritage<sup>2129</sup>

A place or area is considered to have *historic heritage* if it meets any one or more of criteria below:  
<sup>2130</sup>

<b>Aesthetic</b>	<del>The place has, or includes, aesthetic qualities that are considered to be especially pleasing, particularly beautiful, or overwhelming to the senses, eliciting an emotional response. These qualities are demonstrably valued, either by an existing community or the general public, to the extent that they could be expected to experience a sense of loss if the qualities which evoke the aesthetic value were no longer there.</del>
<b>Archaeological</b>	The place provides, or is demonstrably likely to provide, physical evidence of human activity that could be investigated using archaeological methods. Evidence obtained from an archaeological investigation could be expected to be of significance in answering research questions, or as a new or important source of information about an aspect of New Zealand history.
<b>Architectural</b>	The place reflects identifiable methods of construction or architectural styles or movements. When compared with other similar examples, or in the view of experts or relevant practitioners, it has characteristics reflecting a significant development in this country's architecture. Alternatively, or in conjunction with this, the place is an important or representative example of architecture associated with a particular region or the wider New Zealand landscape.
<b>Cultural</b>	The place reflects significant aspects of an identifiable culture and it can be demonstrated that the place is valued by the associated cultural group as an important or representative expression of that culture.
<b>Historic</b>	The place contributes to the understanding of a significant aspect of New Zealand history and has characteristics making it particularly useful for enhancing understanding of this aspect of history, especially when compared to other similar places.
<b>Scientific</b>	The place includes, or is demonstrably likely to include, fabric expected to be of significance in answering research questions or a new or important source of information about an aspect of New Zealand's cultural or historical past through the use of specified scientific methods of enquiry.

<sup>2129</sup> Clause 16(2), Schedule 1, RMA

<sup>2130</sup> The identification criteria in APP8 follows O'Brian, R and Barnes-Wylie J, Guidelines for Assessing Historic Places and Historic Areas for the New Zealand Heritage List/Rārangī Kōrero (2019) which has been adopted by Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga as its Significance Assessment Guidelines, with the exception that the 'Aesthetic' criterion has been removed. (00123.003 Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga, 00139.239 DCC)

- Social** The place has a clearly associated community that developed because of the place, and its special characteristics. The community has demonstrated that it values the place to a significant degree because it brings its members together, and they might be expected to feel a collective sense of loss if they were no longer able to use, see, experience or interact with the place.
- Spiritual** The place is associated with a community or group who value the place for its religious, mystical or sacred meaning, association or symbolism. The community or group regard the place with reverence, veneration and respect, and they might be expected to feel a collective sense of loss if they were no longer able to use, see, experience or interact with the place.
- Technological** The place includes physical evidence of a technological advance or method that was widely adopted, particularly innovative, or which made a significant contribution to New Zealand history  
OR  
The place reflects significant technical accomplishment in comparison with other similar examples or, in the view of experts or practitioners in the field, has characteristics making the place particularly able to contribute towards our understanding of this technology.
- Traditional** The place reflects a tradition that has been passed down by a community or culture for a long period, usually generations and especially since before living memory, and has characteristics reflecting important or representative aspects of this tradition to a significant extent.

The significance of areas and places with *historic heritage* will be assessed having regard to the following criteria:

**Identification of Special or Outstanding Heritage Values or Qualities**

Where, for example, in a resource consent or notice of requirement process, a place or an area that has been identified as having historic heritage values or qualities, and is required to be assessed to determine whether those values or qualities are special or outstanding, that assessment must:<sup>2131</sup>

(1) utilise the following criteria:

- (1a) the extent to which the place reflects important or representative aspects of Otago or New Zealand history,
- (2b) the association of the place with events, persons, or ideas of importance in Otago or New Zealand history,
- (3c) the potential of the place to provide knowledge of Otago or New Zealand history,
- (4d) the importance of the place to mana whenuas, ~~mana whenuas~~,
- (5e) the community association with, or public esteem for, the place,
- (6f) the potential of the place for public education,
- (7g) the technical accomplishment, value, or design of the place,

<sup>2131</sup> 00137.144 Director General of Conservation

- (8h) the symbolic or commemorative value of the place,
  - (9i) the importance of identifying historic places known to date from an early period of Otago's or New Zealand's settlement,
  - (10j) the importance of identifying rare types of historic places, and
  - (11k) the extent to which the place forms part of a wider historical and cultural area, and
- (2) apply the method set out in "Part Two: Applying the section 66(3) criteria" of Assessing Historic Places and Historic Areas for the New Zealand Heritage List/Rārangi Kōrero (2019).

## **~~APP9 – Identification criteria for outstanding and highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes~~**

The areas and the values of outstanding and *highly valued natural features, landscapes and seascapes* are identified using the following attributes:

- |                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b><del>Physical attributes</del></b>    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><del>(a) Natural science factors, including geological, topographical, ecological and dynamic components.</del></li><li><del>(b) The presence of <i>water</i> including in seas, <i>lakes, rivers</i> and streams.</del></li><li><del>(c) Vegetation (native and exotic).</del></li></ul>                                                                                                                                          |
| <b><del>Sensory attributes</del></b>     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><del>(d) Legibility or expressiveness – how obviously the feature, landscape or seascape demonstrates its formative processes.</del></li><li><del>(e) Aesthetic values including memorability and naturalness.</del></li><li><del>(f) Transient values, including presence of wildlife or other values at certain times of the day or year.</del></li><li><del>(g) Wild or scenic values.</del></li><li><del>(h) –</del></li></ul> |
| <b><del>Associative attributes</del></b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><del>(h) Whether the values are shared and recognised.</del></li><li><del>(i) Cultural and spiritual values for Kāi Tahu, identified by working, as far as practicable, in accordance with tikanga Māori, including their expression as cultural landscapes and features.</del></li><li><del>(j) Historical and heritage associations.</del></li></ul>                                                                             |

## APP10 – Housing bottom lines

Table 10: Bottom lines for development capacity

<b>Tier 2 Urban Environment</b>	<b>Short- Medium Term (0-10 years)</b>	<b>Long Term (11-30 years)</b>
<b>Queenstown</b>		
<b>Dunedin</b>		

Note: This schedule will be amended or reamended in accordance with the National Policy Statement for Urban Development 2020, without using RMA Schedule 1, as soon as practicable following the publication of any relevant *Housing and Business Development Capacity Assessment*, the first of which is due to be completed by 31 July 2021.

## **APP11 – Accidental Discovery Protocol**<sup>2132</sup>

If an unidentified *archaeological site* is located during works, the following applies:

1. Work must cease immediately at that place and within 20m around the site.
2. The contractor must shut down all machinery, secure the area, and advise the Site Manager.
3. The Site Manager must secure the site and notify the Heritage New Zealand Regional Archaeologist. Further assessment by an archaeologist may be required.
4. If the site is of Māori origin, the Site Manager must notify the Heritage New Zealand Regional Archaeologist and the appropriate papatipu rūnaka of the discovery and ensure site access to enable appropriate cultural procedures and tikaka to be undertaken, as long as all statutory requirements under legislation are met (Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act, Protected Objects Act).
5. If human remains (kōiwi) are uncovered the Site Manager must advise the Heritage New Zealand Regional Archaeologist, NZ Police and the appropriate papatipu rūnaka and the above process under 4 must apply. Papatipu rūnaka will lead the management of any kōiwi tangata (human remains of a Māori person) that have been uncovered, in line with the Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Kōiwi Tangata policy 2019. Remains are not to be moved until such time as papatipu rūnaka and Heritage New Zealand have responded.
6. Works affecting the *archaeological site* and any human remains (kōiwi) must not resume until Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga gives written approval for work to continue. Works affecting a site of Māori origin or containing kōiwi tangata must not resume until papatipu rūnaka give written approval for work to continue. Further assessment by an archaeologist may be required.
7. Where iwi so request, any information recorded as the result of the find such as a description of location and content, is to be provided for their records.
8. Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga will advise if an archaeological authority under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 is required for works to continue.

It is an offence under Section 87 of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 to modify or destroy an *archaeological site* without an authority from Heritage New Zealand irrespective of whether the works are permitted or consent has been issued under the Resource Management Act.

## APP12 – Specified highly mobile fauna<sup>2133</sup>

<u>Scientific Name</u>	<u>Common name</u>	<u>Ecosystem</u>	<u>Threat category</u>	<u>Found in Otago?</u>	<u>Listed in ORC's Schedule?</u>
<u><i>Anarhynchus frontalis</i></u>	<u>ngutu parore/wrybill</u>	<u>Coastal/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Increasing)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>Yes</u>
<u><i>Anas chlorotis</i></u>	<u>pāteke/brown teal</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally increasing)</u>		<u>Yes</u>
<u><i>Anas superciliosa superciliosa</i></u>	<u>pārera/grey duck</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Vulnerable)</u>		<u>Yes</u>
<u><i>Anthus novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae</i></u>	<u>pīhoihoi/NZ pipit</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<u><i>Apteryx australis 'northern Fiordland'</i></u>	<u>northern Fiordland tokoeka</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Vulnerable)</u>		
<u><i>Apteryx australis australis</i></u>	<u>southern Fiordland tokoeka</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Endangered)</u>		
<u><i>Apteryx haastii</i></u>	<u>roa/great spotted kiwi</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Vulnerable)</u>		
<u><i>Ardea modesta</i></u>	<u>kotuku/white heron</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Critical)</u>		<u>Yes</u>
<u><i>Botaurus poiciloptilus</i></u>	<u>matuku/bittern</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Critical)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>Yes</u>
<u><i>Bowdleria punctata stewartiana</i></u>	<u>mātātā/Stewart Island fernbird</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Vulnerable)</u>		
<u><i>Bowdleria punctata punctata</i></u>	<u>koroātito/South Island fernbird</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<u><i>Bowdleria punctata vealeae</i></u>	<u>mātātā/North Island fernbird</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>		
<u><i>Calidris canutus rogersi</i></u>	<u>huahou/lesser knot</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Maybe?</u>	

<u><i>Chalinolobus tuberculatus</i></u>	<u>pekapeka/long-tailed bat</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Critical)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>yes</u>
<u><i>Charadrius bicinctus bicinctus</i></u>	<u>pohowera/banded dotterel</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<u><i>Charadrius obscurus aquilonius</i></u>	<u>tūtiriwhatu/northern NZ dotterel</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Increasing)</u>		
<u><i>Charadrius obscurus obscurus</i></u>	<u>tūtiriwhatu/southern NZ dotterel</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Critical)</u>		
<u><i>Chlidonias albostratus</i></u>	<u>tara pirohe/blackfronted tern</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Endangered)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>Yes</u>
<u><i>Egretta sacra sacra</i></u>	<u>matuku moana/reef heron</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Endangered)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>Yes</u>
<u><i>Falco novaeseelandiae ferox</i></u>	<u>kārearea/bush falcon</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Increasing)</u>		
<u><i>Falco novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae</i></u>	<u>kārearea/eastern falcon</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Vulnerable)</u>		
<u><i>Falco novaeseelandiae 'southern'</i></u>	<u>kārearea/southern falcon</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Endangered)</u>		
<u><i>Gallirallus australis greyi</i></u>	<u>North Island weka</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>At Risk (Relict)</u>		
<u><i>Gallirallus philippensis assimilis</i></u>	<u>moho pererū/banded rail</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>		
<u><i>Haematopus finschi</i></u>	<u>tōrea/South Island pied oystercatcher</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<u><i>Haematopus unicolor</i></u>	<u>tōrea tai/variable oystercatcher</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Recovering)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<u><i>Himantopus novaeseelandiae</i></u>	<u>kakī/black stilt</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Critical)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>Yes</u>
<u><i>Hydroprogne caspia</i></u>	<u>taranui/Caspian tern</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Vulnerable)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>Yes</u>



<i>Hymenolaimus malacorhynchos</i>	<u>whio/blue duck</u>	<u>riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Vulnerable)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>Yes</u>
<i>Larus bulleri</i>	<u>tarāpukā/black-billed gull</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<i>Larus novaehollandiae scopulinus</i>	<u>tarāpunga/red-billed gull</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<i>Limosa lapponica baueri</i>	<u>kuaka/eastern bartailed godwit</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<i>Mystacina tuberculata aupourica</i>	<u>pekapeka/northern short-tailed bat</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Endangered)</u>		
<i>Mystacina tuberculata rhyacobia</i>	<u>pekapeka/central shorttailed bat</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>		
<i>Mystacina tuberculata tuberculata</i>	<u>pekapeka/southern short-tailed bat</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>At Risk (Recovering)</u>	<u>Yes / maybe?</u>	
<i>Nestor meridionalis meridionalis</i>	<u>kākā/South Island kākā</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Vulnerable)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<i>Nestor meridionalis septentrionalis</i>	<u>kākā/North Island kākā</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>At Risk (Recovering)</u>		
<i>Nestor notabilis</i>	<u>kea</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Endangered)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<i>Petroica australis australis</i>	<u>kakariwai/South Island robin</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<i>Phalacrocorax varius varius</i>	<u>kāruhiruhi/pied shag</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Recovering)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<i>Podiceps cristatus australis</i>	<u>kāmana/southern crested grebe</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Vulnerable)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>Yes</u>
<i>Poliiocephalus rufopectus</i>	<u>weweia/NZ dabchick</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Increasing)</u>		
<i>Porzana pusilla affinis</i>	<u>koitareke/marsh crake</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
<i>Porzana tabuensis</i>	<u>pūweto/spotless crake</u>	<u>wetland/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>		
<i>Sterna striata striata</i>	<u>tara/white-fronted tern</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>At Risk (Declining)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	

<u><i>Sternula nereis davisae</i></u>	<u>tara iti/NZ fairy tern</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Critical)</u>		
<u><i>Thinornis novaeseelandiae</i></u>	<u>tuturuatu/NZ shore plover</u>	<u>coastal/riverine</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Critical)</u>		
<u><i>Xenicus gilviventris 'northern'</i></u>	<u>pīwauwau/northern rock wren</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Critical)</u>		
<u><i>Xenicus gilviventris 'southern'</i></u>	<u>pīwauwau/southern rock wren</u>	<u>forest/open</u>	<u>Threatened (Nationally Endangered)</u>	<u>Yes</u>	

# Maps

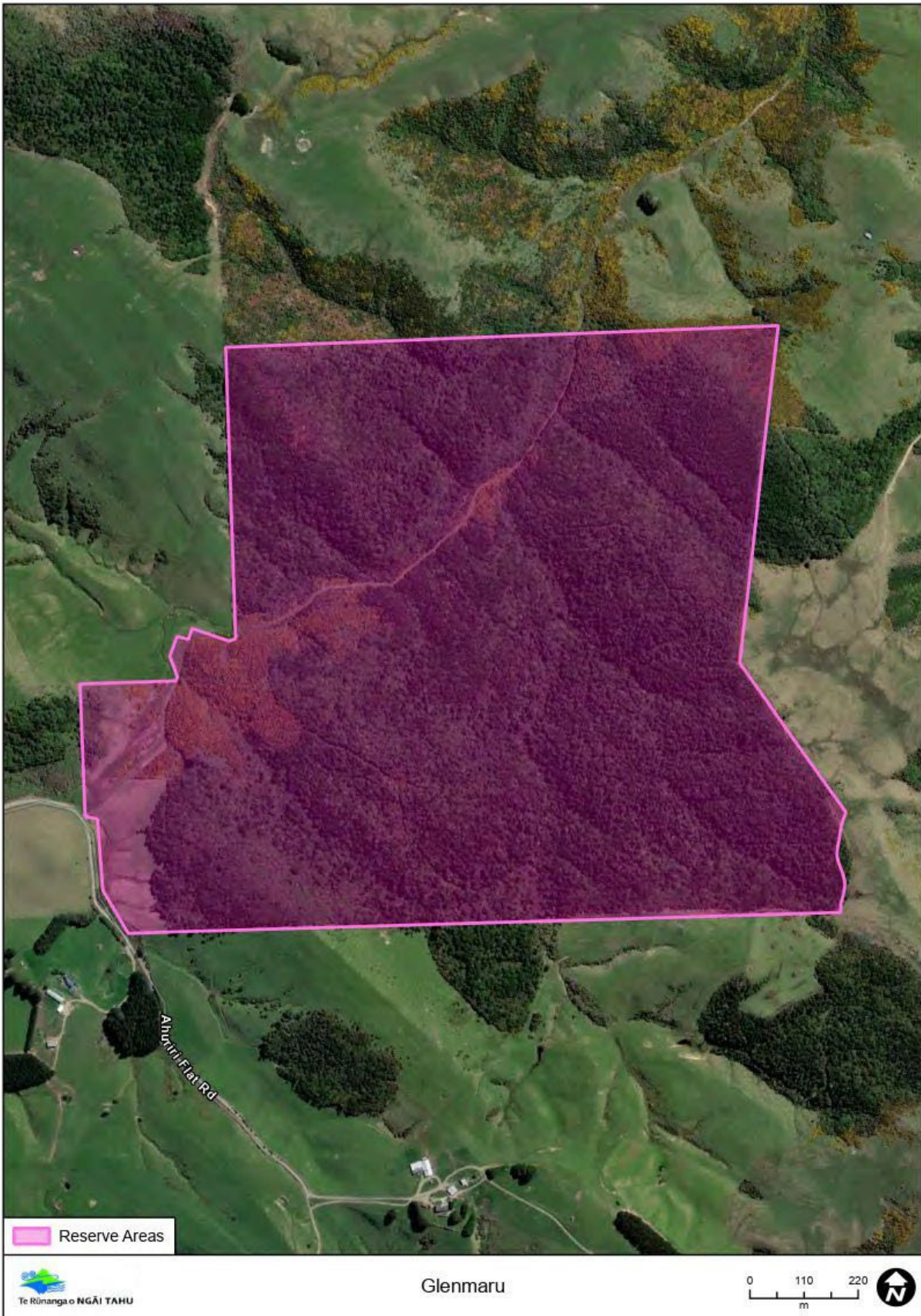
MAP0 – Native Reserves<sup>2134</sup>

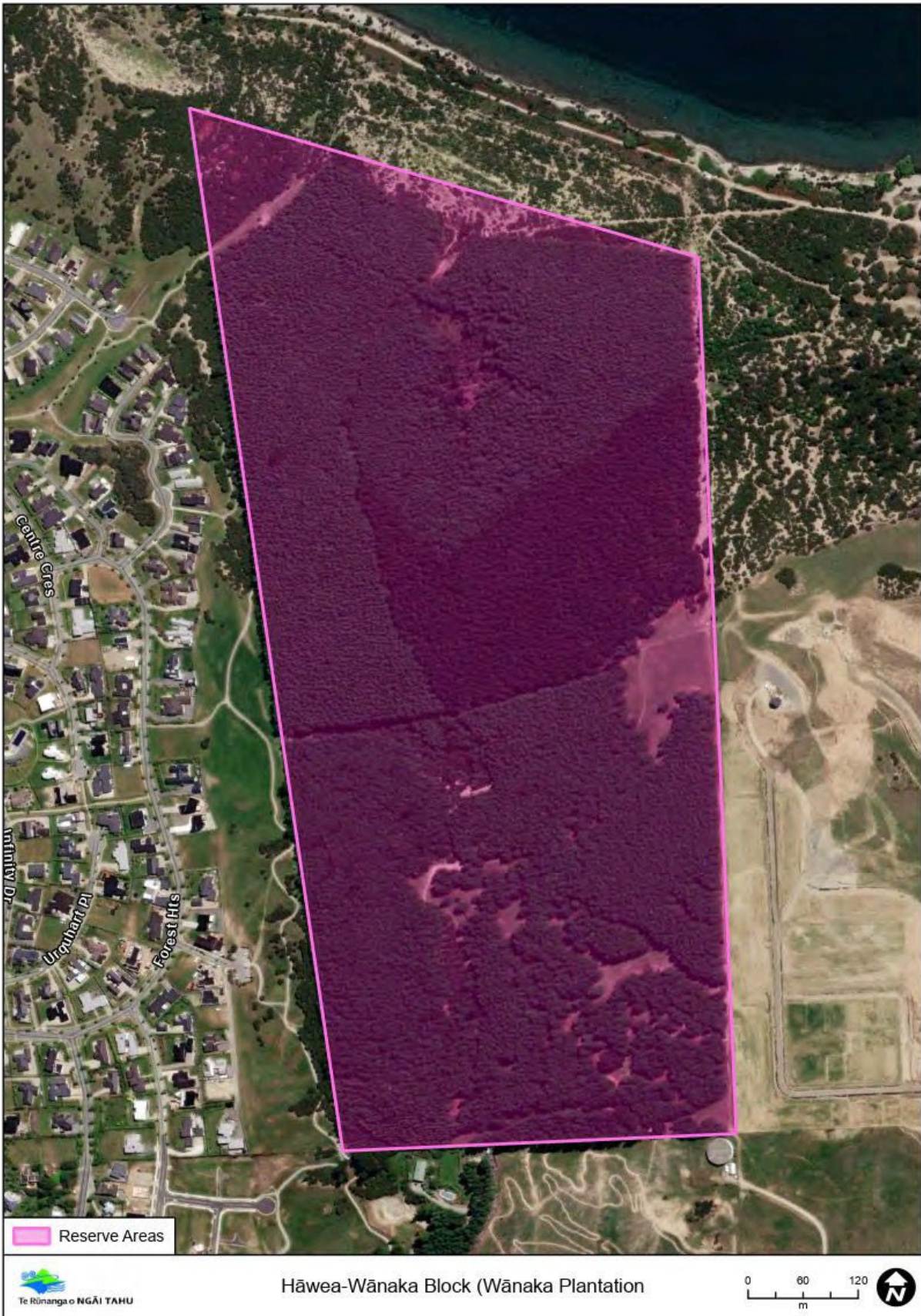


<sup>2134</sup> 00226.329 Kāi Tahu ki Otago

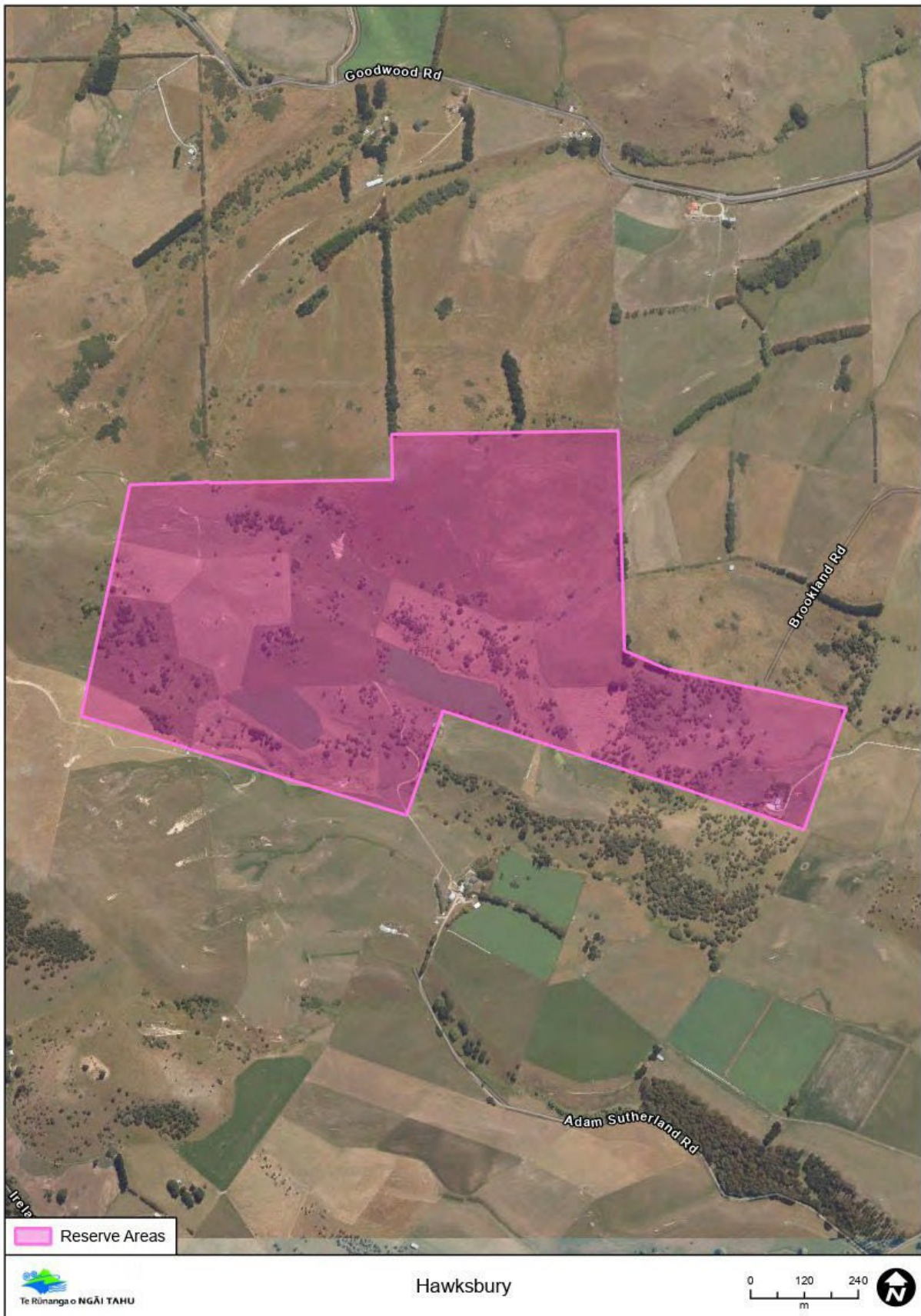


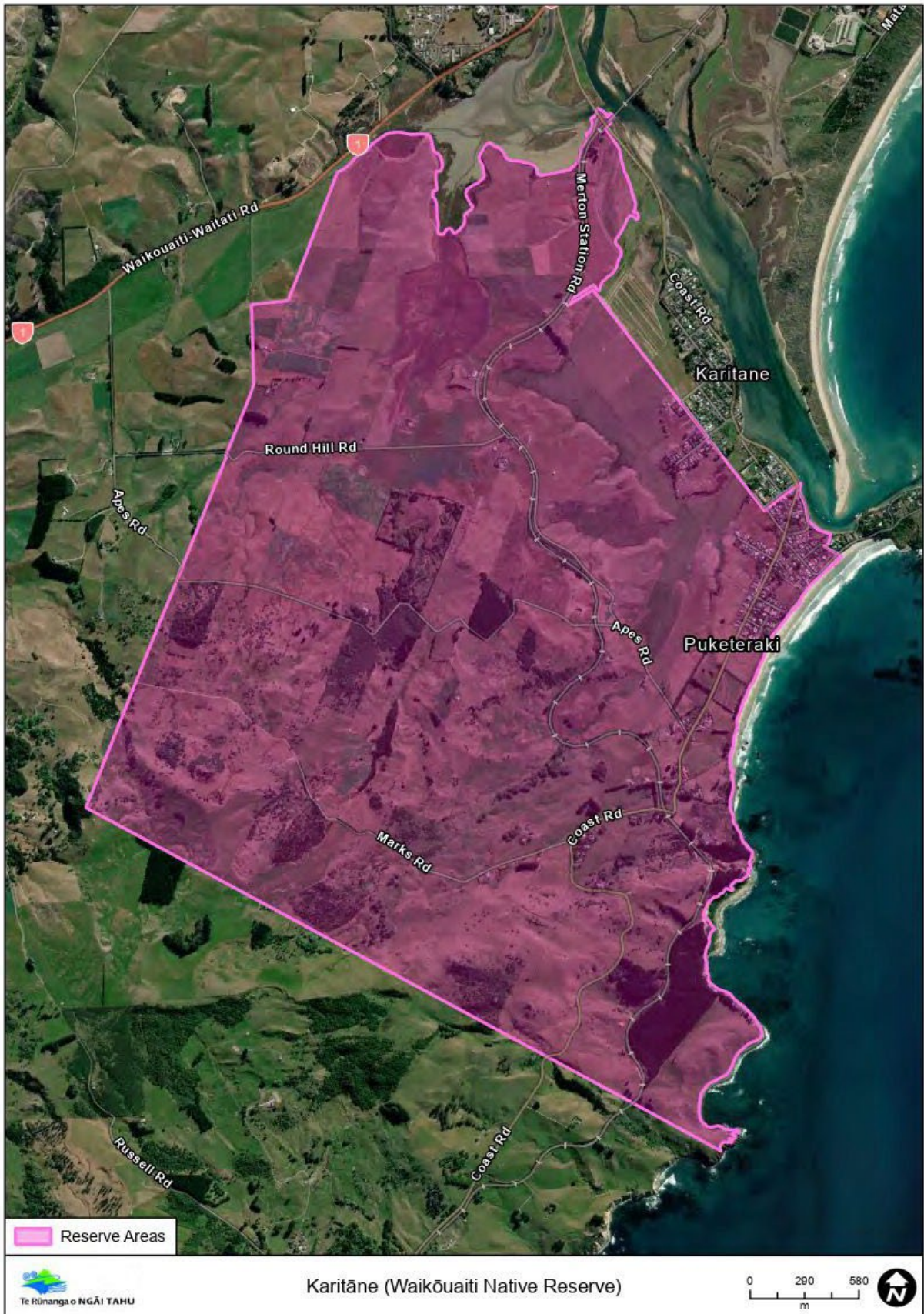




















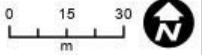




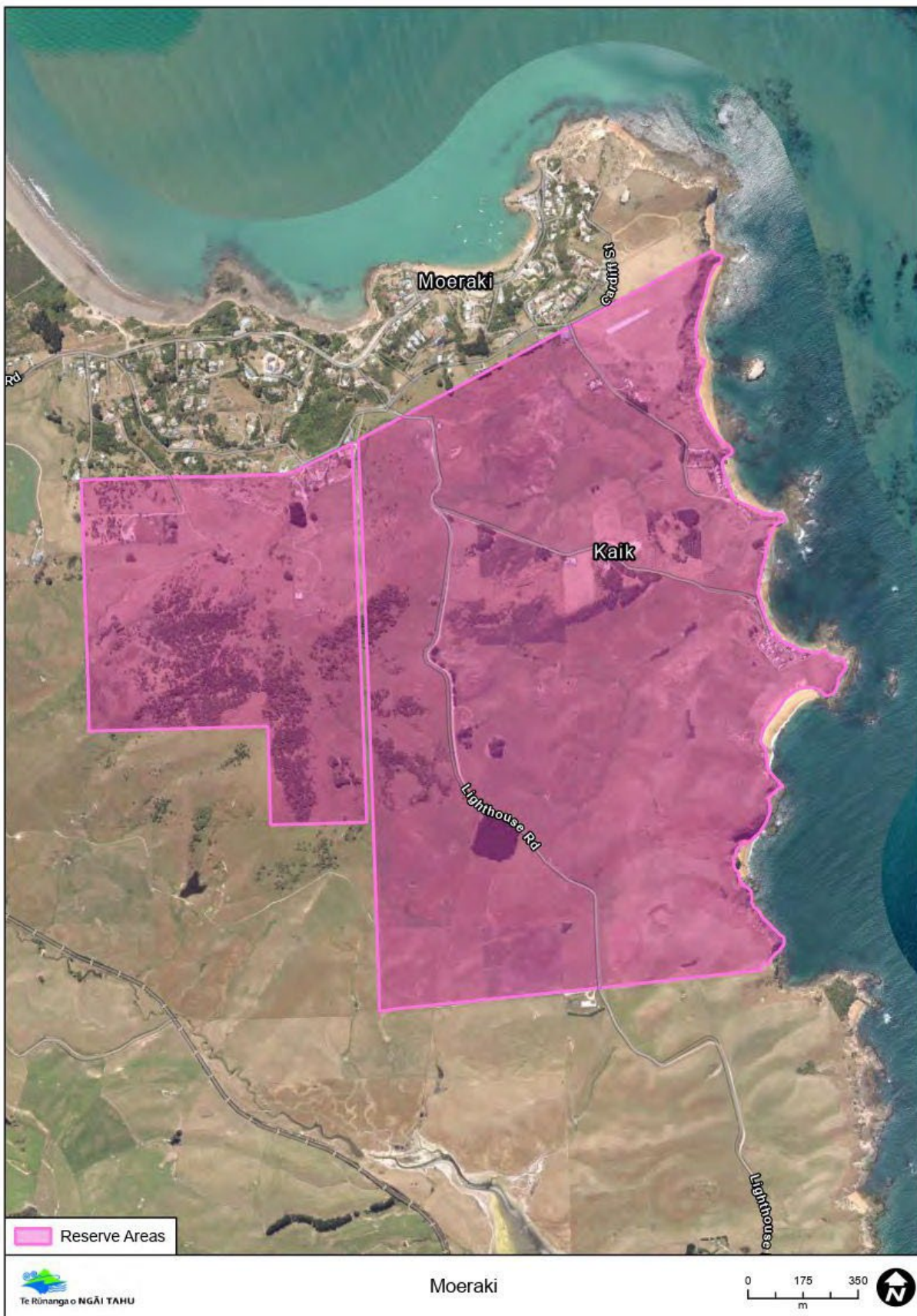
Reserve Areas

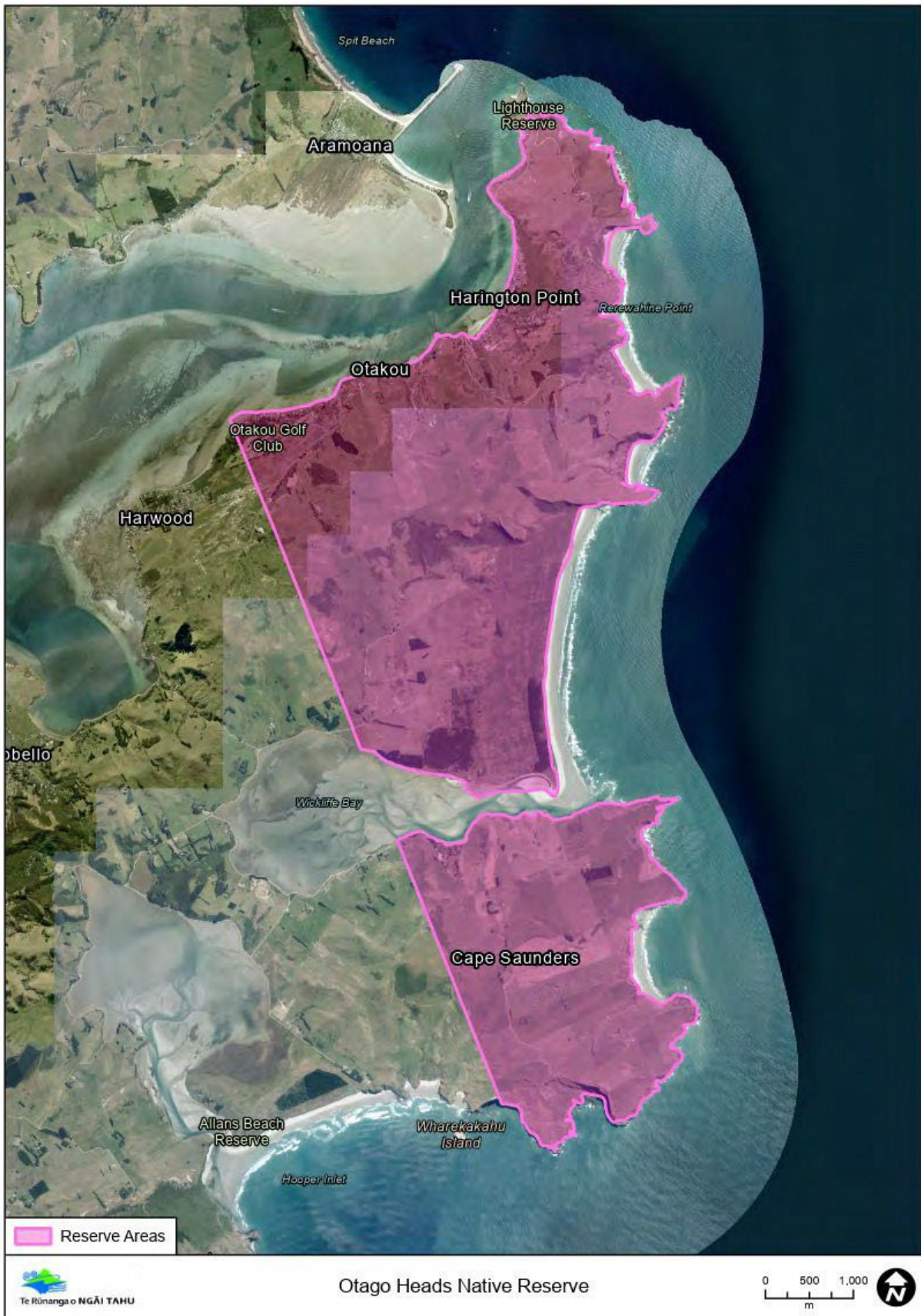


Matainaka and Hawksbury Fishing Easement

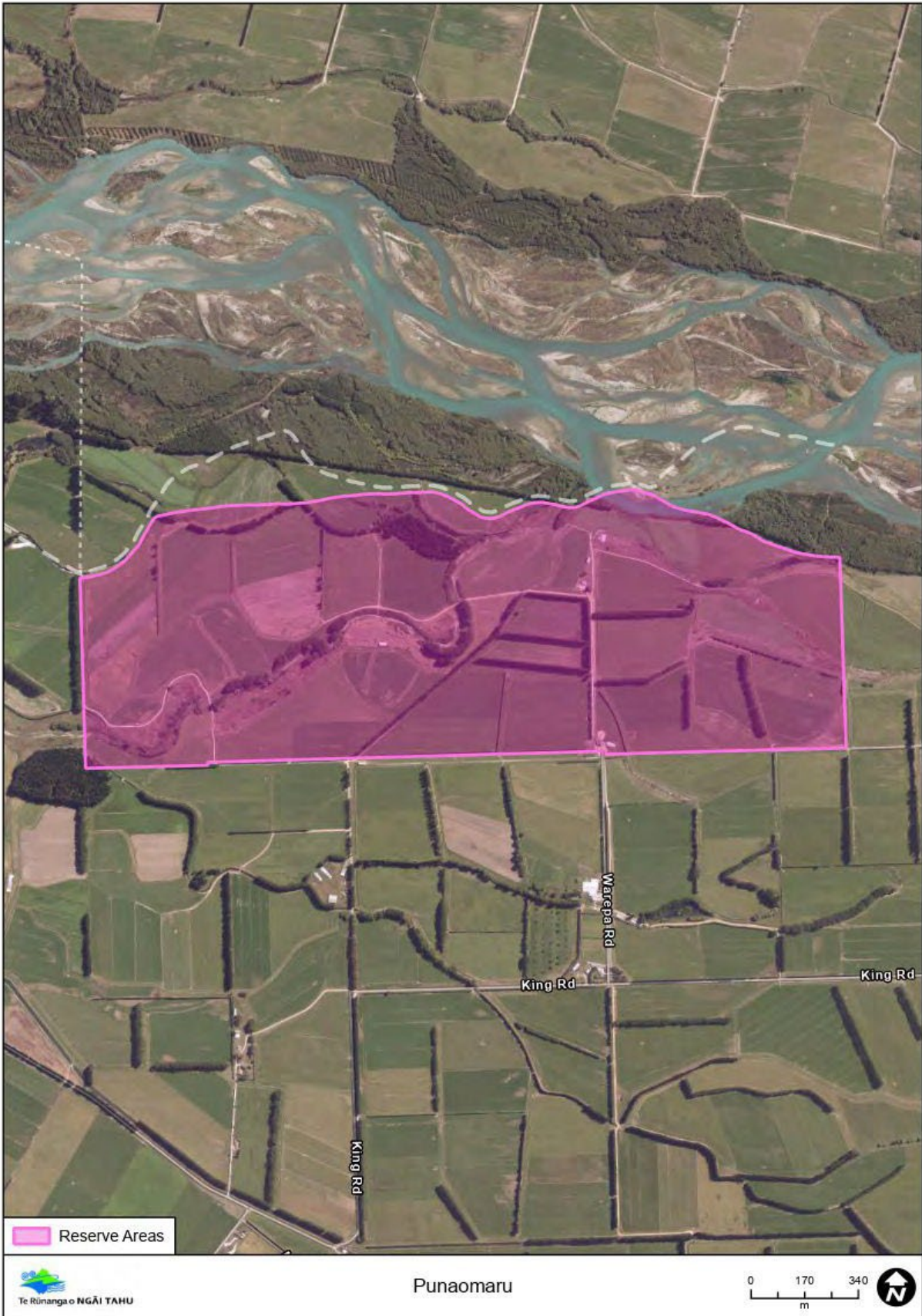


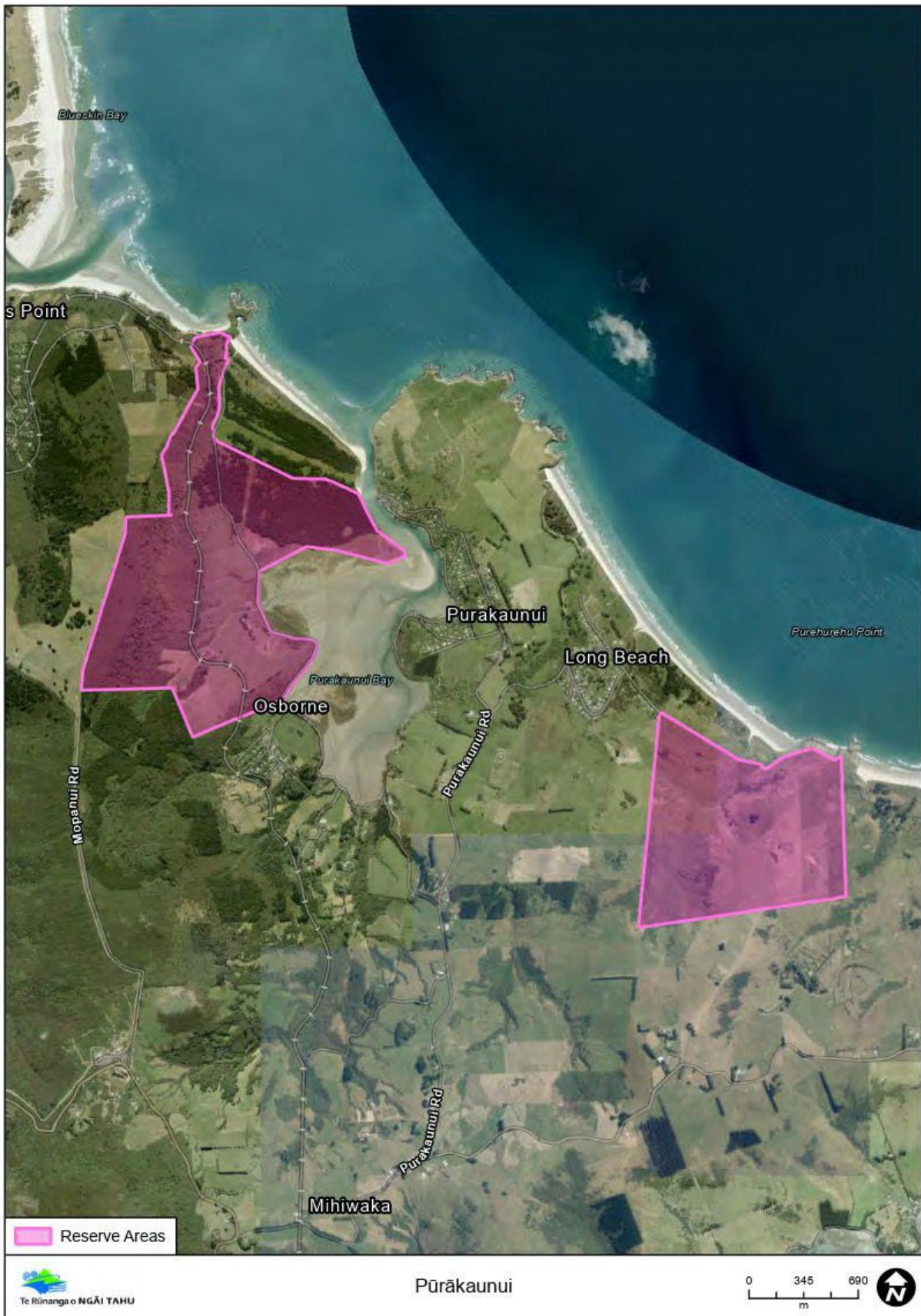


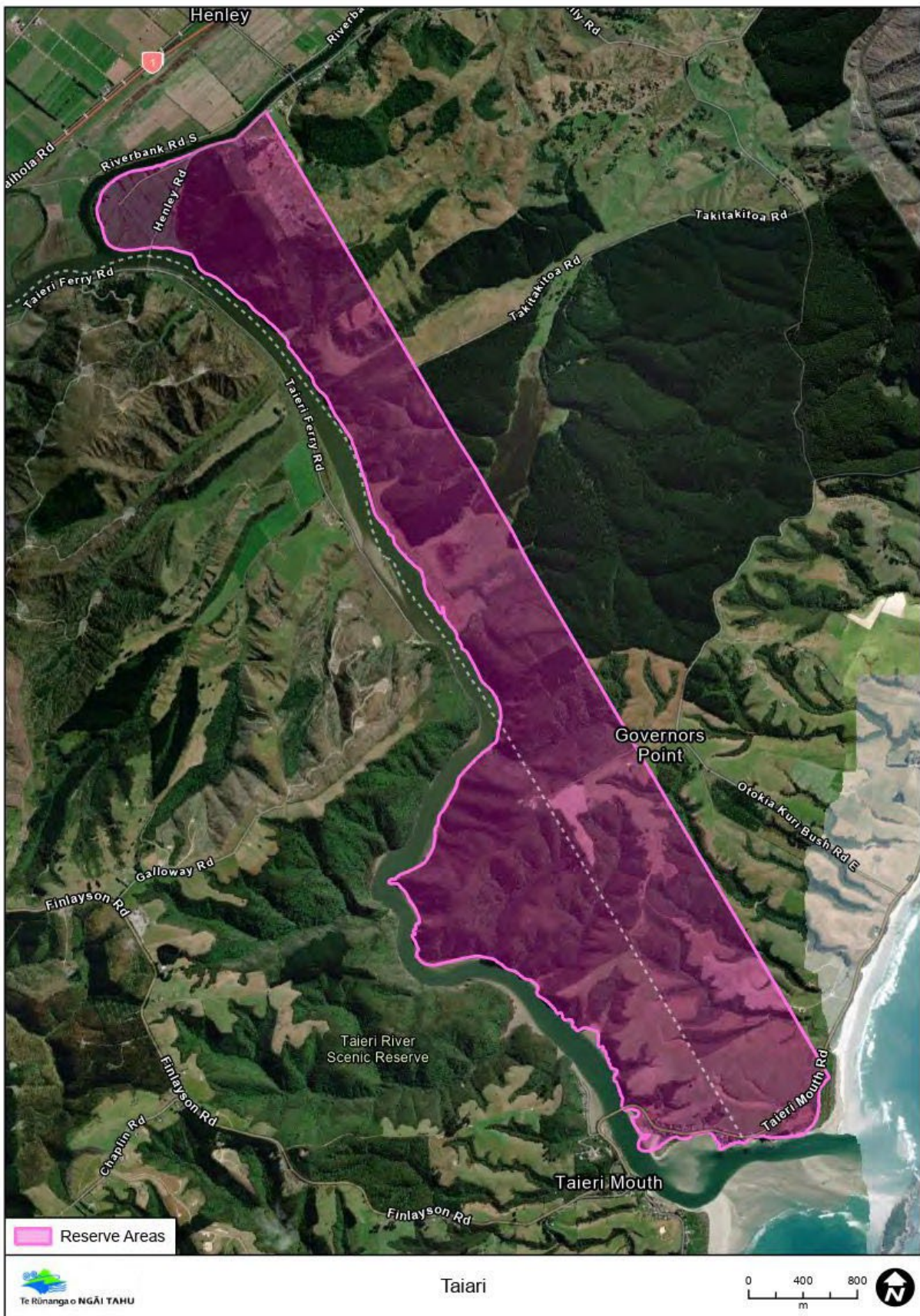


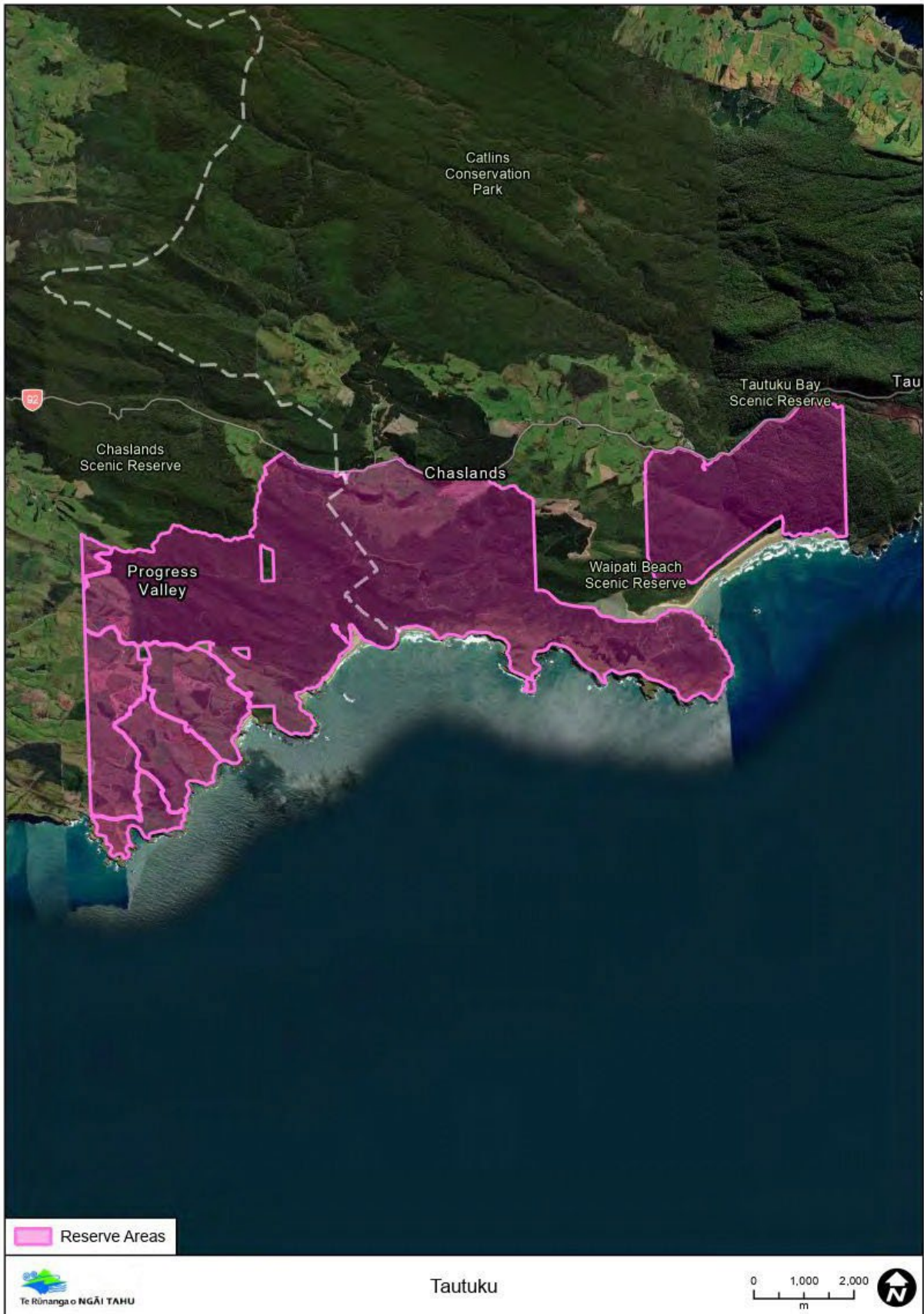


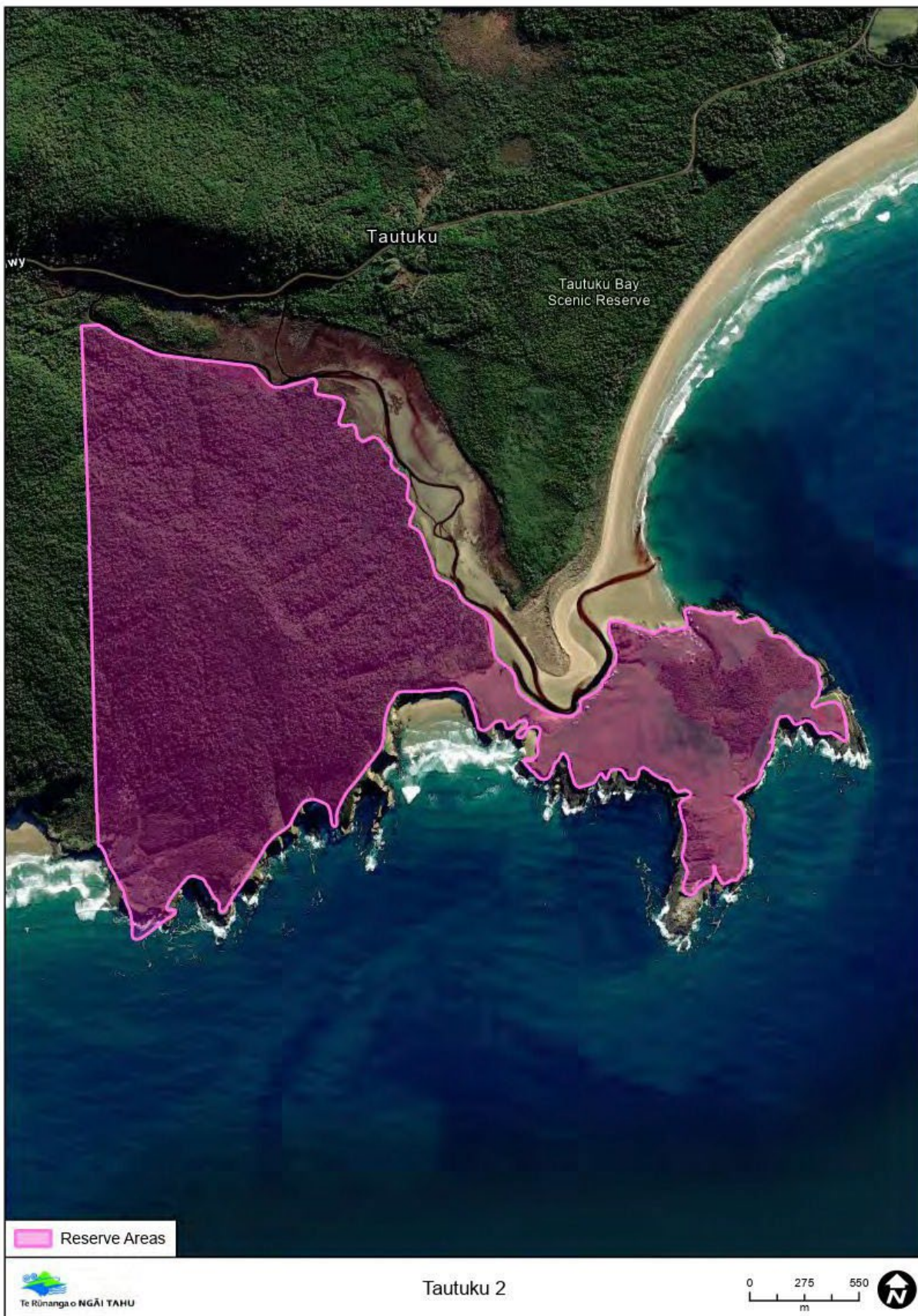






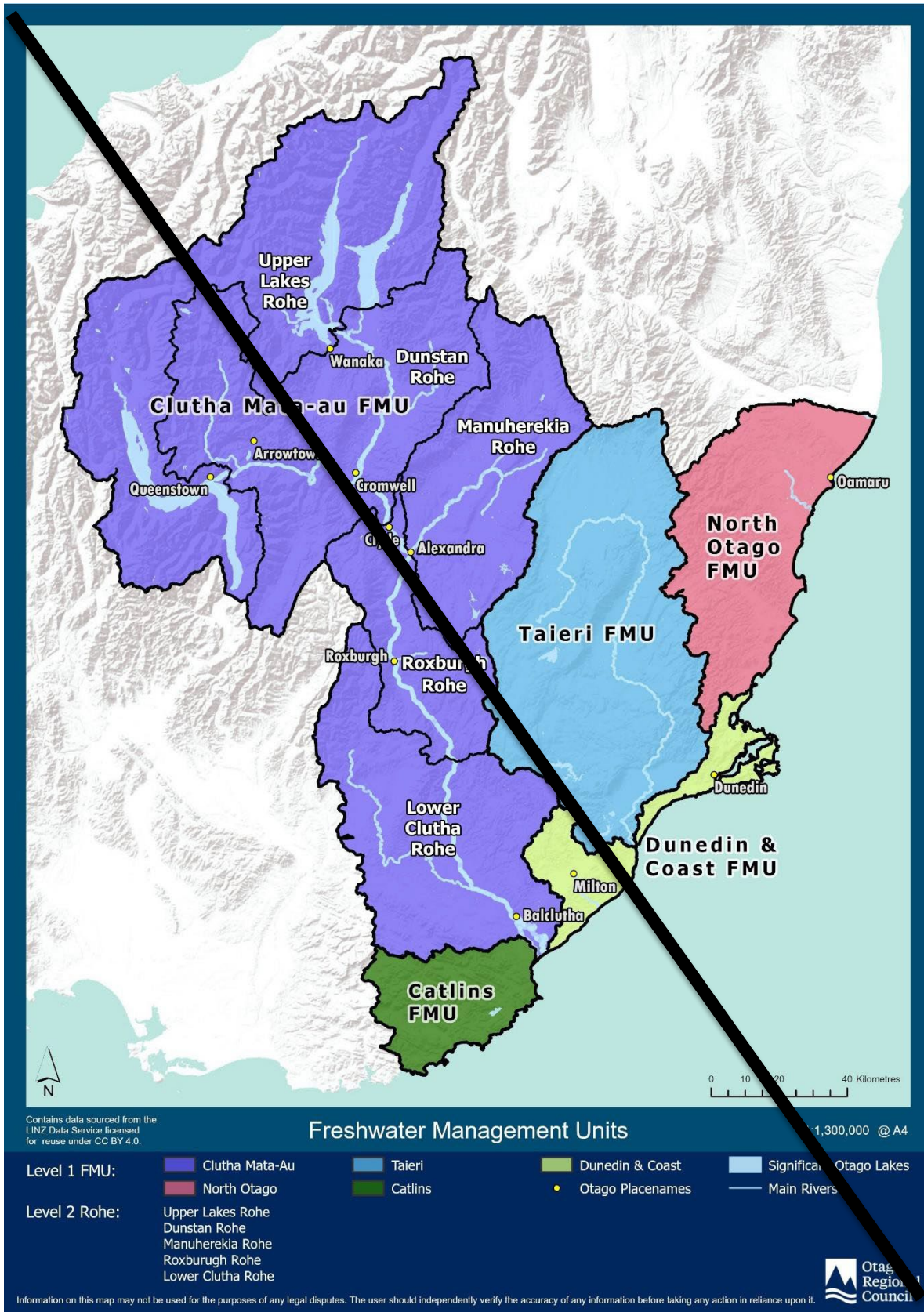






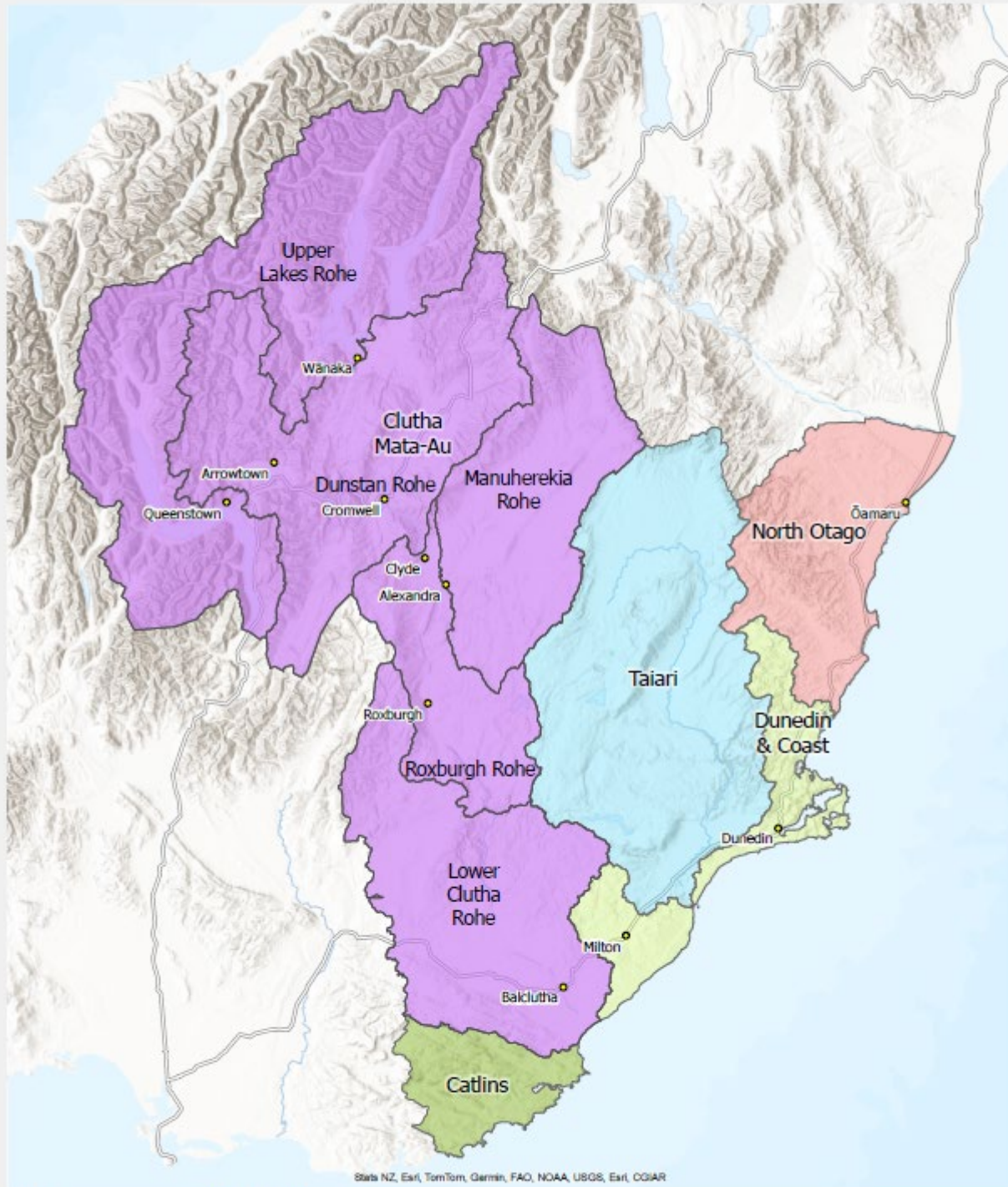


# MAP1 – Freshwater Management Units



# Otago FMU and Rohe

Otago Freshwater Management Units and Rohe



- |                |                 |                  |
|----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| FMUs           | Dunedin & Coast | Rohe             |
| Catlins        | North Otago     | Otago Placenames |
| Clutha Mata-Au | Taiari          |                  |

Information on this map may not be used for the purposes of any legal disputes. The user should independently verify the accuracy of any information before taking any action in reliance upon it. This map was generated for A4 printing on 14/03/2024 at the scale of 1:1,333,081.

<sup>2135</sup> Amended map added through Clause 49(2)(b), Schedule 1, RMA

## MAP2 – EIT-TRAN-M7 Port Activities

